



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### **Usage guidelines**

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### **About Google Book Search**

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES



3 3433 07591808 0



1



RDP

*1885*  
A - L. has 26<sup>th</sup> of Dec  
JWA

**PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION**

TO

**LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION:**

**PART I.**

---

BY

**THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.**

LATE RECTOR OF LYNDON,

AND FORMERLY FELLOW OF TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

---

**Cleventh Edition.**

---

REVISED  
EDITION  
1889

LONDON:

RIVINGTONS, WATERLOO PLACE.

1859.

H.S.

THE NEW YORK  
PUBLIC LIBRARY  
280745  
ASTOR, LENOX AND  
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.  
1903

LONDON :  
GILBERT AND RIVINGTON, PRINTERS,  
ST. JOHN'S SQUARR.

ROY WAIN  
JULY  
1903

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	PAGE
PREPARATORY TABLES, &c.—Genders, p. 1. Formation of Perfect and Supine, p. 2. On the Arrangement of Words .....	6
§ 1. Nominative Case and Verb .....	9
2. Accusative with Infinitive .....	11
3. Accusative with Infinitive continued .....	12
4. Agreement of Adjective with Substantive .....	13
5. The Relative .....	15
6. Infinitive used substantively .....	17
7. Relative continued. (Fundamental Rule for the employment of subjunctive tenses) .....	18
8. Relative continued .....	20
9. Relative continued. Rel. with Superlative: The first 'who' .....	21
10. <i>Ut, nē</i> introducing a <i>purpose</i> .....	22
11. <i>Ut</i> introducing a <i>consequence</i> . <i>Quo. Nō prohibitive</i> .....	23
12. English infinitive translated by <i>ut</i> with subj. } [Voc. of Verbs followed by <i>ut</i> ] } .....	25
13. <i>Ut</i> , &c. continued. 'That nobody,' &c. } Voc. of Phrases followed by <i>ut</i> } .....	27
14. <i>Quin</i> after negative sentences. [Voc. of Verbs, &c. followed by <i>quin</i> ] .....	29
15. <i>Quominus</i> . [Voc. of Verbs followed by <i>quominus</i> .....	31
16. Interrogative Sentences .....	32
17. Interrogative Words .....	33
18. Dependent Questions .....	34
19. Double Questions. <i>An</i> in single questions .....	35
20. <i>May, can</i> , &c. as principal Verbs .....	37
21. Apposition .....	40
22. Nominative after the Verb. <i>Attraction</i> of the Predicate. [Voc. of <i>Apposition-Verbs</i> ] .....	41
23. Dative after <i>esse</i> .....	43
24. The Genitive .....	44
25. The Genitive continued. Partitives. Genitivus <i>Qualitatis</i> . <i>Opus est</i> . <i>Summus mons</i> , &c. (49) .....	46
26. The Genitive after adjectives .....	50
27. The Genitive continued .....	52
28. The Genitive continued .....	54
29. The Genitive continued. <i>Impersonals</i> with gen. ....	56
30. The Dative. [Voc. of Adjectives with dat., &c.] .....	58
31. The Dative continued. [Voc. of verbs governing the <i>dat.</i> ] .....	61
32. The Dative continued. [Voc. of Compounds of <i>esse</i> ] .....	63
33. The Dative continued. Verbs with two constructions. .... } [Voc. of Verbs that take <i>dat.</i> of <i>person</i> with <i>acc.</i> of <i>thing</i> ; or <i>acc.</i> of <i>pers.</i> with <i>abl.</i> of <i>thing</i> .—Voc. of Verbs with different constructions in different meanings] .....	66
34. Verbs that take a second Dative. <i>Est mihi nomen</i> .....	67
[Voc. of Verbs followed by two datives] .....	68
35. The Accusative. [Voc. of <i>transitive</i> compounds of <i>intrans.</i> verbs] ..	70
36. The Accusative continued .....	72
37. The Ablative .....	75
38. The Ablative continued. [Voc. of Verbs governing the <i>abl.</i> ] .....	76
39. The Vocative. <i>Attraction</i> of the Vocative .....	80
40. The Passive Voice .....	81
41. The Passive Voice continued .....	83
42. Time .....	86
43. Place. Space .....	90
44. Gerunds and Partic. in <i>du</i> . [ <i>Epistola scribenda</i> ] .....	92
[Voc. of words following the constr. of the proper names of places, 96] .....	92

SECT.	PAGE
45. Participles. Ablative Absolute .....	97
46. Participles continued. Participles expressing a <i>purpose</i> .....	100
47. Participles continued. The Supines .....	101
48. Pronouns .....	104
49. Pronouns continued. <i>Is, hic, iste, ille</i> .....	106
50. Pronouns continued. On the translation of 'any' .....	109
51. Pronouns continued. On the pre- and af-fixes of the Interrogatives .....	112
52. Comparison .....	114
53. Remarks on some of the Tenses .....	116
54. Remarks on the Tenses continued .....	120
55. Forms of conditional Propositions (435) .....	123
56. Conditional Propositions continued .....	126
57. Conditional Propositions in dependent sentences .....	129
58. On <i>Oblique</i> , or Indirect, Narration .....	132
59. Oblique Narration continued. Mood in subordinate Clauses. Dependence on an infinitive .....	135
60. <i>Qui</i> with Subjunctive. [Voc. of phrases, &c. with which <i>qui</i> takes the subj.] .....	138
61. <i>Qui</i> with the Subjunctive continued .....	140
62. <i>Quum</i> with the Indicative .....	142
[Voc. of Conjunctions that govern the subj. 494] .....	}
63. <i>Antequam</i> and <i>Prusquam</i> .....	147
64. <i>Dum, donec, quoad, &amp;c.</i> [Voc. of Adverbs with gen.] .....	149
65. <i>Quod</i> .....	151
66. The Roman Calendar .....	153
67. Connexion of Propositions by the Relative, &c. Imperative forms ..	155
68. On the Roman way of reckoning Money .....	158
69. On the division of the <i>As</i> , the method of reckoning <i>fractions, interest, &amp;c.</i> .....	159
Table of Differences of Idiomatic, &c. .....	161
Questions on the Cautions .....	170
Questions on the Syntax .....	173
Appendix (I). On <i>qui</i> with the subjunctive (Krüger) .....	182
Appendix (II). On <i>quis, aliquis, quispiam, quisquam</i> .....	189
Index I. English .....	191
Index II. Of Synonymes distinguished; Phrases, &c. .....	208

---

### EXPLANATION OF ABBREVIATIONS, &c.

D., G., H., K., M., R., Z., stand respectively for *Döderlein, Grotfend, Habicht, Krüger, Madvig, Ramshorn, and Zumpt.*

Numerals above the line refer to the *Table of Differences*; if followed by a *curre*, to the *Cautions*.

[A Second Edition of *Döderlein's* own abridgment of his larger work, translated by the Rev. H. H. Arnold, has lately been published by Messrs. Rivington.]

---

The Ninth Edition will be found both improved in appearance, and rendered more convenient by the arrangement of the Vocabularies in columns. A few additional sentences have been added here and there to the Exercises.

T. K. A.

*Grasmere, August 6, 1852.*

# TABLES FOR REFERENCE.

TABLE I.—GENDERS.

Obs.—*Masc.* exceptions are in *capitals*; *fem.* in the common type; *neut.* in *italics*.

(THIRD DECLENSION.)

<i>Masc. terminations.</i>	<i>Fem. terminations.</i>	<i>Neut. terminations.</i>
ER, OR, OS, ES <i>increasing</i> , O, <i>when not do, go, io.</i>	do, go, io *, as, is, aus, x, es <i>not increasing</i> , s <i>impure.</i>	o, a, t, e, l, n, ar, ur, us.
Principal Exceptions.	Principal Exceptions.	Principal Exceptions.
er) <i>cadaver</i> <i>uber</i> <i>iter</i> <i>ver</i> <i>papaver</i> <i>erber</i> <i>tuber</i>	do) ORDO go) CARDO io) LIGO MARGO (f) †	l) SAL SOL n) LIEN REN SPLEN PECTEN
or) <i>arbor</i> <i>æquor</i> <i>marmor</i> <i>cor</i>	is) AMNIS    LAPIS ANGUIS (f) MENSIS AXIS        ORBIS CASSIS (is) PANIS COLLIS    PISCIS CINIS        POSTIS CRINIS      PULVIS ENSIS        SANGUIS FASCIS      TORRIS FINIS (f)    UNGUIS FOLLIS      VECTIS FUNIS        VERMIS	ur) FUR FURFUR TURTUR VULTUR
es) <i>compes</i> <i>requies</i> <i>merces</i> <i>seges</i> <i>merges</i> <i>teges</i> <i>quies</i> <i>æs</i>	x) CALIX CODEX CORTEX GREX FOLLEX † THORAX VERTEX	us) <i>pecus</i> (ûdis) ( <i>and all with gen. titis</i> <i>or ûdis</i> ) LEPUS MUS <i>grus</i> (m) <i>sus</i> (m) <i>inventus</i> <i>senectûs</i> <i>juventûs</i> <i>servitûs</i> <i>palûs</i> <i>tellûs</i> <i>salûs</i> <i>virtûs</i>
os) <i>cos</i> <i>dos</i> <i>os</i> (ossis) <i>os</i> (oris) † <i>chaos</i> † <i>epos</i> † <i>melos</i>	s im- ) MONS pure ) PONS FONS DENS QUADRANS RUDENS † HYDROPS	FOURTH DECL. (us) <i>Masc. except</i> <i>acus</i> <i>manus</i> <i>idus</i> (pl.) <i>porticus</i> <i>tribus</i>
o) <i>caro</i> † <i>echo</i>	as) AS ELEPHAS <i>vas</i> ( <i>vasis</i> ) <i>fas</i> <i>nefas</i>	FIFTH DECL. <i>Fem. except</i> <i>DIES</i> (also <i>f.</i> in <i>sing.</i> ) <i>MERIDIES</i>
FIRST DECL. <i>Fem.</i> except names of <i>men.</i>	es, pari- ) syll.    } ACINACES	
SEC. DECL. (us, er) § <i>Masc. except</i> <i>alvus</i> <i>domus</i> <i>humus</i> <i>vannus</i> <i>pelagus</i> <i>virus</i> <i>vulvus</i> (also <i>m.</i> )		

\* Words in *io*, that are not *abstract* nouns, are *masc.*, e. g. PAPIPIO, PUGIO, SCIPIO, SEPTENTRIO, STELLIO, UNIO (pearl), with the numeral nouns TERNIO, QUATERNIO, &c. † Properly Greek words.

‡ Those with (f), (m), are sometimes *fem.* and *masc.* respectively.

§ *Greek nouns* in *odus* (*exodus*, *methodus*, &c.) with *dialectus*, *diphthongus*, &c. are *fem.*

These rules depend on the terminations; but some words have a particular gender from their *meaning*.

A. The names of *male persons* and *winds* are masculine.

B. The names of *female persons*, *countries*, *islands*, *towns*, *plants*, and *trees*, are fem.

(a) But of *towns*, these are *masc.*:

(1) Some in *o* (CROTO, HIPPO, NARBO, SULMO, PRUSÝNO): and

(2) All plurals in *i*: VEII, DELPHI.

These are neuter:

(1) All in *um*, or plur. *a*: (2) Those in *e* or *ur* of the third: *Præneste*, *Tibur*.

(b) Of *trees* and *plants*.

(1) Those in *er* (and many in *us*) of the second are *masc.*:

(2) Those in *er*, *us*, of the third are *neut.*: *acer*, *siler*, *robur*, &c.

C. Several are *common*: *comes*, *conjux*, *custos*, *dux*, *hospes*, *juvenis*, *parens*, *princeps*, *sacerdos*, &c.

#### TABLE II.—Formation of the Perfect and Supine.

I. ~~607~~ The first syllable of *dissyllable* perfects and supines is *long*, if the next syllable begins with a consonant.

(a) But *seven* perfects have *short* penult: býbi, dēdi, fýdi, scídi, stēti, stíti, tūli.

(b) *Nine* dissyllable supines have *short* penult: dātum, cītum\*, ĭtum, lītum, quītum, rātum, rūtum, sātum, sītum.

(c) *Statum* from *sto* is *long*, but from *sisto* *short*: and the compounds of *sto* that make *stítum* have *í*: as *præstítum* from *præstare*. Though *nosco* has *nōtum*, its compounds that have *ítum* have *í* (*cognosco*, *cognítum*).

N.B. Verbs in italics have no supine.

II. FIRST CONJUGATION [properly a *contracted* conjugation; *ama-o*, *amo*].

(1) Most verbs of this conjugation form roots of *perfect* and *supine*, by adding *v*, *t*, respectively to the proper root.

[*amo* (*ama-o*); *amā-v*; *amāt-um*.]

(2) Others change *a* into *u*; and form the sup. in *ŭtum*, after rejecting *a*.

*Crēpo*, *crēpui*, *crēpítum*. So *eūbo*, *dēmo*, *frīco* (*also* *fricātum*), *mīco*, *sōno*, *tōno*, *vēto*, *sēco* (*sectum*)—*jūvo*, *jūvi*, *jūtum* ? *jūvātum* ?

(3) Others form *perf.* in both of these ways.

*Discrēpo*, *discrēpāvi* and *discrēpui*, *discrēpatum* (?). So *incrēpo* (*ui*, *ítum* *preferred*); the compounds of *neco*, and the obsolete *plīco* (*fold*).

(*But* *supplīco*, *duplīco*, *multiplīco*, *only* *āvi*, *ātum*: *explīco*, *explain*, *reg.*: *unfold*, *ui*, *ítum*.)

(4) Irregular (with *reduplication*).

*Do*, *dēdi*, *dātum* (*with* *ā* in *dāre*, *dābo*, *dābam*, &c.); *sto*, *stēti*, *stātum*; *but* *stāre*, &c.

III. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Properly a *contracted* conjugation, but with the vowels open in the first pers. singular of the present tense. (*Mone-o*; *mone-is* = *moneš*, &c.)

\* From *cīco*, to excite. Of the compounds several have *cīre*, *cītum*, from the absol. *cīo*.

- (1) Most reject *e*, and form perfect and supine in *ui*, *Itum*.  
(*Mon-eo*, *mon-ui*, *mon-Itum*.)
- (2) But some retain *e*, and add *o*, in the perf.—*eo*, *ēvi*, *ētum*.  
*Deleo*, *delēvi*, *delētum*. *Fleo*, *neo*, and verbs formed from *oleo*<sup>a</sup>  
(*make to grow*), *pleo* (*fill*), and *sueo* (*am accustomed*).
- (3) Others form perf. from root of present, lengthening the vowel (if short), when present ends in a single consonant.  
*Cāveo*, *cāvi*, *cautum*: *fāveo*.  
*Fōveo*, *fōvi*, *fōtum*: *mōveo*, *vōveo*: *pāveo*, *ferveo* (and *ferbui*);  
*Connireo*, *nivi* and *nixi*.  
*Prandeo* (*pransum*), *vīdeo* (*vīsum*), *sēdeo* (*sessum*), *strīdeo*<sup>b</sup>.
- (4) Others form perf. in *si*.  
(α) *p* sounds. (Any *p*<sup>c</sup> sound with *s* = *ps*; but *bs* sometimes = *ss*.)  
*Jūbeo*, *jussi*, *jussum*; *sorbeo*, *sorpsi*, *sorptum*.  
(β) *k* sounds. (The *k* sound, if impure, is thrown away before *s*. Any *k* sound with *s* = *x*: *qu* is to be treated as a *k* sound.)  
*Mulceo*, *mulsi*, *mulsum*. *Algeo*, *indulgeo* (*indultum*), *fulgeo*, *mulgeo*,  
*tergeo*, *turgeo*, *urgeo*, *torqueo* (*tortum*).  
*Augeo*, *auxi*, *auctum*: *luceo*, *frigeo*, *lugeo*.  
(γ) *t* sounds. (*t* sound thrown away before *s*.)  
*Ardeo*, *arsī*, *arsum*; *rīdeo*, *suadeo*.  
(δ) Liquid verbs. (*r* thrown away before *s*.)  
*Māneo*, *mansi*, *mansum*: *hāereo*.  
(ε) With reduplication. (*t* sound thrown away before *s*.)  
*Mordeo*, *mōmordi*, *morsum*: *pendeo*, *spondeo*, *tondeo*.  
(ζ) Neuter passives: *audeo*, *ausus sum*; *gaudeo*, *gavisus sum*; *sōleo*,  
*solītus sum*.  
(η) The following have perf. in *ui*, but do not form their supines in *itum*.  
*Dōceo*, *doctum*; *teneo*, *tentum*; *misceo*, *mixtum* and *mistum*; *torreo*,  
*tostum*; *censeo*, *censum*; *recenseo*, *recensum* and *recensitum*.

IV. THIRD CONJUGATION.

- (1) Perfect in *i*, added to root of present.
- (α) *Acuo*, *acui*, *acūtum*: *arguo*, *congruo*, *imbuo*, *induo*, *luo* (*luiturus*),  
*metuo*, *minuo*, *pluo*, *ruo* (*rūtum*, *ruitum*), *spuo*, *statuo*, *sternuo*,  
*suo*, *tribuo*. *Volvo*, *volvi*, *voiūtum*. *So solvo*.
- (β) *t* sound thrown away before *s* in *sup*.  
*Mando*, *mandi*, *mansum*; *pando* (*passum*, *pansum* rare), *prehendo*,  
*scando*; and compounds of *cando* (*kindle*), *fando* (*thrust*), in *cendo*,  
*fendo*.
- (γ) *Bibo* (*bībi*, *bibītum*); *cūdo* (*cūsūm*), *dēgo*, *lambo*, *psallo*, *scībo*  
(*scabi*), *sīdo*, *vello* (*vulsum*: also *vulsi*), *verro* (*versum*<sup>d</sup>), *verto*  
(*versum*), *viso* (*vīsūm*).

<sup>a</sup> Some of which have *olesco* in pres. *Aboleo*, sup. *abolitum*: *adoleasco*, *adui-*  
*tum*.

<sup>b</sup> *languco*, *languī*; *liqueo*, *liqui* and *licui*.

		smooth.	mid.	asp.
c	Mutes with a <i>p</i> sound,	p	b	(ph).
	————— <i>k</i> ———	c	g	(ch).
	————— <i>t</i> ———	t	d	(th).

d *verri*, *versum* poetical. Z.



- (ð) (Short vowel of root *lengthened*—*ä* changed into *ē* in *perf.*)  
 Cāp-io, cēpi, captum : fācio, jācio, āgo, ēdo (ēsum), ēmo (emptum),  
 lēgo (lectum), fōdio (fossam), fūgio (fugitum).
- (e) (*n* or *m*, by which the present has been lengthened from a *simpler*  
 root rejected.)  
 (retaining *short* vowel) findo (fid), fidi, fissum ; scindo (scid).  
 (lengthening the vowel ; *a* changed into *ē*.)  
 Frango, frag, frēgi (fractum) ; fundo, fūdi (fūsum) ; linquo, liqu, lic  
 (liqui, licitum) ; rumpo, rūpi (ruptum) ; vinco, vici (victum).  
 Percello, percūli, perculsum ; sisto, stīti, stītum.
- (z) With reduplication.  
 Cādo, cēcidi, cāsūm ; cādo, cēcidi, cāsūm ; cāno, cēcīni, cantum ;  
 crēdo, crēdīdi, crēdītūm ; pango (pag), pēpīgi, pactum ; parco,  
 pēperci, parcītūm or parsūm ; pario, pēpēri, partum ; pello, pē-  
 pīli, pulsum ; pendo, pēpendi, pensum ; pungo, pūpūgi, punctum ;  
 posco, pōposci ; tango (tag), tētīgi, tactum ; tendo, tētēdi, tensum  
 and tentum ; tundo, tūtūdi, tūsum.—So the compounds of *do* ;  
*condo, abdo, reddo, &c., condīdi, condītum, &c.*
- (2) Perfect in *si*.
- (ŋ) *p* sounds. (~~Any~~ Any *p* sound with *s* is *ps* ; with *t*, *pt*.)  
 Glūbo, glūpsi, glūptum : nūbo, scribo, carpo, rēpo, scalpo, sculpo.
- (θ) *k* sounds, including those in *h, qu* and *ct*. (Any *k* sound with *s* is  
*x* ; with *t*, *ct*.)  
 Cingo, cinxi, cinctum : sūgo, tēgo, fingo (fictum), tingo, ungo : *ango*,  
 figo (fixum), jungo, lingo, mingo, mungo, *ningo*, pingo (pictum),  
 plango, stringo (strictum), rēgo, dīco, dūco, cōquo, trāho<sup>e</sup>, vēho.  
*Add compounds of stinguo ; exstinguo, restinguo.*
- Flecto, flexi, flexum, nexō (also nexui), pecto.
- (ι) Liquid verbs (assuming a *p* before *s*).  
 Cōmo, compsi, comptum ; dēmo, prōmo, sūmo, contemno.
- (κ) *t* sounds. (*t* sound thrown away before *s* ; vowel, if *short*, length-  
 ened.)  
 Claudio, clausi, clausum ; dividō, divisi, divisum : lædo, lūdo, plaudo,  
 rādo, rōdo, trūdo : mitto (mīsi, missum).—*Compounds of vādo.*
- (λ) *k* sounds. (the *k* sound is thrown away.)  
 Spargo, sparsi, sparsum ; mergo, tergo.
- (μ) *t* sounds. (*ds* changed into *ss* ;) cēdo, cessi, cessum.
- (ν) Liquid verbs. (*r, m*, changed into *s* before *s*.)  
 Gēro, gessi, gestum : ūro, prēmo (pressum).
- (ξ) *Compounds of specio (behold) ending in apicio make spexi, spectrum.*  
*Those in licio from lacio (entice), except elicio, make lexi, lectum.*  
 Diligo, dilexi, dilectum : intelligo, negligo.  
 Col-, e-, di-, se-, ligo, with perlego, praelego, have *perf. lēgi*.  
 (3) Verbs with *perf. in ui*.
- (o) Without change of root.  
 ālo, ālui, ālītum (and altum) ; cōlo (cultum), consūlo (consultum),  
 mōlo, occūlo (occultum), *vōlo, nōlo, mōlo* ; compounds of *cello*  
 (rush : shoot forth) ; frēmō, gēmō, trēmō, vōmo, gigno (gen, gēnui,  
 gēntum) ; rāpio, rāpui, raptum ; sūpio, elicio, *compesco, dispesco,*

<sup>e</sup> *k* seems to have had originally a *hard* sound. Thus *hiems* for *χημών*, and  
*ūs = x* (*xk-si = cexi*).

depso (*also* depstum), pinso (*also* pinsi, pistum); *sterto* (*also* sterti).  
 — *Compounds of sero* (*to connect*), serui, sertum.

(π) With change of root.

Metō, messui, messum; pōno, pōsui, pōsītum; cerno <sup>f</sup>, crēvi, crētum;  
 lino, lēvi (*livi rare*), lītum; sīno, sīvi, sītum; sperno, sprēvi, sprētum;  
 sterno, strāvi, strātum; sēro, sēvi, sātum; tēro, trīvi, trītum.

Cresco (*cre*), crēvi, crētum; nosco.

Pasco (*pastum*); quiesco, suesco.

(ρ) Verbs forming perf. in *si*, as if they had roots ending in *k* sound or *h*.  
 Fluo, fluxi, fluxum; struo, structum; vīvo (*victum*).

(4) Perfect in *ivi*.

(σ) Pēto, pētīvi, pētītum; cūpio, arcesso, capesso, lacesso. incesso.

(5) Neuter verb.

(τ) Fīdo, fīsus sum (*confido, diffido*).

Fero, tāli, lātum.

Tollo, sustāli, sublātum.

V. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

(1) Perfect in *i*.

(α) Venio, vēni, ventum; compērio, compēri, compertum. *So reperio.*

(2) Perfect in *ui*.

(β) Sālio, salui, saltum; āpērio, āpērio, āmīcio (*amicui* f).

(3) Perfect in *si*.

Farcio, farsī, fartum; fulcio, haurio (*hausi, haustum*), raucio (*rausum*);  
 sarcio, sepio; sancio, sanxi, sanctum; vincio; sentio, sensi, sensum.

VI. DEPONENTS.

SECOND CONJUGATION. Fāteor, fassus; liceor, licītus; mēreor, merītus;  
 misēreor, miserītus, misertus; reor, rātus; tueor, tuitus; vēreor, vē-  
 rītus.

THIRD CONJUGATION. Adīpiscor, ādeptus; amplector, amplexus; com-  
 plector, complexus; dīvertor, dīversus; (*so* prāvertor, rēvertor;) ex-  
 pergiscor, experrectus; fruor, fruitus, *and* fructus; fungor, functus;  
 grādiōr, gressus; invēhor, invecus; irascor, irātus; lābor, lapsus;  
 lōquor, lōcūtus; mōriōr, mortuus; nanciscor, nactus; nascor, nātus;  
 nītor, nīsus, nixus; obliviscor, oblitus; paciscor, pactus; pascor, pas-  
 tus; pātiōr, passus; prōficiōr, profectus; quēror, questus; sēquor,  
 sēcūtus; ulciscor, ultus; ūtor, ūsus.

FOURTH CONJUGATION. Adsentior, adsensus; expēriōr, expertus; mētiōr,  
 mensus; oppēriōr, oppertus; ordiōr, orsus; ōriōr, ortus s.

VII. (~~see~~ *so* in verbs denotes the *beginning* of an action or state.)

*Inchoatives* in *scō* have no perfect, but that (in *ui*) of the *root*. This would hardly be considered *their* perfect, did not some of those formed from nouns take a perfect in *ui*, though no verb in *scō* occurs.

VIII. In compound verbs (1) *a, æ*, of the root often become *i*, sometimes *e*;  
 (2) *e* of the root often becomes *i*; (3) the *reduplication* of the root is  
 dropt, except in *præcurro* and the compounds of *posco* and *disco*.

<sup>f</sup> Properly *to separate*. In the sense of *to see*, it has neither perf. nor sup.

<sup>s</sup> The *present* follows the *third*; but 2 sing. *oriris* or *orēris*.

*On the Arrangement of Words in a Latin Sentence.*

1. The general distinction between the English and Latin Order is this :

2. ¶ In Latin the *governed* and *dependent* words generally stand before the words *on which they depend* ; so that in simple sentences, the verb, when not particularly *emphatic*, stands at the end of the sentence.

3. Thus in simple narrative, after the conjunctions comes the *subject* (nom. case) ; then the *governed cases* with *adverbs*, and expressions of *time, place, manner, &c.*, and last of all the *verb*.

4. But if the verb is *emphatic*, it must be placed earlier in the sentence.—Quod non *dedit* fortuna, id non eripit. Mirabile videtur, quod non *rideat* haruspex, &c. Non *intelligunt* homines, quam magnum vectigal sit parsimonia.

For it must always be remembered that—

5. ¶ *The degree of prominence and emphasis to be given to a word is that which mainly determines its position in the sentence.*—  
And,

6. a) The *two emphatic* positions in a sentence are the *beginning* and the *end* : “ by the former our attention is *excited*, and on the latter it rests.” (Crombie.)
- b) Add to this, that the more *unusual* a position is for any word, the more *emphatic* it is *for that word*. Thus “ arbores seret diligens agricola, quarum adspiciet baccam ipse *nunquam*.” (Cic.)
- c) A word that generally stands close by another receives *emphasis* by *separation* from it ; especially if it be thus brought near the beginning or end of a sentence. *Voluptatem*’ percepi *maximam*’. Propterea quod *aliud iter* haberent *nullum*’. *Ædvi equites* ad Cæsarem *omnes*’ revertuntur.
- d) Another principle affecting the position of words is the harmonious arrangement of syllables ; the *flow* of the sentence.

7. GENITIVE :—The genitive, whether dependent on a substantive or adjective, stands first if it be the *more emphatic* ; if not, not. But it is rendered more *emphatic* by *separation* : see 6, c).

a) It probably somewhat *prefers* the position before the governing noun, when that is not *decidedly* *emphatic*.

b) When the governing substantive has an adjective with it, the order is generally *adj., gen., subst.* (Vera animi magnitudo.)

8. ATTRIBUTIVE AND ITS SUBSTANTIVE. Of these the *more emphatic* stands first. But see 6, c).

a) A very short precedes a longer word; hence the *demonstratives* usually stand before their nouns, and *monosyllable substantives* before their adjectives.

9. APPPOSITION. Here too the more emphatic precedes; but *generally* the word in *apposition* stands last.

a. This is particularly the case with *titles*, &c. in apposition to *proper names*.

Q. Mucius *Augur*; Agis *rex*; Pythagoras *Philosophus*. But, *urbs* Roma; though Cyprus *insula*, Hypanis *fluvius*.

10. WORDS DEPENDENT ON ADJECTIVES. Here too the more emphatic precedes, with something of a *preference* for placing the *dependent* words first.

11. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. The *more emphatic* first.

12. INFINITIVE DEPENDENT ON VERB. The more emphatic first: generally the infinitive.

a. Of *two* infinitives, the more emphatic first.

13. ADVERBS. Generally, immediately before the words they belong to. *Quoque* immediately after its word.

14. Words that modify the meaning of an adjective are usually placed between it and the substantive. (*Prælio magis ad eventum secundo, quam, &c.*)

15. OPPOSITION and contrasted notions.

a) A *repeated* word, or a word *akin* to a word already used in the sentence, is generally brought as near to that word as possible. *Timor timorem* pellit. *Nulla virtus virtuti* contraria est. *Virtutum in aliâ alius* vult excellere. *Aliis aliunde* est periculum.

b) Of two contrasted *clauses* or *groups* of words, of parallel construction, the order of the first is often *reversed* in the second: so that two of the *antithetical* words are as *far apart* as possible. *Fragile corpus animus sempiternus* movet. *Ratio nostra consentit; pugnat oratio*. *Quæ me moverunt, movissent eadem te* profecto.

☞ *Enim, vero, autem, quoque, quidem* (with of course the *enclitics*) cannot be the first words of a clause.

*Obs.* An accent after a word thus (parent') shows it to be somewhat *emphatic*.

**N.B.** If the perfect and supine of a verb are not set down in the following vocabularies, it is assumed that the verb is conjugated like the common paradigms :

{	amo, āvi, ātum
	moneo, monui, monitum
	rego, (reg-si) (reg-tum)
	rexi,    rectum
	audio, audivi, auditum.

By being conjugated like *rego* is meant that the perfect and supine are *si, tum*, respectively, and that only the *necessary* changes are made, according to the following table :

{	Any <i>p</i> sound with <i>s</i> is <i>ps</i> ; with <i>t</i> , <i>pt</i> .
	Any <i>k</i> sound } with <i>s</i> is <i>x</i> ; with <i>t</i> , <i>ct</i> .
{	or <i>h</i> , <i>qu</i> , <i>ct</i> , }
	Thus—scrib-o, (scrib-si) (scrib-tum)
	scripsi, scriptum.
	veho, (veh-si) (veh-tum)
	vexi, vectum.
	duc-o, (duc-si) ductum.
	duxij, duxi,
	coquo, coxi, coctum.

---

(Explanation of the Grammatical terms, *subject*, *predicate*, *copula*.)

A sentence (or, *thought expressed in words*) necessarily contains three parts ; the subject, the predicate, and the copula.

- a) The *subject* is that *about which* the assertion is made.
- b) The *predicate* is the *assertion itself*.
- c) The *copula* is the word that connects the subject with the *assertion made*.
- d) The *copula* is some tense of the verb *to be*.

Though the Copula is a *necessary* part of every sentence, it is not *necessarily expressed*, because it is implied when the predicate is a verb.

# L A T I N   E X E R C I S E S .

---

The common concords are taken for granted; that— 1

(1) A verb agrees with the *subject* (that is, with 'its nominative case') in *number* and *person*.

(2) An adjective, pronoun, or participle, agrees with its *substantive* in *gender*, *number*, and *case*.

(3) A *transitive* verb, whether active or deponent, takes after it an accusative of the *object*; that is to say, of the *person* or *thing acted upon*.

(4) The verb *to be*, and such verbs as *to become*, *to turn out*, *to prove*, *to continue*, &c., passive verbs of *being called*, *considered*, *chosen*, *found*, and the like, take a substantive or adjective after them in the nominative case. In the construction of the *accusative* and *infinitive* (see 6), the case after these verbs will be the *accusative*. See also 152.

(5) 'The thing *by which*' stands in the *ablative*; 'the person *by whom*,' in the *ablative* with the preposition *a* or *ab*.

(6) One substantive *depending* upon another is put in the *genitive case*.

---

*Obs.* When a pronoun is the nominative case to a verb, it is not expressed in Latin; except for the sake of *emphasis* or particular *distinction*.

(a) In the same way, the *possessive* pronoun is seldom expressed, when there can be no doubt as to *whose* the thing is.

(β) When there is any distinction to be expressed, as, for instance, when *I* am to be opposed to *you*\*, the pronouns must be used.

---

## § 1. AGREEMENT OF THE SUBJECT, OR NOMINATIVE CASE, AND VERB.

(a) If one verb refers to two or more *subjects* (nominative cases), 2 it is placed in the *plural* number<sup>a</sup>, which agrees in *person* with the *most worthy*<sup>b</sup> of the subjects.

---

\* The pron. is expressed, even when the distinction is only between two actions of the *same* person. *Ejeci ego te armatis hominibus, non dejeci.*

<sup>a</sup> The verb is often, however, in the singular, agreeing with one of the nominatives, and being understood with the other. Where a *contrast* is to be forcibly expressed, it usually agrees with the *nearest* subject (*M.*), even *against* the rule of the *more worthy* person. "Ego *sententiam tu verba* defendis."

<sup>b</sup> This way of speaking arises from the old grammatical principle, that the *first* person is more worthy than the *second*; the *second*, than the *third*.

a) Hence:—If one of the subjects be of the *first* person, the verb must be placed in the first person plural.

b) If one of them be of the *second* person, there being none of the first, the verb must be placed in the *second* person plural.

3 (b) The verbs *est* and *sunt* are often omitted.

(a) Et ego<sup>c</sup> et *Balbus sustulimus* manus, *Both I and Balbus lifted up our hands.*

(b) *Amici veterimi optimi, The oldest friends are the best.*

### Vocabulary 1.

4 *And, et; que enclitic; atque, ac*<sup>d</sup>.

*If, si.*

*Both—and, et—et.*

*Hand, manus, 4, f.*

*Sister, sör-or, öria.*

*Well, bénë.*

*Hunger, fäm-es, is, f.*

*Seasoning, sauce, condimentum.*

*Army, exercitus, 4.*

*War, bellum.*

*A Gaul, Gallus.*

*Many, multi, æ, a.*

*Very many, permulti<sup>e</sup>, æ, a.*

*Cæsar, Cæsar, Cæsãris.*

*To lift up, tollere, sustül-, sublät-*

*To be in good health; to be well, valere.*

*To wage, gërere, gess-, gest-; properly to carry.*

*To conquer, vincere, vic-, vict-*

### Exercise 1.

(Words enclosed in parentheses are to be omitted in translating.)

- 5 1. If you and the army<sup>f</sup> are-in-good-health, it is well (p. 7. 13).  
 2. Both you and Balbus lifted up (your) hands. 3. Both *you and I* (1, *Obs. ß*) have waged many' wars. 4. Both you and Balbus have waged very-many' wars. 5. The best' sauce (is) hunger.  
 6. The Gauls were conquered by Cæsar. 7. Hands were lifted up both by you and by Balbus. 8. If you and your sister are-in-good-health, it is well. 9. I have conquered the citizens, you the Gauls. (Note a.)

<sup>c</sup> For "Balbus and I," the Romans, putting "I" first, said, "*Ego et Balbus.*" When therefore Cardinal Wolsey said "*Ego et Rex meus,*" he was a good grammarian but bad courtier.

<sup>d</sup> Et joins words each of which is considered *independently*, and as of *equal importance*: ATQUE (= *adque*) or AC, which is an abridged (and less emphatic) form of the same word, adds a notion that is, if any thing, of *more importance* than the preceding one (= 'and also,' 'and moreover'), the connected notions are often of the *same kind*: QUE joins a word closely to another, as an *appendage* to it, as *belonging* to it, and often as forming one complex notion with it.

When *et* connects *principal clauses*, *subordinate* ones and single words must be connected by *que* or (if *similar* notions) *atque*.

*Atque* is used before vowels or consonants, but especially before vowels.

*Ac* is used before *consonants* (though not *very often* before the *k* sounds); but not before *vowels* or *h*. Mr. Allen shows that *ac* (though very rarely met with before *g, q*) is not very uncommon in Cicero before *c*. So also Zump<sup>e</sup>.

<sup>e</sup> *Per* in composition with an adjective, adds to it the meaning of 'very.'

<sup>f</sup> *Exercitusque*. *Que* must always be appended to the latter of the two words connected by it.

§ 2. ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE.

The *Infinitive* takes before it (as its *subject*), not the *nomina-* 6  
*tive*, but the *accusative* s.

a) Frāter cēcidit, *his brother fell.*

b) Fratrem cēcidisse, (*his brother to have fallen* =) *that his bro-*  
*ther fell* (or, *had fallen*).

Many sentences that in English are introduced by the conjunction ‘*that*,’ are 7  
 expressed in Latin by the *accusative* and *infinitive*.

In turning such sentences into Latin, ‘*that*’ must be omitted; the English 8  
*nominative* turned into the *accusative*; and the English verb into the *infinitive*  
 mood of the same tense.

The accusative with the infinitive follows (a) verbs (*sentiendi et declarandi*) of 9  
*feeling, knowing, wishing, hearing, believing, thinking, &c.*; and (b) such expres-  
 sions as, *it is certain, manifest, true, &c.*

Though it usually follows the expressions mentioned in b, it is really the *sub-*  
*ject* of the sentence.

The pupil must remember, that the *present* and *perfect* of the  
 infinitive correspond, respectively, to the *imperfect* and *pluperfect*  
 of the indicative, as well as to the *present* and *perfect*.

(a) Respondeo, placēre et mihi locum, *I answer, that the place* 10  
*pleases me too.* [*Placēre* is followed by a *dat.* of the *person.*]

(b) Respondit, placēre et sibi locum, *He answered, that the place*  
*pleased him too.*

(c) Sentimus calēre ignem, nivem esse albam, dulce mel, *We per-*  
*ceive-by-our-senses, that fire is hot; that snow is white, honey sweet.*

Vocabulary 2.

To answer, respondēre, respond-, re-  
 spons-.

To understand, intelligēre, intellex-,  
 intellect-.

To deny, negare.

To sin, peccare.

I remember, mēmīni. (*Imper., me-* 11  
*mento; pl. mementote.*)

To know-by-the-senses; to perceive-by-  
 the-senses, sentire, sens-, sens-.

To injure, offend against, violare.

Law, lex, legis, f.

Plain, manifestus.

[CAUTIONS.] ~~us~~ Him, her, them (or, he, she, they, when they 12  
 are to be translated by the *accusative*) must be translated by the  
 proper case of *sui*, whenever one of these pronouns stands for  
 the *same person* as the *subject* of the sentence.

Also, on the same supposition, *his, hers, its, theirs*, must be  
 translated by the proper case of *suus*.

{ Caius says that it pleases him.

{ Caius said that it pleased him.

13

s We are not quite without this idiom in English.

“I ordered *him* to be dismissed” (= ‘I ordered *that he* should be dismissed’).

“I saw *him* to be a knave” (= ‘I saw *that he* was a knave’).

Such a sentence as “narravit fratrem suum in proelio cecidisse,” may be  
 sometimes translated literally, “*he declared* (or *reported*) *his brother to have fallen*  
*in the battle.*”



In English the dependent verb in a sentence introduced by 'that' assumes (by a kind of attraction) the *past form*, when the verb it depends on is in a *past tense*.

Hence——

☞ In a sentence with 'that' dependent on a *past tense*, the *English perfect* is to be translated by the present infinitive, whenever the notion expressed by it, is not to be described as over before the action described by the principal verb<sup>h</sup>.

☞ In a sentence introduced by 'that,' when the verb has the auxiliary 'should,' it is to be translated by the present infinitive, when it does not express either duty or a future event.

*Exercise 2.*

- 14 1. He answered that he<sup>1)</sup> had waged many wars. 2. He *denies* that he has sinned (or: *says* that he has *not* sinned)<sup>2)</sup>. 3. He *says* that he does *not*<sup>2)</sup> understand. 4. He *says* that Cæsar will *not*<sup>2)</sup> offend-against the laws. 5. Remember that hunger is the best sauce. 6. He answered that he understood<sup>2)</sup>. 7. He answered, that both you and Balbus were-in-good-health.<sup>2)</sup> 8. Both you and Balbus have sinned. 9. It is plain that the place pleases you. 10. It is plain that the place pleased you (*pl.*). 11. It was plain that the place pleased you.

§ 3. ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE (*continued*).

- 15 (a) After the verbs *sperare* (to hope), *promittere* or *polliceri* (to promise), *recipere* (to engage, or undertake, &c.), the *future infinitive*<sup>1</sup> is used in Latin with the *accusative* of the pronoun; and (b) after *simulare* (to pretend), the *acc.* of the pronoun must be expressed in Latin.

- 16 (a) *Sperat* plerumque adolescens diu se *victurum* (esse)<sup>2)</sup>, *A young man generally hopes* to live a long time.

(b) *Simulat se furere*, *He pretends to be mad.*

☞ After a *past tense*, the forms 'will' and 'shall' become 'would' and 'should' respectively: hence, after a *past tense*, they are the auxiliary verbs of the *future*.

{ He *says* that he *will* come.  
{ He *said* that he *would* come.

<sup>h</sup> Thus "he said that it pleased him"—when? at the time of his saying it? (*placere*): before the time of his saying it? (*placuisse*).

<sup>1</sup> For 'he promises to come' = he promises that he will come.

He hopes to live = he hopes that he shall live.

He pretends to be mad = he pretends that he is mad.

<sup>2</sup> With the compound infinitives *esse* is often omitted.

Vocabulary 3.

*A business*, negotium; res, rei, f.  
*A journey*, iter, G. itinēris, n.  
*Every thing*, omnia. See 23.  
*To do*, facere, fec-, fact-.  
*To hope*, sperare.  
*To come*, venire, ven-, vent-.  
*To promise*, polliceri, pollicitus: promittēre, promiss-, promiss-<sup>1</sup>.  
*To undertake*, engage, recipere, io, recep-, recept-: mostly with dat. of the

person to whom one makes the promise; 17  
 recipio tibi, vobis, &c.  
*To finish*, accomplish, conficere, io, confēc-, confect-.  
*To pretend*, simulare<sup>m</sup>.  
*To be mad*, frēre.  
*To* (my, your, &c.) *satisfaction*; *satisfactorily*, *successfully*, ex sententiā<sup>n</sup>.  
*To have a prosperous voyage*, ex sententiā navigare.

Exercise 3.

1. Solon pretended to be mad. 2. I will pretend to be mad. 18  
 3. He promised to come. 4. I engage to finish the business to your satisfaction. 5. I hope that you will have a prosperous voyage. 6. The business has been finished by Balbus. 7. I hope to finish the business. 8. He was pretending to be mad. 9. I promised to finish the business. 10. He answered, that Caius had had a prosperous voyage. 11. He answered that he would<sup>1</sup> finish the business. 12. He says that he will not<sup>2</sup> come. 13. He has accomplished his journey satisfactorily. 14. Caius undertook to do every thing.

§ 4. AGREEMENT OF AN ADJECTIVE WITH ITS SUBSTANTIVE.

(a) When an adjective agrees with several singular substantives, 19 it will be in the plural number, and agree in gender with the most worthy.

(b) If the substantives are things that have not life, the adjective is usually in the neuter gender.

(c) When the noun is 'man,' 'woman,' 'thing,' it is seldom 21 expressed in Latin.

☞ 'Thing' is, however, generally expressed by 'res' (fem.), when the adjective alone would leave it doubtful whether men or things were meant.

Thus 'of many things,' multarum rerum. Very seldom, and only when no mistake can occur, multorum.

(a) Castor et Pollux ex equis pugnare visi sunt, Castor and 22 Pollux were seen to fight on horseback.

<sup>1</sup> Promittere (to give it forth) is the general word for promising, whether good or evil. Polliceri is to offer from one's own free-will and inclination; used only of promising good. Polliceor being used for free and gracious promises, promitto would naturally be often used of promising what has been requested. Hence—

Ultra polliceor; promitto (sæpe) rogatus:

Nec mala polliceor, mala sed promittere possum.

<sup>m</sup> Quæ non sunt simulo; quæ sunt, ea dissimulantur.

<sup>n</sup> The pronoun should be expressed (ex meâ sententiâ, &c.) whenever to leave it out would cause an ambiguity.

- (b) *Inter se contraria sunt beneficium et injuria, A benefit and an injury are contrary to each other.*  
 (c) *Boni sapientesque ex civitate pelluntur, The good and wise are banished (literally, driven from the state).*  
 (d) *Præterita mutare non possumus, We cannot change the past.*  
 (e) *Omnia mea mecum porto, I am carrying all my property with me.*

23 *Obs. 1.* Of adjectives relating indefinitely to *magnitude, quantity, &c.*, the *neuter plural* without a substantive is generally used in Latin, where we use the *singular*. Thus—

<i>much,</i>	<i>very much,</i>	<i>every thing,</i>	<i>the past,</i>
<i>multa,</i>	<i>permulta,</i>	<i>omnia,</i>	<i>præterita,</i>
<i>little, (few things)</i>		<i>very little,</i>	
<i>pauca,</i>		<i>perpauca.</i>	

24 *Obs. 2.* The *neuter adj.* is used in Latin without a substantive, where we might substitute '*things,*' but really use some more appropriate noun, as *property, objects, possessions, performances, &c.*

*Cum* is written *after, and as one word with, the ablatives* *me, te, &c. : mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum.*

#### Vocabulary 4.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>25 <i>Contrary, contrarius.</i><br/> <i>To each other, after contrary, inter se, between themselves.</i><br/> <i>Good, better, best, bonus, melior, optimus.</i><br/> <i>Wise, sapiens, -ntis.</i><br/> <i>Deaf, surdus.</i><br/> <i>Parent, parens, parentis.</i><br/> <i>Virtue, virtus, ūtis, f.</i><br/> <i>Vice; a fault, or flaw, vitium.</i><br/> <i>Blind, cæcus.</i><br/> <i>All my property, omnia mea °.</i><br/> <i>To owe, debere.</i></p> | <p><i>To banish, pellere or expellere ex civitate.—Pellere, pēpūl-, puls-, drive.</i><br/> <i>To be ignorant of, ignorare, acc.</i><br/> <i>See, cernere, properly to separate: hence to distinguish; to see clearly; the proper word to express the possession of distinct vision.</i><br/> <i>To carry, portare.</i><br/> <i>To hear, audire.</i><br/> <i>To speak, loqui, locūtus or loquutus.</i><br/> <i>To fight on horseback, ex equo, or ex equis p pugnare.—Pugnare, to fight.</i></p> |
|--|---|

#### Exercise 4.

- 26 1. They are banishing *the good and wise*. 2. We are all ignorant of *many things*. 3. *Virtue and vice* are *contrary* to each other. 4. A *blind man* does not see. 5. *The good and wise* have been banished. 6. A *deaf man* does not hear. 7. Hear *much* (23); speak *little* (p. 7. 15, b). 8. We shall carry *all our property* with us. 9. He spoke *very little*. 10. Both you and Balbus are ignorant of *many things*. 11. He *says* that he is *not*<sup>2</sup> well. 12. They will hear *little*<sup>1</sup>: they will speak *much* (p. 7. 15, b). 13. We owe *very much* to our parents. 14. Remember that you owe *very much*<sup>1</sup> to your parents. 15. He *says* that he will *not*<sup>2</sup> fight on horseback.

° The other possessives, *tuus, suus, noster, &c.*, must be used for *thy, his, our, &c., property.*

P *Ex equo*, if we are speaking of *one* person; *ex equis*, if of more.

§ 5. THE RELATIVE.

The Relative pronouns				27
<i>qui</i> ,	<i>qualis</i> ,	<i>quantus</i> ,	<i>quot</i> ,	
answer respectively to				
<i>is</i> ,	<i>talis</i> ,	<i>tantus</i> ,	<i>tot</i> .	

In a relative sentence <sup>q</sup>,

☞ *Each clause has its own verb, and its own independent construction.*

The relative pronoun *qui* agrees with some case of a substantive which is usually expressed in the preceding sentence. The substantive to which it thus refers, is called its *antecedent* (or *fore going* substantive).

Obs. 1. The antecedent, in a sentence fully expressed, would be expressed twice; and it sometimes is expressed twice in Latin: this, however, is but seldom the case, and the antecedent is generally omitted in the relative clause.

Obs. 2. ☞ With *talis—qualis*; *tantus—quantus*, the correlatives agree each with the substantives of its own clause, which may or may not be different. Thus *habeo tantam voluptatem, quantam tu* (here the substantives are the same: *voluptas*): but *tantum animum habent, quantam habent voluntatem* (here they are different: *animus* and *voluntas*).

(c) Sometimes however the antecedent is expressed in the relative, and omitted in the principal clause: and (d) when this is the case, the relative clause is often placed first; the antecedent being expressed in *it*, and represented in the principal clause (though not always) by the proper case of 'is' (*ea, id*); seldom 'hic.'

The 'is,' however, is often omitted, especially when 'man' or 'thing' is meant, 31 or when the verbs govern the same case.

If the antecedent would be in different cases in the two clauses, 'is' or 'hic' is but seldom omitted <sup>r</sup>.

- (a) *Nullum animal, quod sanguinem habet, sine corde esse potest, No animal that has blood can be without a heart.*
- (b) *Arbōres seret diligens agricōla, quarum adspiciet baccam ipse nunquam, The industrious husbandman will plant trees, any fruit of which he will himself never behold.*
- (c) *Accepi, quas literas ad me dedisti, I have received the letters which you sent me.*
- (d) *Bestiæ in quo loco natæ sunt, ex eo se non commōvent, Animals do not move themselves from the neighbourhood (place) in which they were born.*

<sup>q</sup> The clause in which the relative stands is called the *relative clause*; the other, the *principal*, or *antecedent* clause.

<sup>r</sup> It is, however, sometimes:

*Quos cum Matio pueros miseram, epistolam mihi attulerunt.* (Cic.)

— *Quæ prima innocentis mihi defensio est oblata, suscepi.*

<sup>s</sup> *A berry*; any little round fruit, not a nut: e.g. of the olive, cedar, juniper, &c. *Nec fruges terræ baccasve arborum . . . dedisset.* (Cic.)

☞ Many English verbs *become* transitive by the addition of a *preposition*; for instance, *to smile at*, &c.

It often happens that the corresponding Latin verb is *already transitive*, so that the preposition is not to be expressed. To determine whether the preposition *belongs* (as it were) *to the verb*, turn the sentence into the passive: when, if the preposition still *clings to the verb*† (adverbially), it is generally not to be expressed in Latin.

Of course a verb, compound or simple, must be sought for, that is equivalent to the verb and preposition together: as *to deride*, = *to laugh at*.

### Vocabulary 5.

- 83 Obs. Substantives in *us* from the root of the supine (which end therefore in *tus* or *sus*) are of the fourth declension; except, of course, those that, like *legatus*, denote *persons*.

*No*, nullus, a, um. G. -ius.

*Animal*, animal, ālis.

*Blood*, sanguis, inis, m.

*Without*, sine, abl.

*Heart*, cor, cordis, n.

*Tree*, arbor, arbōris, f.

*Fruits of the earth; a crop*, fruges, G.

frugum, f.—of trees, fructus<sup>a</sup>, see

Obs.

*Field*, āger, agri.

*In vain*, nequidquam, frustra √.

*Harvest*, messis, is.

*Praise*, laus, laudis.

*Easily*, facile.

*Not yet*, nondum.

*Right*, rectus.

*To till, cultivate*, cōlere, colu-, cult-.

*To bear, produce*, fēro, tūli, lātum.

*To deserve, mēri*, meritus. To deserve well, &c. of (*de* with *abl.*).

*To praise*, laudare.

*To believe*, crēdere, crūdid-, credit-; *dat.*

*To deceive*, decipere, io, decēp-, decept-.

*To behold*, adspicere, io, adspex-, aspect-.

*Self, myself, himself*, &c. in nom. (*ipse stands for all these, the pronoun ego, tu, &c. not being expressed*). *I myself* is, however, often *egomet*.

☞ 'What' as a relative = *that which*; or *those (things) which*.

### Exercise 5.

- 84 1. No animals, which have blood, can be without a heart. 2. Not every field which is sown, bears a crop. 3. (He) who easily believes, is easily deceived. 4. What is right, is praised. 5. (Those things) which are right are praised. 6. Both you and I have been deceived. 7. Praise what deserves praise. 8. (He) who does not till his field, in vain hopes for<sup>7)</sup> a harvest. 9. He says that he has *not*<sup>8)</sup> been deceived. 10. I shall not easily believe Balbus'. 11. Balbus has deserved well of me. 12. The business

† Thus:—

'He laughs at Cassius.'

'Cassius is *laughed at*.' Therefore to *laugh-at* is virtually one verb

<sup>a</sup> *Fructus arboribus, fruges nascuntur in agris.*

But this is only true of *fruges*; and of *fructus*, as opposed to *fruges*. *Fructus* is the general name for *produce*, and may be spoken of *land* as well as of trees; and in *poetry* we find *frugibus* (Columella's poem on Gardening), and *fruge* (Hor.) of the fruit of trees.

<sup>v</sup> *Nequidquam* (*to no purpose, in vain*), so far as nothing has resulted from a *thing done*; *frustra* (*in vain*) of a *person* who has not attained his purpose. (D.)

which you promised to *finish*<sup>s</sup>, has not yet been finished<sup>w</sup>. 13. I have planted a tree, the fruit of which I shall myself never<sup>r</sup> behold. 14. He is pretending to *have finished*<sup>s</sup> the business to *his satisfaction*.

§ 6. INFINITIVE USED SUBSTANTIVELY.

(a) The *Infinitive*, as doing little more than *name* the action or 35 state denoted by the verb, may be considered a *verbal substantive* of the *neuter gender*.

(b) An *Infinitive* (alone, or with other dependent notions) may stand as the *nominative case* to *est* (*erat, fuit, &c.*), or to an *impersonal verb*. An *adjective* used with *est, &c.*, and referring to an *Infinitive*, will be in the *neuter gender*.

*Obs.* In English when an *Infinitive* (or a sentence introduced by 'that') is the *nominative* to a verb, it generally *follows it*, the pronoun 'it' being used as its representative before the verb. "It is pleasant to be praised." "It is strange that you should say so." Of course this 'it' is not to be translated into Latin.

(a) An *Infinitive* may also be the *antecedent* to a *relative*, which 36 will of course be in the *neuter gender*.

(b) Sometimes a *relative* refers to the *whole statement* made by a sentence. When this is the case, we often find *id*\* *quod* for *quod* only. (Here *id* is in *apposition* to the former sentence.) Sometimes *quæ res* is found: = 'a circumstance which.'

*Obs.* 1. The use of *id quod*, for *quod* only, adds emphasis to the *relative clause*; which then generally precedes the principal clause, or is inserted in it.

*Obs.* 2. 'As' is often used in English for 'a thing which,' or 'which,' in *apposition* to a sentence. "He, as you have heard, died at Rome," = *which thing* (*id quod*) you have heard.

(a) *Turpe est mentiri, It is disgraceful to lie.* 37

(b) *Multæ civitates a Cyro defecerunt; quæ res multorum bellorum causa fuit, Many states revolted from Cyrus, a circumstance which was the cause of many wars.*

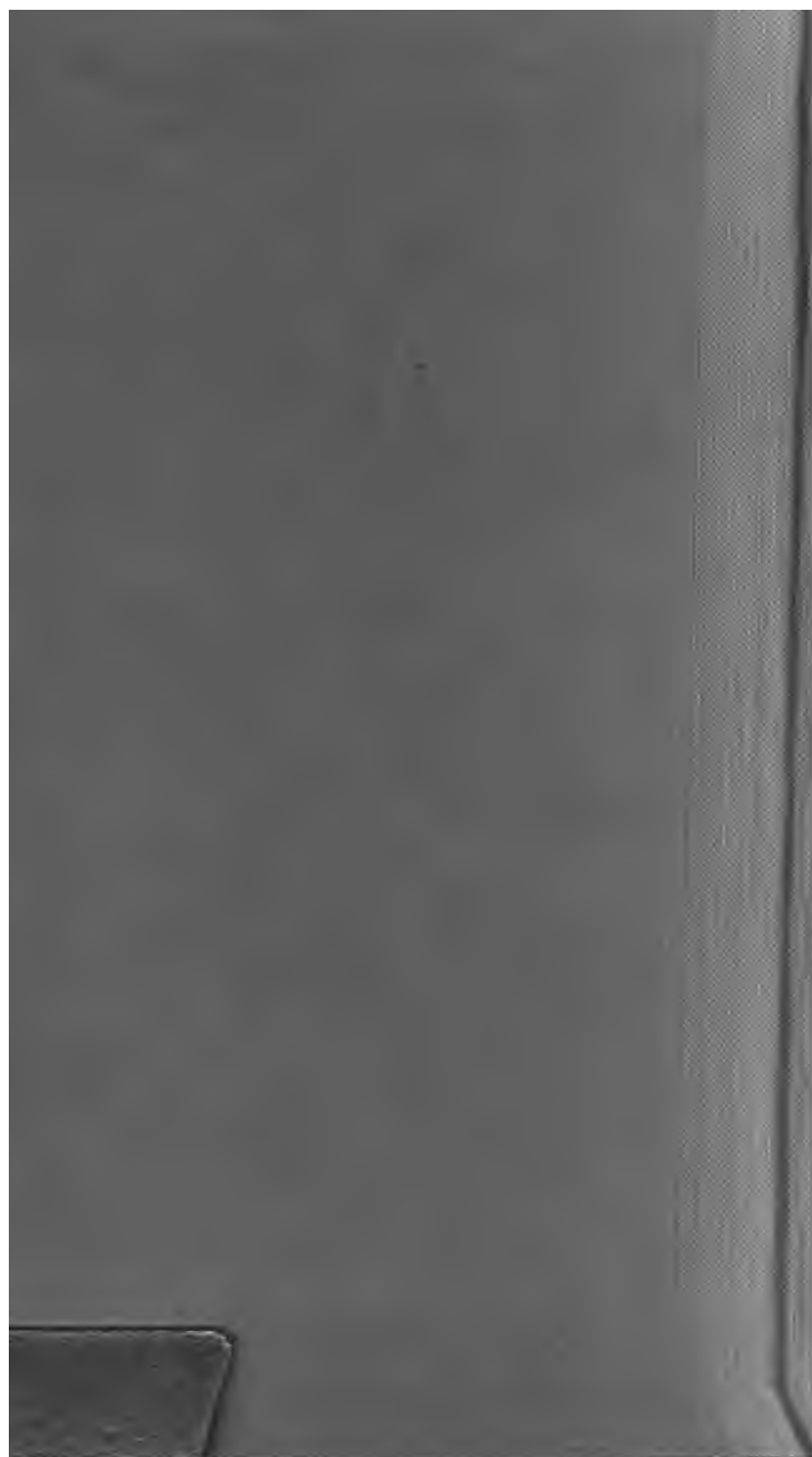
(c) *Timoleon, id\* quod difficilium putatur, sapientius tulit secundam quam adversam fortunam, Timoleon, which is thought the more difficult [task], bore a prosperous more wisely than an adverse fortune.*

Vocabulary 6.

*Pleasant, delightful, jucundus.*  
*Duty, officium.*  
*Against, contra with acc.*

*Promise, promissum.*  
*Disgraceful, turpis.*  
*Easy, facilis.*

<sup>w</sup> Invert these clauses: that is, put the relative clause first.







*One thing—another, aliud—aliud.*

*Man, homo, hominis; vir, viri* <sup>z</sup>, &c.  
of the 2nd decl.

*To keep, servare.*

*Revile, maledicere, dat.*

*To accuse, accusare.*

*To break one's word, fidem fallere. Fal-  
lere, fefelli* <sup>y</sup>, *deceive, beguile.*

*To keep one's word, fidem præstare;*  
*præstare, præstiti* <sup>z</sup>.

*To lie, mentiri.*

*To utter many falsehoods, multa mentiri.*

*It is a breach of duty, contra officium  
est, it is against duty.*

☞ 'For' before a substantive or pronoun followed by the *infin.* is not to be translated. The construction is the *acc.* with *infin.*<sup>a</sup>

It is a sin { for a boy not to obey his parents.  
that a boy should not obey his parents.

#### Exercise 6.

- 39 1. It is pleasant to be praised. 2. It is a breach of duty not to keep promises. 3. It is a breach of duty to praise what (*plur.*) is disgraceful. 4. I hear that you keep your promises, *a thing which* (*c*) all good men do. 5. I hear that you are going to keep your word. 6. It is disgraceful to break one's word. 7. It is one thing to revile, another to accuse. 8. It is certain that Balbus has deserved well of me. 9. It is a breach of duty to lie. 10. Both you and Balbus have *uttered many falsehoods*. 11. It is disgraceful to *banish* the good and wise. 12. It is easy (for me) to carry all my property with me<sup>d</sup>. 13. It is a breach of duty for a man to revile men. 14. I have praised, not blamed you (*note* <sup>\*</sup>, p. 9). 15. Timoleon, *as* you have often heard, bore adverse fortune very wisely.

### § 7. RELATIVE (continued).

*Fundamental Rule for employing the tenses of the Subjunctive.*

Wherever *dependent* verbs are used in the Subjunctive, the following is the fundamental rule for the use of the *tenses* in Latin.

- 40 ☞ The *imperfect* and *pluperfect* of the subjunctive are the regular attendants of the *past tenses* of the indicative.

The English *perfect definite*<sup>b</sup> (or perfect with 'have') is considered a *present* tense. It is, from its nature, a *present-perfect*.

<sup>z</sup> *Homo* is the general term for *man*, *i. e.* for a *human being*, distinguished from other living creatures.

*Vir* is *man* as distinguished from *woman*. *Homo* is often used *contemptuously*: *vir, respectfully; a man with a manly character.*

<sup>y</sup> Distinction between *fallo* and *decipio*:

*Nullá fallentis culpá sæpissime fallor;*

*At quum decipiar, culpam deceptor habebit.*

<sup>z</sup> Cic. has *præstaturus*.

<sup>a</sup> But we shall see below that if 'for' follows immediately after 'it is,' it must be translated by the genitive. '*It is for a rich man to do so and so; divitis est, &c.*'

<sup>b</sup> The *perfect definite* is used of actions done in some *space of time*, a part of which is still *present*.

The rule given in 40 implies, that in Latin the present, future, and perfect, when it is equivalent to our perfect with 'have,' are followed by the *present*, or (for a completed action) the *perfect* of the subjunctive <sup>c</sup>.

425 The future perfect is not a subjunctive tense. 41

The only future subjunctive is the part. in *rus* with *sim, essem, &c.* But where we use a *future* in a dependent sentence the Romans often used the *present* or *imperfect* of the subjunctive <sup>\*</sup>.

(On some English relative forms.)

'That' is often a relative pronoun. 42

(Especially after *superlatives*; the interrogative *who*; *the same*; and when both *persons* and *things* are meant.)

(a) 'As' is often, in effect, a relative pronoun. 43

The relative 'as' must be translated by *qui* after *idem*; by *qualis, quantus, quot*, after *talis, tantus, tot*, respectively. (See 29, Obs. 2.)

(1) 'But' is often, in effect, a relative pronoun, when it follows 44  
*universal negatives*, as *nemo, nullus, nihil*.

(2) The (virtually) relative 'but' is to be translated by *quin* † with the *subjunctive*. (c)

(3) When 'but' might be substituted for a *relative* with 'not,' the *relative* and 'not' may be translated by *quin* <sup>d</sup>, if the relative is in the *nom.* (or even *acc.*) case.

427 'Such' in English is often used where *size* is meant, rather than *quality*. 'Such-as' should then be translated into Latin by *tantus—quantus*; not by *talis—qualis*.

(a) *Talis est, qualis semper fuit, He is such as he has ever been.* 45

(b) *Idem est, qui semper fuit, He is the same that (or as) he has ever been.*

(c) *Nemo est, quin<sup>e</sup> te dementem putet, There is no one but thinks you mad (or, who does not think you mad).*

Vocabulary 7.

*The same, idem, eadem, idem.*  
*Rule, regula.*

*Expediency, utilit-as, atis.*  
*Expedient, utilis.*

46

<sup>c</sup> Thus then the

Present	} are followed by the	{ Present subj. Perfect subj. (for a <i>completed</i> action).
Future		
Perfect with 'have'		
Imperfect	} are followed by the	{ Imperfect subj. Pluperfect subj. (for an action <i>completed</i> before the time spoken of).
Future		
Pluperfect		

<sup>\*</sup> For instance, after verbs of *fearing*.

† *Qui non* is by no means uncommon.

<sup>d</sup> With other cases than the *nominative* and *accusative*, the use of the *relative* with *non* is commonly preferred. Z. When *qui non* must be used, will be explained below.

<sup>e</sup> *Quin* is *qui nē* (= *ut non*): *qui* being the old abl. for *quo*. The demonstr. pronoun (which is the real *nom.*) is sometimes expressed: as in 88 (a).

<p><i>Honour; the honorable; honorable conduct, honest-as, atis.</i>  <i>Nobody, no one, nem-o, inis.—Nemo = ne homo. See Caution 36.</i>  <i>To think, deem, putare.</i>  <i>This, hic (hæc, hoc).</i>  <i>That, ille (illa, illud).</i>  <i>Nearly, fere.</i></p>	<p><i>Another, ali-us, a, ud, G. alius, D. alii, &amp;c.</i>  <i>Never, nunquam (or, numquam).</i>  <i>Before, antea.</i>  <i>To be able—can, posse †.</i>  <i>Wave, fluctus. What is its genitive? why! See 33.</i></p>
---	--

- (a) ~~45~~ After *sunt qui* (it means that 'there are some')  
Remember—the *subjunctive mood* should come.

Thus: *sunt qui putent: erant or fuerunt, qui putarent.*

#### Exercise 7.

~~45~~ 'That,' when it stands for a substantive which has been expressed in the preceding clause, is not to be translated.

~~46~~ The *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect* of the *Subjunctive* are the regular attendants of the *past tenses* of the *Indicative*.

- 47 1. This is the same as that. 2. The rule of expediency is the same as that <sup>11)</sup> of honour. 3. This is nearly the same as another thing. 4. You are such as I have always thought you. 5. There is nobody *but* knows, that the Gauls were conquered by Cæsar. 6. There is no one *who* does *not* (45, c) understand, that you are pretending. 7. There is no one *but* knows that *the past* (23, obs. 1) cannot be changed. 8. There is no one *but* knows, that these things are contrary to *each other*. 9. Both you and I are such as we have ever been. 10. The waves were *such* <sup>10)</sup> as I had never seen before.—11. There are some who think you mad (46, a). 12. There were some who blamed me.

### § 8. RELATIVE (continued).

- 48 (a, b) When the relative connects (by means of 'to be' or a verb of *naming*, &c.) two substantives of different genders, &c. it *generally* agrees with the *latter*, rather than with its antecedent.

(Agreement with the *latter* [the predicate] is the *rule*; agreement with the antecedent the *exception*.)

- 49 But when the second substantive is a *foreign word*, the relative *generally* agrees with its antecedent. (Z.)<sup>5</sup>

(Jovis *stella, quæ φαίθων* dicitur.)

<sup>†</sup> This verb is compounded of an old adj. *potis*, neut. *potē*, with *sum*. 'Pot' is prefixed to the tenses of *sum*, *ts* being changed into *ss*, and *pot-esse*, *pot-essen* shortened into *posse*, *possem* (posses, &c.).

The perfect tenses regular from *potui* (= *potis fui*). No *imperative*: the part. *potens* is used as an adjective.

<sup>5</sup> This is *Zumpt's* rule, which *Krüger* approves of; but thinks that we cannot go *beyond* this in determining *when* agreement with the antecedent should be preferred.

*Bremi* says: "videntur id (pronomen) ad antecedens substantivum referre, si ad *vocabulum* respiciunt; sin vero ad *rem*, ad consequens." But *Krüger* shows that even if this should explain Cicero's practice, it is obviously at variance with that of other writers.

- (a) *Domicilia conjuncta, quas urbes dicimus, Contiguous dwell- 50*  
*ings, which we call cities.*  
 (b) *Thebæ, quod Bœotix caput est, Thebes, which is the capital*  
*of Bœotia.*

Vocabulary 8.

Glory, gloria.

Honorable, honestus.

Star, stella: astrum, which is properly  
 a Greek word, and sidus, sideris, n. a  
 constellation: and also, one of the  
 great heavenly luminaries, e. g. the  
 sun, the moon, Sirius, &c.

Perpetual, lasting, sempiternus.

Fire, ignis, m.

Island, insula.

Sea, mare, n.

Ocean, Océanus, i.

As it were, quasi.

The world, orbis terræ, or terrarum. 51

Orbis, m.

Head, capital city, cāput, capitis, n.

To reject, repudiare.

To admire, wonder at, admirari.

To be washed, circumfundi, circum-  
 fūsus. Literally, to be poured around;  
 and either the island or the sea is  
 said circumfundi.

To inhabit, in-cōlere, colu-, cult-.

To call, in the sense of naming (vō-  
 care, appellare, nōminare, dicere<sup>h</sup>).

Exercise 8.

1. He rejects glory, which is the most honorable fruit' of true' 52  
 virtue (*Gen.* before *fructus*). 2. He is admiring those perpetual  
 fires, which we call stars. 3. The island is washed by the sea,  
 which you (*pl.*) call ocean. 4. We inhabit a great island, as it  
 were<sup>i</sup>, which we call the world. 5. There is nobody *but*<sup>o</sup> thinks  
 Rome the capital' of the world<sup>t</sup>. 6. There is no one *but* thinks  
 that Balbus has deserved well *of* us.—7. There are some who  
 laugh. 8. There are some who laughed (46, a).

§ 9. RELATIVE (continued).

Relative with superlative. "The first who —."

(a) When the antecedent has a *superlative*\* with it, the adjec- 53  
 tive is generally put in the relative clause.

(b) To express "the *first* person *who* did a thing" the Romans 54  
 did not use a relative sentence, but made *primus* agree with the  
 nominative of the principal verb.

(a) *Volsci civitatem, quam habebant optimam, perdiderunt, The* 55  
*Volsci lost the best city they had.*

(b) *Primus mala nostra sensit, He was the first person who per-*  
*ceived our evils.*

<sup>h</sup> *Vocare, appellare, nominare* are all to *call*; but *vocare* has, *beside this*, the  
 meaning of to *call* = *summon*; *appellare*, that of *appealing to*, of *calling to for*  
*aid*; *nominare*, that of *naming*, in the sense of *appointing or electing*.

<sup>i</sup> *Quasi* should stand between *great* and *island*.

<sup>k</sup> *Orbis terrarum*, rather than *terræ*, when there is a decided reference to  
*other lands*.

\* The same rule holds good of other adjectives and of *appositions*.—See note  
 !7, p. 30, in Grotfend's "*Materials*."

In English the dependent verb in a sentence introduced by 'that' assumes (by a kind of attraction) the past form, when the verb it depends on is in a past tense.

Hence—

☞ In a sentence with 'that' dependent on a past tense, the English perfect is to be translated by the present infinitive, whenever the notion expressed by it, is not to be described as over before the action described by the principal verb<sup>h</sup>.

☞ In a sentence introduced by 'that,' when the verb has the auxiliary 'should,' it is to be translated by the present infinitive, when it does not express either duty or a future event.

Exercise 2.

- 14 1. He answered that he<sup>11</sup> had waged many wars. 2. He denies that he has sinned (or: says that he has not sinned)<sup>2</sup>. 3. He says that he does not<sup>2</sup> understand. 4. He says that Cæsar will not<sup>2</sup> offend-against the laws. 5. Remember that hunger is the best sauce. 6. He answered that he understood<sup>2</sup>. 7. He answered, that both you and Balbus were-in-good-health.<sup>2</sup> 8. Both you and Balbus have sinned. 9. It is plain that the place pleases you. 10. It is plain that the place pleased you (*pl.*). 11. It was plain that the place pleased you.

§ 3. ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE (*continued*).

- 15 (a) After the verbs *sperare* (to hope), *promittere* or *polliceri* (to promise), *recipere* (to engage, or undertake, &c.), the *future infinitive*<sup>1</sup> is used in Latin with the *accusative* of the pronoun; and (b) after *simulare* (to pretend), the *acc.* of the pronoun must be expressed in Latin.
- 16 (a) *Sperat* plerumque adolescens diu se *victurum* (esse)<sup>k</sup>, *A young man generally hopes to live a long time.*
- (b) *Simulat se furere, He pretends to be mad.*

☞ After a past tense, the forms 'will' and 'shall' become 'would' and 'should' respectively: hence, after a past tense, they are the auxiliary verbs of the future.

{ He says that he will come.  
{ He said that he would come.

<sup>h</sup> Thus "he said that it pleased him"—when? at the time of his saying it? (*placere*): before the time of his saying it? (*placuisse*).

<sup>1</sup> For 'he promises to come' = he promises that he will come.

He hopes to live = he hopes that he shall live.

He pretends to be mad = he pretends that he is mad.

<sup>k</sup> With the compound infinitives *esse* is often omitted.

Vocabulary 3.

*A business*, negotium; res, rei, f.  
*A journey*, iter, G. itinēris, n.  
*Every thing*, omnia. See 23.  
*To do*, facere, fec-, fact-.  
*To hope*, spērare.  
*To come*, venire, ven-, vent-.  
*To promise*, polliceri, pollicitus: promittēre, promiss-, promiss-<sup>1</sup>.  
*To undertake*, engage, recipere, io, recep-, recept-: mostly with dat. of the

person to whom one makes the promise; 17  
 recipio tibi, vobis, &c.  
*To finish*, accomplish, conficere, io, confec-, confect-.  
*To pretend*, simulare<sup>m</sup>.  
*To be mad*, frēre.  
*To* (my, your, &c.) *satisfaction*; *satisfactorily*, *successfully*, ex sententiā<sup>n</sup>.  
*To have a prosperous voyage*, ex sententiā nāvigare.

Exercise 3.

1. Solon pretended to be mad. 2. I will pretend to be mad. 18  
 3. He promised to come. 4. I engage to finish the business to your satisfaction. 5. I hope that you will have a prosperous voyage.  
 6. The business has been finished by Balbus. 7. I hope to finish the business. 8. He was pretending to be mad. 9. I promised to finish the business. 10. He answered, that Caius had had a prosperous voyage. 11. He answered that he would<sup>1</sup> finish the business. 12. He says that he will not<sup>2</sup> come. 13. He has accomplished his journey satisfactorily. 14. Caius undertook to do every thing.

§ 4. AGREEMENT OF AN ADJECTIVE WITH ITS SUBSTANTIVE.

(a) When an adjective agrees with several singular substantives, 19 it will be in the plural number, and agree in gender with the most worthy.

(b) If the substantives are things that have not life, the adjective is usually in the neuter gender.

(c) When the noun is 'man,' 'woman,' 'thing,' it is seldom 21 expressed in Latin.

☞ 'Thing' is, however, generally expressed by 'res' (fem.), when the adjective alone would leave it doubtful whether men or things were meant.

Thus 'of many things,' multarum rerum. Very seldom, and only when no mistake can occur, multorum.

(a) Castor et Pollux ex equis pugnare visi sunt, Castor and 22 Pollux were seen to fight on horseback.

<sup>1</sup> Promittere (to give it forth) is the general word for promising, whether good or evil. Polliceri is to offer from one's own free-will and inclination; used only of promising good. Polliceor being used for free and gracious promises, promitto would naturally be often used of promising what has been requested. Hence—

Ultero polliceor; promitto (sæpe) rogatus:

Nec mala polliceor, mala sed promittere possum.

<sup>m</sup> Quæ non sunt simulo; quæ sunt, ea dissimulantur.

<sup>n</sup> The pronoun should be expressed (ex meâ sententiâ, &c.) whenever to leave it out would cause an ambiguity.

- (b) *Inter se contraria sunt beneficium et injuria*, A benefit and an injury are contrary to each other.
- (c) *Boni sapientesque ex civitate pelluntur*, The good and wise are banished (literally, driven from the state).
- (d) *Præterita mutare non possumus*, We cannot change the past.
- (e) *Omnia mea mecum porto*, I am carrying all my property with me.
- 23 *Obs.* 1. Of adjectives relating indefinitely to *magnitude, quantity, &c.*, the neuter plural without a substantive is generally used in Latin, where we use the singular. Thus—
- |                             |                   |                     |                   |
|-----------------------------|-------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| <i>much,</i>                | <i>very much,</i> | <i>every thing,</i> | <i>the past,</i>  |
| <i>multa,</i>               | <i>permulta,</i>  | <i>omnia,</i>       | <i>præterita,</i> |
| <i>little, (few things)</i> |                   | <i>very little,</i> |                   |
| <i>pauca,</i>               |                   | <i>perpauca.</i>    |                   |
- 24 *Obs.* 2. The neuter adj. is used in Latin without a substantive, where we might substitute 'things,' but really use some more appropriate noun, as *property, objects, possessions, performances, &c.*
- Cum* is written after, and as one word with, the ablatives *me, te, &c.*: *mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum.*

#### Vocabulary 4.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>25 <i>Contrary, contrarius.</i><br/> <i>To each other, after contrary, inter se, between themselves.</i><br/> <i>Good, better, best, bonus, melior, optimus.</i><br/> <i>Wise, sapiens, -ntis.</i><br/> <i>Deaf, surdus.</i><br/> <i>Parent, parens, parentis.</i><br/> <i>Virtue, virtus, utis, f.</i><br/> <i>Vice; a fault, or flaw, vitium.</i><br/> <i>Blind, cæcus.</i><br/> <i>All my property, omnia mea °.</i><br/> <i>To owe, debere.</i></p> | <p><i>To banish, pellere or expellere ex civitate.—Pellere, pēpūl-, puls-, drive.</i><br/> <i>To be ignorant of, ignorare, acc.</i><br/> <i>See, cernere, properly to separate: hence to distinguish; to see clearly; the proper word to express the possession of distinct vision.</i><br/> <i>To carry, portare.</i><br/> <i>To hear, audire.</i><br/> <i>To speak, loqui, locūtus or loquutus.</i><br/> <i>To fight on horseback, ex equo, or ex equis pugnare.—Pugnare, to fight.</i></p> |
|--|---|

#### Exercise 4.

- 26 1. They are banishing *the good and wise*. 2. We are all ignorant of *many things*. 3. Virtue and vice are *contrary* to each other. 4. A *blind man* does not see. 5. *The good and wise* have been banished. 6. A *deaf man* does not hear. 7. Hear *much* (23); speak *little* (p. 7. 15, b). 8. We shall carry *all our property* with us. 9. He spoke *very little*. 10. Both you and Balbus are ignorant of *many things*. 11. He says that he is *not*<sup>2</sup> well. 12. They will hear *little*<sup>1</sup>: they will speak *much* (p. 7. 15, b). 13. We owe *very much* to our parents. 14. Remember that you owe *very much* to your parents. 15. He says that he will *not*<sup>2</sup> fight on horseback.

° The other possessives, *tuus, suus, noster, &c.*, must be used for *thy, his, our, &c., property.*

P *Ex equo*, if we are speaking of *one* person; *ex equis*, if of more.

§ 5. THE RELATIVE.

The Relative pronouns				27
qui,	qualis,	quantus,	quod,	
answer respectively to				
is,	talīs,	tantus,	tot.	

In a relative sentence <sup>q</sup>,

Each clause has its own verb, and its own independent construction.

The relative pronoun *qui* agrees with some case of a substantive which is usually expressed in the preceding sentence. The substantive to which it thus refers, is called its antecedent (or fore going substantive).

Obs. 1. The antecedent, in a sentence fully expressed, would be expressed twice; and it sometimes is expressed twice in Latin: this, however, is but seldom the case, and the antecedent is generally omitted in the relative clause.

Obs. 2. With *talīs—qualis*; *tantus—quantus*, the correlatives agree each with the substantives of its own clause, which may or may not be different. Thus *habeo tantam voluptatem, quantam tu* (here the substantives are the same: *voluptas*): but *tantum animum habent, quantam habent voluntatem* (here they are different: *animus* and *voluntas*).

(c) Sometimes however the antecedent is expressed in the relative, and omitted in the principal clause: and (d) when this is the case, the relative clause is often placed first; the antecedent being expressed in *it*, and represented in the principal clause (though not always) by the proper case of 'is' (*ea, id*); seldom 'hic.'

The 'is,' however, is often omitted, especially when 'man' or 'thing' is meant, or when the verbs govern the same case.

If the antecedent would be in different cases in the two clauses, 'is' or 'hic' is but seldom omitted.

(a) *Nullum animal, quod sanguinem habet, sine corde esse potest, No animal that has blood can be without a heart.*

(b) *Arbōres seret diligens agricōla, quarum adspiciet baccam ipse nunquam, The industrious husbandman will plant trees, any fruit of which he will himself never behold.*

(c) *Accepi, quas literas ad me dedisti, I have received the letters which you sent me.*

(d) *Bestiæ in quo loco natæ sunt, ex eo se non commōvent, Animals do not move themselves from the neighbourhood (place) in which they were born.*

<sup>q</sup> The clause in which the relative stands is called the relative clause; the other, the principal, or antecedent clause.

<sup>r</sup> It is, however, sometimes:

*Quos cum Matio pueros miseram, epistolam mihi attulerunt.* (Cic.)

*Quæ prima innocentis mihi defensio est oblata, suscepi.*

<sup>s</sup> *A berry*; any little round fruit, not a nut: e.g. of the olive, cedar, juniper, &c. *Nec fruges terræ baccasve arborum . . . dedisset.* (Cic.)



☞ Many English verbs *become* transitive by the addition of a *preposition*; for instance, *to smile at*, &c.

It often happens that the corresponding Latin verb is *already transitive*, so that the preposition is not to be expressed. To determine whether the preposition *belongs* (as it were) *to the verb*, turn the sentence into the passive: when, if the preposition still *clings to the verb*† (adverbially), it is generally not to be expressed in Latin.

Of course a verb, compound or simple, must be sought for, that is equivalent to the verb and preposition together: as *to deride*, = *to laugh at*.

### Vocabulary 5.

33 Obs. Substantives in *us* from the root of the supine (which end therefore in *tus* or *sus*) are of the fourth declension; except, of course, those that, like *legatus*, denote *persons*.

*No*, nullus, a, um. G. -ius.

*Animal*, animal, ālis.

*Blood*, sanguis, inis, m.

*Without*, sine, abl.

*Heart*, cor, cordis, n.

*Tree*, arbor, arbōris, f.

*Fruits of the earth*; a *crop*, frūges, G.

frugum, f.—of trees, fructus<sup>u</sup>, see

Obs.

*Field*, āger, agri.

*In vain*, nequidquam, frustra v.

*Harvest*, messis, is.

*Praise*, laus, laudis.

*Easily*, facile.

*Not yet*, nondum.

*Right*, rectus.

*To till, cultivate*, cōlere, colu-, cult-.

*To bear, produce*, fēro, tīlli, lātum.

*To deserve*, mēreri, meritus. To deserve well, &c. of (*de* with *abl.*).

*To praise*, laudare.

*To believe*, crēdere, crudid-, credit-; dat.

*To deceive*, decipere, io, decēp-, decept-.

*To behold*, adspicere, io, adspex-, adspect-.

*Self, myself, himself, &c. in nom.* (ipse stands for all these, the pronoun ego, tu, &c. not being expressed). *I myself* is, however, often *egomet*.

☞ 'What' as a relative = *that which*; or *those (things) which*.

### Exercise 5.

- 84 1. No animals, which have blood, can be without a heart. 2. Not every field which is sown, bears a crop. 3. (He) who easily believes, is easily deceived. 4. What is right', is praised. 5. (Those things) which are right' are praised. 6. Both you and I' have been deceived. 7. Praise what deserves praise. 8. (He) who does not till his field, in vain hopes for<sup>7)</sup> a harvest. 9. He says that he has *not*<sup>3</sup> been deceived. 10. I shall not easily believe Balbus'. 11. Balbus has deserved well of me. 12. The business

† Thus:—

'He laughs at Cassius.'

'Cassius is *laughed at*.' Therefore to *laugh-at* is virtually one verb

<sup>u</sup> *Fructus arboribus, fruges nascuntur in agris.*

But this is only true of *fruges*; and of *fructus*, as opposed to *fruges*. *Fructus* is the general name for *produce*, and may be spoken of *land* as well as of trees; and in *poetry* we find *frugibus* (Columella's poem on Gardening), and *fruge* (Hor.) of the fruit of trees.

<sup>v</sup> *Nequidquam* (to no purpose, in vain), so far as nothing has resulted from a thing done; *frustra* (in vain) of a person who has not attained his purpose. (D.)

which you promised to *finish*<sup>s</sup>, has not yet been finished<sup>w</sup>. 13. I have planted a tree, the fruit of which I shall myself never<sup>r</sup> behold. 14. He is pretending to *have finished*<sup>s</sup> the business to *his satisfaction*.

§ 6. INFINITIVE USED SUBSTANTIVELY.

(a) The *Infinitive*, as doing little more than *name* the action or 35 state denoted by the verb, may be considered a *verbal substantive* of the *neuter gender*.

(b) An *Infinitive* (alone, or with other dependent notions) may stand as the *nominative case* to *est* (*erat, fuit, &c.*), or to an *impersonal verb*. An *adjective* used with *est, &c.*, and referring to an *Infinitive*, will be in the *neuter gender*.

*Obs.* In English when an *Infinitive* (or a sentence introduced by '*that*') is the *nominative* to a verb, it generally *follows it*, the pronoun '*it*' being used as its representative before the verb. "*It is pleasant to be praised.*" "*It is strange that you should say so.*" Of course this '*it*' is not to be translated into Latin.

(a) An *Infinitive* may also be the *antecedent* to a *relative*, which 36 will of course be in the *neuter gender*.

(b) Sometimes a *relative* refers to the *whole statement* made by a sentence. When this is the case, we often find *id \* quod* for *quod* only. (Here *id* is in *apposition* to the former sentence.) Sometimes *quæ res* is found: = '*a circumstance which.*'

*Obs.* 1. The use of *id quod*, for *quod* only, adds emphasis to the *relative clause*; which then generally precedes the principal clause, or is inserted in it.

*Obs.* 2. '*As*' is often used in English for '*a thing which,*' or '*which,*' in *apposition* to a sentence. "He, *as you have heard*, died at Rome," = *which thing* (*id quod*) you have heard.

(a) *Turpe est mentiri, It is disgraceful to lie.* 37

(b) *Multæ civitates a Cyro defecerunt; quæ res multorum bellorum causa fuit, Many states revolted from Cyrus, a circumstance which was the cause of many wars.*

(c) *Timoleon, id \* quod difficilium putatur, sapientius tulit secundam quam adversam fortunam, Timoleon, which is thought the more difficult [task], bore a prosperous more wisely than an adverse fortune.*

Vocabulary 6.

*Pleasant, delightful, jucundus.*  
*Duty, officium.*  
*Against, contra with acc.*

*Promise, promissum.*  
*Disgraceful, turpis.*  
*Easy, facilis.*

38

<sup>w</sup> Invert these clauses: that is, put the relative clause first.

*One thing—another, aliud—aliud.*  
*Man, homo, hominis; vir, viri* <sup>x</sup>, &c.  
 of the 2nd decl.  
*To keep, servare.*  
*Revile, maledicere, dat.*  
*To accuse, accusare.*  
*To break one's word, fidem fallere. Fal-*  
*lere, fefelli* <sup>y</sup>, *deceive, beguile.*

*To keep one's word, fidem præstare;*  
*præstare, præstiti* <sup>z</sup>.  
*To lie, mentiri.*  
*To utter many falsehoods, multa mentiri.*  
*It is a breach of duty, contra officium*  
*est, it is against duty.*

☞ 'For' before a substantive or pronoun followed by the *infin.* is not to be translated. The construction is the *acc.* with *infin.*<sup>a</sup>

It is a sin { for a boy not to obey his parents.  
 that a boy should not obey his parents.

#### Exercise 6.

- 39 1. It is pleasant to be praised. 2. It is a breach of duty not to keep promises. 3. It is a breach of duty to praise what (*plur.*) is disgraceful. 4. I hear that you keep your promises, *a thing which* (*c*) all good men do. 5. I hear that you are going to keep your word. 6. It is disgraceful to break one's word. 7. It is one thing to revile, another to accuse. 8. It is certain that Balbus has deserved well of me. 9. It is a breach of duty to lie. 10. Both you and Balbus have *uttered many falsehoods*. 11. It is disgraceful to *banish* the good and wise. 12. It is easy (for me) to carry all my property with me<sup>d</sup>. 13. It is a breach of duty for a man to revile men. 14. I have praised, not blamed you (*note* <sup>e</sup>, p. 9). 15. Timoleon, *as* you have often heard, bore adverse fortune very wisely.

### § 7. RELATIVE (continued).

#### *Fundamental Rule for employing the tenses of the Subjunctive.*

Wherever *dependent* verbs are used in the Subjunctive, the following is the fundamental rule for the use of the *tenses* in Latin.

- 40 ☞ The *imperfect* and *pluperfect* of the subjunctive are the regular attendants of the *past tenses* of the indicative.

The English *perfect definite*<sup>b</sup> (or perfect with 'have') is considered a *present* tense. It is, from its nature, a *present-perfect*.

<sup>x</sup> *Homo* is the general term for *man*, i. e. for a *human being*, distinguished from other living creatures.

*Vir* is *man* as distinguished from *woman*. *Homo* is often used *contemptuously*: *vir*, *respectfully*; a *man* with a manly character.

<sup>y</sup> Distinction between *fallo* and *decipio* :

*Nullá fallentis culpá sæpissime fallor;*

*At quum decipiar, culpam deceptor habebit.*

<sup>z</sup> Cic. has *præstaturus*.

<sup>a</sup> But we shall see below that if 'for' follows immediately after 'it is,' it must be translated by the genitive. 'It is for a rich man to do so and so;' *divitis est*, &c.

<sup>b</sup> The *perfect definite* is used of actions done in some *space of time*, a part of which is still *present*.

The rule given in 40 implies, that in Latin the present, future, and perfect, when it is equivalent to our perfect with 'have,' are followed by the *present*, or (for a completed action) the *perfect* of the subjunctive <sup>c</sup>.

425 The future perfect is not a subjunctive tense. 41

The only future subjunctive is the part. in *rus* with *sim, essem, &c.* But where we use a *future* in a dependent sentence the Romans often used the *present* or *imperfect* of the subjunctive <sup>\*</sup>.

(On some English relative forms.)

'That' is often a relative pronoun. 42

(Especially after *superlatives*; the interrogative *who*; *the same*; and when both *persons* and *things* are meant.)

(a) 'As' is often, in effect, a relative pronoun. 43

The relative 'as' must be translated by *qui* after *idem*; by *qualis, quantus, quot*, after *talis, tantus, tot*, respectively. (See 29, Obs. 2.)

(1) 'But' is often, in effect, a relative pronoun, when it follows 44  
*universal negatives*, as *nemo, nullus, nihil*.

(2) The (virtually) relative 'but' is to be translated by *quin* † with the *subjunctive*. (c)

(3) When 'but' might be substituted for a *relative* with 'not,' the *relative* and 'not' may be translated by *quin* <sup>d</sup>, if the *relative* is in the *nom.* (or even *acc.*) case.

426 'Such' in English is often used where *size* is meant, rather than *quality*. 'Such—as' should then be translated into Latin by *tantus—quantus*; not by *talis—qualis*.

(a) *Talis est, qualis semper fuit, He is such as he has ever been.* 45

(b) *Idem est, qui semper fuit, He is the same that (or as) he has ever been.*

(c) *Nemo est, quin<sup>e</sup> te dementem putet, There is no one but thinks you mad (or, who does not think you mad).*

Vocabulary 7.

*The same, idem, eadem, idem.*  
*Rule, régula.*

*Expediency, utilit-as, atis.*  
*Expedient, utilis.*

46

<sup>c</sup> Thus then the

Present	} are followed by the	{ Present subj.		
Future			{ Perfect subj. (for a completed	
Perfect with 'have'				action).
Imperfect	} are followed by the	{ Imperfect subj.		
Future			{ Pluperfect subj. (for an action	
Pluperfect				completed before the time

<sup>\*</sup> For instance, after verbs of *fearing*.

† *Qui non* is by no means uncommon.

<sup>d</sup> With other cases than the *nominative* and *accusative*, the use of the *relative* with *non* is commonly preferred. Z. When *qui non* must be used, will be explained below.

<sup>e</sup> *Quin* is *qui nē* (= *ut non*): *qui* being the old abl. for *quo*. The demonstr. pronoun (which is the real *nom.*) is sometimes expressed: as in 88 (a).

<p><i>Honour; the honorable; honorable conduct, honest-as, atis.</i>  <i>Nobody, no one, nem-o, inis.—Nemo = ne homo. See Caution 36.</i>  <i>To think, deem, putare.</i>  <i>This, hic (hæc, hoc).</i>  <i>That, ille (illa, illud).</i>  <i>Nearly, fere.</i></p>	<p><i>Another, ali-us, a, ud, G. alius, D. alii, &amp;c.</i>  <i>Never, nunquam (or, numquam).</i>  <i>Before, antea.</i>  <i>To be able—can, posse †.</i>  <i>Wave, fluctus. What is its genitive? why? See 33.</i></p>
---	--

- (a) ~~45~~ After *sunt qui* (it means that 'there are some')  
Remember—the *subjunctive mood* should come.

Thus: *sunt qui putent: erant or fuerunt, qui putarent.*

#### Exercise 7.

~~45~~ 'That,' when it stands for a substantive which has been expressed in the preceding clause, is not to be translated.

~~45~~ The *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect* of the *Subjunctive* are the regular attendants of the *past* tenses of the *Indicative*.

- 47 1. This is the same as that. 2. The rule of expediency is the same as that <sup>11)</sup> of honour. 3. This is nearly the same as another thing. 4. You are such as I have always thought you. 5. There is nobody *but* knows, that the Gauls were conquered by Cæsar. 6. There is no one *who* does *not* (45, c) understand, that you are pretending. 7. There is no one *but* knows that *the past* (23, obs. 1) cannot be changed. 8. There is no one *but* knows, that these things are contrary to *each other*. 9. Both you and I are such as we have ever been. 10. The waves were *such* <sup>10)</sup> as I had never seen before.—11. There are some who think you mad (46, a). 12. There were some who blamed me.

### § 8. RELATIVE (continued).

- 48 (a, b) When the relative connects (by means of 'to be' or a verb of *naming, &c.*) two substantives of different genders, &c. it *generally* agrees with the *latter*, rather than with its antecedent.

(Agreement with the *latter* [the predicate] is the *rule*; agreement with the antecedent the *exception*.)

- 49 But when the second substantive is a *foreign word*, the relative *generally* agrees with its antecedent. (Z.)<sup>8</sup>

(Jovis *stella, quæ φαίθων* dicitur.)

<sup>†</sup> This verb is compounded of an old adj. *potis*, neut. *potē*, with *sum*. 'Pot' is prefixed to the tenses of *sum*, *ts* being changed into *ss*, and *pot-esse*, *pot-essem* shortened into *posse*, *possem* (posses, &c.).

The perfect tenses regular from *potui* (= *potis fui*). No *imperative*: the part. *potens* is used as an adjective.

<sup>8</sup> This is *Zumpt's* rule, which *Krüger* approves of; but thinks that we cannot go beyond this in determining *when* agreement with the antecedent should be preferred.

*Bremi* says: "videntur id (pronomen) ad antecedens substantivum referre, si ad *vocabulum* respiciunt; sin vero ad *rem*, ad consequens." But *Krüger* shows that even if this should explain Cicero's practice, it is obviously at variance with that of other writers.

- (a) *Domicilia conjuncta, quas urbes dicimus, Contiguous dwell- 50*  
*ings, which we call cities.*
- (b) *Thebæ, quod Bœotix caput est, Thebes, which is the capital*  
*of Bœotia.*

Vocabulary 8.

Glory, gloria.

Honorable, honestus.

Star, stella: astrum, which is properly  
a Greek word, and sidus, sideris, n. a  
constellation: and also, one of the  
great heavenly luminaries, e. g. the  
sun, the moon, Sirius, &c.

Perpetual, lasting, sempiternus.

Fire, ignis, m.

Island, insula.

Sea, mare, n.

Ocean, Océanus, i.

As it were, quasi.

The world, orbis terræ, or terrarum. 51

Orbis, m.

Head, capital city, cāput, capitis, n.

To reject, repudiare.

To admire, wonder at, admirari.

To be washed, circumfundi, circum-  
fusus. Literally, to be poured around;  
and either the island or the sea is  
said circumfundi.

To inhabit, in-cōlere, colu-, cult-.

To call, in the sense of naming (vō-  
care, appellare, nōminare, dicere<sup>b</sup>).

Exercise 8.

1. He rejects glory, which is the most honorable fruit' of true' 52  
virtue (*Gen.* before *fructus*). 2. He is admiring those perpetual  
fires, which we call stars. 3. The island is washed by the sea,  
which you (*pl.*) call ocean. 4. We inhabit a great island, as it  
were<sup>i</sup>, which we call the world. 5. There is nobody *but*<sup>9</sup> thinks  
Rome the capital' of the world<sup>k</sup>. 6. There is no one *but* thinks  
that Balbus has deserved well *of* us.—7. There are some who  
laugh. 8. There are some who laughed (46, a).

§ 9. RELATIVE (continued).

*Relative with superlative.* "The first *who* —."

(a) When the antecedent has a *superlative*\* with it, the adjec- 53  
tive is generally put in the relative clause.

(b) To express "the *first* person *who* did a thing" the Romans 54  
did not use a relative sentence, but made *primus* agree with the  
nominative of the principal verb.

(a) *Volsci civitatem, quam habebant optimam, perdiderunt, The* 55  
*Volsci lost the best city they had.*

(b) *Primus mala nostra sensit, He was the first person who per-*  
*ceived our evils.*

<sup>b</sup> *Vocare, appellare, nominare* are all to *call*; but *vocare* has, beside this, the  
meaning of to *call* = *summon*; *appellare*, that of *appealing to, of calling to for*  
aid; *nominare*, that of *naming, in the sense of appointing or electing.*

<sup>i</sup> *Quasi* should stand between *great* and *island*.

<sup>k</sup> *Orbis terrarum*, rather than *terræ*, when there is a decided reference to  
*other lands.*

\* The same rule holds good of other adjectives and of *appositions*.—See note  
:7, p. 30, in Grotendorf's "*Materials*."

{ *Eng.* He was the *first who* did this: (or,) He was the *first to do* this.  
 { *Lat.* He *the first* did this.

## Vocabulary 9.

56 *Faithful*, fidēlis.  
*Slave*, servus, i.  
*God*, Deus<sup>l</sup>.

*Fire* = conflagration, incendium.  
*To help* a person in perplexity, &c.,  
 subvĕnire, vĕn-, vent-<sup>m</sup>: *dat.* of person.

*To lose*, a-mittere, mis-, miss-: per-  
 dere<sup>n</sup>, perdid-, perdit-.  
*An opportunity*, occasio.  
*To lose an opportunity*, occasionem  
 amittere.  
*Now* = already, jam.

*Such is your temperance* } quæ tua est temperantia,  
*With your usual tem-* } quæ es temperantiâ<sup>o</sup>,  
*perance* } pro tuâ temperantiâ.  
*As far as I know* (quod sciam).

## Exercise 9.

- 57 1. He *was the first who* promised to help<sup>3</sup> me. 2. They will lose *the best thing* they have. 3. I will send *the most faithful slave* I have. 4. He *was the first who* denied that there are<sup>4</sup> gods. 5. The fire is such<sup>10</sup> as I have never seen before. 6. The constellations are the same, that they have ever been. 7. He *was the first who* undertook to finish<sup>3</sup> the business. 8. I hope that you, *such is your temperance*, are already well. 9. No one, *as far as I know*, has said this. 10. Sestius was not come<sup>p</sup>, *as far as I know*. 11. I have lost no opportunity, *as far as I know*.—12. There are some who have lost the opportunity (46, a).

§ 10. UT, NĒ, *introducing a purpose.*

- 58 (a) '*That*,' when equivalent to '*in order that*' and followed by '*may*' or '*might*,' must be translated by *ut* with the subjunctive. —*Uti* is the original, but far less common, form of *ut*.—A sentence of this kind expresses a *purpose*.

(b) '*That*' = '*in order that*,' followed by '*not*,' or any negative word (the verb having '*may*' or '*might*' for its auxiliary), must be translated by *nĕ* [= *lest*] with the subjunctive. It expresses a *negative purpose*; a *purpose of preventing*.

<sup>l</sup> Deus, V. *Deus*. Plur. (*Dei*), *Dii*, *Di*. *Dat.* (*Deis*), *Diis*, *Dis*.

<sup>m</sup> That is, to come under a thing; i. e. to support it.

<sup>n</sup> *Amittere* is simply to lose.

*Perdere* is to lose actively; i. e. by some exertion of one's own will, &c. Hence *perdere* is often to destroy.

*Activè* perdo, *passivè* amittere possum.

<sup>o</sup> Or, *cujus es temperantiæ*.

<sup>p</sup> ~~58~~ Intransitive verbs of motion often form their perfect active with '*am*,' not '*have*.'

Thus *am come*, *was come*, are (respectively) the perfect and pluperfect active.

## Vocabulary 10.

<p><i>It is all over with</i>, actum est de—with the abl. <i>News of the town</i>, res urbānæ. <i>To send or write news</i>, per-scribere, scrips-, script-: <i>to write fully</i>. <i>Courtesy</i>, humanitas. <i>Courageously</i>, fortiter.</p>	<p><i>Virtuously, honorably</i>, honeste. 59 <i>To cry out</i>, clamare. <i>To live</i>, vivere, vix-, vict-. <i>To die</i>, mōri, ior; mortuus. <i>To obey</i>, pārere, dat. <i>To make the same promise</i>, idem polliceri.</p>
--	--

- (a) Multi alios laudant, *ut* ab illis laudentur, *Many men praise* 60  
*others, that they may be praised by them.*
- (b) Gallinæ avesque reliquæ pennis fovent pullos, *nē* frigore  
*ledantur*, *Hens and other birds cherish their young with their*  
*feathers, that they may not be hurt by the cold.*

☞ 'To' is omitted after many verbs, which thus *seem*<sup>9</sup> to govern two accusatives.

When a verb *seems* to govern two accusatives, try whether you cannot put in 'to' before one of them. 'He gave him a loaf.' = he gave a loaf to him.

## Exercise 10.

1. That you may be able to die courageously, obey' the laws of 61  
virtue. 2. He was pretending to be mad<sup>2</sup>, *that* he might *not* be  
banished. 3. He cries out, that it is all over with the army.  
4. You promised that you would send me all *the news of the town*.  
5. That you may die courageously', live virtuously [p. 7. 15 (b)].  
6. He praises' Caius, that he may himself be praised by Caius.  
7. He will praise' Caius, that he may be praised by Caius. 8. No  
one, *as far as I know*<sup>10</sup>, had praised' Balbus, that he might himself  
be praised by Balbus. 9. You, *such is your courtesy*<sup>9</sup>, promised to  
finish<sup>3</sup> the business. 10. You, *with your usual courtesy*<sup>9</sup>, *made me*  
*the same promise*<sup>12</sup> as before. —11. There were some who laughed.

## § 11. UT introducing a consequence. QUO. NĒ prohibitive.

(a) 'That' after *such, so, &c.* must be translated by 'ut' with 62  
the *subjunctive*.

After these words 'that' does not express a *purpose*, but a *consequence*; and the English verb will usually not have 'may' or 'might' with it.

The demonstrative adverb corresponding to our 'so' is often omitted in Latin, 'ut' alone being used for 'so that,' introducing a *consequence*.

(b) 'That,' when the sentence has a *comparative* in it, is translated 63  
by *quo* ('by which'); which is equivalent to *ut eo* ('that by this').

(c) 'Not' in *prohibitions* is *nē*. 'Not' with the imperative is translated by *nē* 64  
with the *imperative*, or *subjunctive* used *imperatively*.

<sup>9</sup> Such verbs are: *give, vouchsafe, assign, grant, send.*

<sup>12</sup> "He gave him a penny." *What did he give to whom?*



- 65 Obs. ~~65~~ *Ne* with the imperative belongs to poetry.  
*Ne* with the 2nd person of the present subjunctive, used imperatively, is only found in general precepts (when 'you' means 'a man,' 'one'). It is more common with the 2nd sing. of the perfect subjunctive.—On the circumlocutions with *noli, cave*, see 539.
- 66 (d) '*As*' before the *infin.*, and after *so, such*, must be translated by *ut*.\*  
 Except in this idiom (where '*as*' expresses a consequence conceived as resulting on a particular supposition), *ut, 'as,'* goes with the indicative.
- 67 ~~67~~ *No ut or nē* goes with the infinitive.
- 68 (a) *Tanta vis probitatis est, ut eam vel in hoste diligamus, The power of integrity is so great. that we love it even in an enemy.*  
 (b) *Medico puto aliquid dandum esse, quo sit studiosior, I think that something should be given to the physician, that he may be the more attentive.*  
 (c) (1) *Nē multa discas, sed multum, Do not learn many things, but much.* (2) *Hoc facito, hoc nē feceris; do this; do not do this. Illum jocum ne sis aspernatus, do not despise that jest.*  
 (d) *Nemo tam potens est, ut omnia, quæ velit, efficere possit, Nobody is so powerful as to be able to perform all he wishes.*

#### Vocabulary 11.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>69 <i>Daily, quotidie, indies, or in dies</i> †.<br/> <i>Even mind; resignation, sequus animus.</i><br/> <i>Young, juvenis, jūnior = juvenior.</i><br/> <i>Age, time of life, ætas, atis, f.</i><br/> <i>About, de, abl.</i><br/> <i>Agricultural operations or affairs, res rusticæ.</i><br/> <i>Of such a kind, ejusmōdi.</i><br/> <i>Wind, ventus, i.</i></p> | <p><i>Season, tempestas.</i><br/> <i>Multitude, multitud-o, inis, f.</i><br/> <i>To meditate, meditare on, meditari.</i><br/> <i>To leave, re-linquare, liqu-, lict-.</i><br/> <i>To learn, discere, didic-.</i><br/> <i>To appear, videri, vîsus.</i><br/> <i>To govern = moderate, limit, moderari, acc.</i><br/> <i>To number, nūmerare.</i></p> |
|---|---|

#### Exercise 11.

- 70 1. Meditate upon<sup>7)</sup> this daily, that you may leave life with an even mind. 2. He told many falsehoods<sup>12</sup> about his age, that he might appear younger (than he is). 3. Do not learn many things, but useful things. 4. He spoke much (23, 1), that he might be thought wise. 5. Agricultural affairs are of such a kind, that the

\* It will be seen afterwards, that *qui* (= *ut is*) is generally used in sentences of this kind: also that '*as not to . . .*' &c. after a negative sentence is *quin*. 85.

† From *quot dies* (as many days as there are); compare the Greek *ὅσους ἡμέρας*.

*In dies* (daily) = *day after day, day by day*; when, that is, we speak of a thing increasing or diminishing daily. In '*in dies*,' therefore, or '*in dies singulos*,' each day is considered as a term of a progressive series. *Quotidie* is '*every day*,' '*daily*,' in both senses; either, that is, when the simple repetition of an action is to be expressed, or its repetition combined with progressive increase or decrease.

winds and seasons govern them<sup>u</sup>. 6. I know that my father does not learn many things, but much. 7. I will live virtuously, that I may die the more courageously<sup>v</sup>. 8. He lived virtuously, that he might leave life with the greater resignation. 9. The multitude of stars is such<sup>10</sup> that they cannot be numbered.—10. There are some who promise to help me. 11. Do not count your enemies. 12. Do not be afraid of these men.

§ 12. ENGLISH INFINITIVE translated by 'UT' WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

☞ The infinitive never expresses a *purpose* in prose Latin. 71

(a) The English infinitive expressing a *purpose* may be translated 72 by *ut* with the subjunctive.

Whenever the English infinitive may be turned into 'in order that,' or 'that,' 73 with 'may' or 'might,' it is to be translated by *ut* with the *subjunctive*.

Thus, "I am come to see you" = "I am come in order that I may see you." 74 Here *my seeing you* is obviously the *purpose* of my coming. But in many verbs this relation of the *purpose* is more obscure.

For instance:—

I advise,	}	you to do it =	{	I advise or exhort you, in order that you may do it.
I exhort,				
I ask,	}	you to do it =	I ask, or beg you, in order that you may do it.	
I beg, &c.				

I command you to do it = I command you, in order that you may do it.  
 I strive to do it = I strive in order that I may do it.

75

By 'ut' translate infinitive<sup>a</sup>  
 With *ask, command, advise, and strive*.  
 But never be this rule forgot,  
 Put 'nā' for 'ut' when there's a 'not.'

Of verbs signifying 'to command,' *jūbeo* takes *acc.* and *infin.* 76  
 [See however 219, note<sup>b</sup>.]

- (a) Romulus, *ut civium numerum augēret*, asyllum patefecit, 77  
*Romulus, to increase the number of his citizens, opened an asylum.*
- (b) Militibus *imperavit, ut clypeos hastis percuterent*, He commanded the soldiers to strike their shields with their spears.
- (c) Enītar, *ut vincam*, I will strive to conquer.
- (d) Magno opere te hortor, *ut hos de philosophiā libros studiose*

<sup>u</sup> ☞ 'Is' is the proper pronoun for the *third person*, when there is no *distinction* to be expressed between a nearer and remoter object, and no reference to be strongly marked.

<sup>v</sup> The *neuter* of the *comparative adjective* is used for the *comparative adverb*.

*legas, I earnestly advise you to read attentively these books about philosophy.*

(e) *Capram monet, ut in pratum descendat, He advises the she-goat to come down into the meadow.*

(f) *Hoc te rogo, ne \* demittas animum, I beg of you not to be disheartened. [Literally, not to depress your mind.]*

When 'that' introduces a consequence, 'that not' is *ut non*, not *nē*.

*That not* { for a purpose . . . . *nē*.  
for a consequence . . . *ut non*.

*Vocabulary 12.* (Some verbs that are followed by *ut*.)

78 *To ask, rōgare.*

*To beg and pray a man, rōgare et ōrare*  
(acc. of person).

*To strike, niti, more commonly eniti,*  
*nisus and nixus.*

*To demand, postūlare.*

*To persuade, persuadēre, suas-, suas-;*  
*dat. of person.*

*To warn, mōnēre } mōnu-, mōnit-*  
*To admonish, admōnēre } acc. personæ.*

*To exhort, hortari, adhortari, cohortari*  
(the last *ex* to *e*. troops).

*To command, impērare* <sup>w</sup>, *dat.*

*To charge or commission, mandare, dat.*

*To direct, tell, when spoken of an in-*  
*structor, præcipere, cēp-, cept-.*

*To order by a proclamation or edict; to*  
*publish an edict, edicere, dix-, dict-.*

*To decree, decernere, crēv-, crēt-.*

*Perseverance, perseverantia.*

*Fury, furor, oris.*

*Senate, senatus, 4.*

*Dress, vestitus. Of what declens.? why?*

*To return, red-ire, eo* <sup>x</sup>.

*To hold a levy of troops; to levy troops,*  
*delectum habēre.*

*Consul, consul, consūlis.*

*To assist, jūvare or adjūvare* (acc.),  
*jūv.*

*To suffer, pāti, ior, passus.*

*To take by storm, per vim expugnare.*

*By letter, per literas.*

\* For *ne, ut ne* is found with no perceptible difference of meaning. Z. *Grotefend* thinks that *Cicero* uses *ut ne* in the following cases: (1) when the negative does not so much belong to the whole clause as to a particular part of it, e. g. the verb, or *quis, quid*; (2) when a demonstrative pron. or pronominal adverb is expressed or implied in the preceding clause; (3) when without *ut, ne* would stand by a word to which *ne* is often appended, as *non, an*. He says that *ut ne* is found, though less commonly than in *Cicero*, in *Plautus, Terence, Ovid, &c.*: but four times (and that in doubtful passages) in *Livy*, and not at all in *Cæsar* and *Tacitus*.

<sup>w</sup> *Jubēre, to order, bid* (with the notion of the thing being right, or of the person having a right to order); *imperare, to command with power; præcipere, to direct*, from being qualified to do so by superior knowledge; *mandare, to give a charge or commission to a person; edicere, to declare officially as a magistrate, to publish a proclamation.*

<sup>x</sup> *eo, ivi* (*i* generally in the compounds), *ŭm*. Pres. *eo, is, it*; *imus, itis, eunt*. Imp. *ibam*. Fut. *ibo*. Imperat. *i*. Subj. pres. *eam*. Imp. *irem*. Part. *iens, euntis*. Ger. *eundi, &c.*

*Exercise 12.*

1. I ask you *to do* this. 2. I asked you *to do* this. 3. Strive **79** *to assist* me. 4. He is striving *to govern* the winds and seasons. 5. He warned Cæsar *not to believe* the Gauls. 6. Do not believe the Gauls. 7. Do not lie. 8. Religion warns men *not to lie*. 9. It is certain, that the boy is striving *to learn*. 10. I will exhort the boy *to learn*. 11. We know that virtue and vice are contrary *to each other*. 12. He published-an-edict, that the Senate should return to its (usual) dress. 13. He had charged Trebonius by letter *not to suffer* Marseilles<sup>y</sup> to be taken by storm. 14. His perseverance is as great *as*<sup>9)</sup> his fury. 15. The Senate decrees, that the Consuls should levy troops. 16. He persuades him<sup>r</sup> to return to his mother. 17. He demands, that troops should be levied.—18. There are some who lie. 19. He exhorted his soldiers to fight bravely. 20. He begged and prayed Dolabella<sup>y</sup> to do this.

§ 13. UT, &c. (continued).

(a) In sentences where, by rule 58, 'ut' should be used (to introduce a purpose), if a negative follows, *ne* takes its place and the affirmative pronoun or adverb is used. Thus—

<i>that nobody,</i>	not,	but,	
<i>that nothing,</i>	ut nemo,	ne quis,	
<i>that no,</i>	ut nihil,	ne quid,	
<i>that never,</i>	ut nullus,	ne ullus,	
	ut nunquam,	ne unquam.	

(b) But if the sentence is a consequence, then *ut nemo*, &c. should be used. 81

(a) Alexander edixit, *ne quis* ipsum alius, quam Apelles, pin- 82 geret, *Alexander published an edict*, that no other person than Apelles should paint him (Purpose).

(b) Cimon fuit tantâ liberalitate, *ut nunquam* hortis suis custodem imposuerit \*, *Cimon was* (a person) of such liberality, that he never appointed a keeper for his gardens (Consequence).

<sup>y</sup> Massilia.—Dolabella.

\* The use of the perfect subj. in this example instead of the imperf. will be explained in another place [418, (α)]. It is not to be imitated in doing the exercises.

## Vocabulary 13.

83 *It remains, reliquum est, restat.*  
*It follows; the next thing is, sequitur\*:*  
*or proximum est.*  
*It happens by chance, casu accidit.*  
*Hence it happens, ita fit: literally, thus*  
*it happens.*  
*How happens it? qui fit?*  
~~83~~ *'That' after reliquum est, restat,*  
*and sequitur, is ut with subj.*  
*To desert, desērere, serū-, sert-.*  
*To make this request of you, illud te*  
*rogare.*

*To leave = go out of, ex-cēdere, cess-,*  
*cess-, abl.*  
*City, urbs, urbis, f.*  
*Town, oppidum\*.*  
*First, primum.*  
*At first, primo<sup>a</sup>.*  
*For the sake of, causā.*  
*For my sake, meā causā.*  
*Fear, timor, oris.*  
*Unwilling, inivitus.*  
*Glad, joyful, lætus.*

(*Lat.*) He did it *unwillingly; glad; joyful.*

(*Eng.*) He did it *unwillingly; gladly; joyfully.*

## Exercise 13.

84 1. Religion warns (us) *never* to break our word. 2. The boy strives to learn nothing. 3. I first make this request of you, to do nothing *against your will* for my sake. 4. The Consuls publish a proclamation, that no one should leave the city. 5. So great was the fear of all men, that<sup>14)</sup> no one left the city. 6. The Senate decreed that the Consuls should hold a levy. 7. It remains that I should assist Balbus. 8. There was no one but exclaimed, that it *was all over with* the army. 9. They had joyfully helped Balbus. —10. There were some who assisted Balbus. 11. There were some who denied that virtue and vice were contrary to each other. 12. It follows that you deny virtue and vice to be contrary to each other.

## Exercise 13 (continued).

13. The next thing is, that I should show (*docēre*), that the world is governed by the providence of the gods. 14. It happened by chance, that the Consul was holding a levy (of troops). 15. Hence it happens that nobody saw him. 16. How happens it, that nobody saw him leaving the city? 17. How happens it that he is beloved by nobody<sup>80)</sup>? 18. Hence it happens that what he did, he did unwillingly. 19. How happened it, that he left the city unwillingly?

\* *Absit ut, 'be it far from me,'* belongs to the later poets and Appuleius. Instead of it we should use *velim hoc absit*; or *quod procul absit*, inserted parenthetically.

<sup>a</sup> "*Oppidum proprie infra urbem est;*" but all cities and towns came to be (frequently) denominated *oppida*, except Rome. (Valla, quoted by Crombie.)

<sup>a</sup> *Primo* is sometimes used for '*first*,' but not *primum* for '*at first*.' C.

§ 14. QUIN after verbs of doubting, &c.

(a) When 'as not' with the *infinitive* follows 'so' or 'such' in a *negative sentence*, it is to be translated by 'quin' with the *subjunctive*.

~~94~~ The sentence before *quin* is always *negative*. (An *interrogative sentence* that expects the answer 'no,' is in effect a *negative sentence*.)

(b) 'But,' 'but that,' or 'that,' after verbs of *doubting, denying, &c.* in *negative sentences*, is translated by *quin*. (See also rule 94, in next Lesson.)

(c) In *negative sentences* the *participial substantive* governed by a preposition 87 (especially after to *hinder, restrain, prevent, object, &c.*) is often translated by *quin* with *subj.*

(a) *Cleanthes negat ullum esse cibum tam gravem, quin is die et 88 nocte concoquatur, Cleanthes says that no food is so heavy, as not to be digested in a day and a night.* (Observe the repetition of the 'is' here, which is not very common \*.)

(b) *Negari non potest, quin turpius sit fallere quam falli, It cannot be denied, that it is more disgraceful to deceive than to be deceived.*

(c) *Nunquam adspexit, quin fratricidam compellaret, She never saw him without calling him fratricide.*

*Vix inhiberi potuit, quin saxa jaceret, He could scarcely be prevented from throwing stones.*

Vocabulary 14. [Of words, &c. followed by *quin*.]

*Not to doubt, non dubitare (quin).*

*There is no doubt, non est dubium (quin), it is not doubtful.*

*Who doubts? quis dubitat (quin) ?*

*It cannot be but that, fieri non potest quin.*

*I cannot refrain from, temperare mihi non possum, quin.*

*It cannot be denied, negari non potest (quin)*

*To leave nothing undone to, &c., nihil 89 prætermittere quin.*

*I cannot but, facere non possum quin.*

*To restrain, to keep back, retinere (after negative words, and sæpe 'with difficulty,' vix 'scarcely,' &c.).*

*Not to be able to restrain, tenere or retinere non posse.*

*To be ignorant, ignorare, with acc. and infin. 95 Quis ignorat, quin &c. occurs once in Cic. [Flacc. 27, 64], but the acc. and infin. is far more common.*

*World, mundus, i.*

*Design, consilium.*

*Sometimes, interdum.*

*Class, gēnus, gēnēris (n.).*

\* It shows that *quin* does not represent the nominative, but that the real nominative is understood.

*Exercise 14.*

- 90 1. Who *doubts that* virtue and vice are contrary to each other? 2. It *cannot be denied that* it is disgraceful to lie. 3. Who doubts *that* the world was made by design? 4. I don't doubt *that* both you and Balbus lifted up your hands. 5. He never sees Cæsar *without crying* out that *it is all over with* the army. 6. I left nothing undone *to finish* the business. 7. *I cannot but help* Balbus. 8. It cannot be denied that Caius *has had a prosperous voyage*. 9. I cannot refrain *from leaving* the city. 10. No one is so good *as not* sometimes to sin.—11. There were some who left the city. 12. I am not ignorant, that Caius has lost the opportunity.—13. Who is ignorant, that there are three classes of Greeks? 14. The Germans were with difficulty restrained from hurling ° their darts against our ° men.

- 91 Non possūmus, *quin* alii a nobis *dissentiant*, recusare, *We cannot object* to others dissenting *from us*.  
Minimum abfuit (*impers.*) Octavianus quin periret, *Octavianus was very near perishing*. (*Or, But a little more, and Octavianus would have perished.*)

*Vocabulary 15.* (Words and phrases followed by *quin* continued.)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>92 <i>Not to object</i>, non recusare<sup>b</sup>.<br/><i>To be very near; to be within a very little</i>, minimum abesse; <i>to be used impersonally</i>.</p>  | <p><i>Not to be far from</i>, haud multum abesse, or haud procul abesse: <i>impersonally</i>.<br/><i>What reason is there why—? quid causæ est</i>, quin—?</p>              |
| <p><i>To kill</i>, interficere, io; fēc-, fect-.<br/><i>To make</i>, facere, io; fec-, fact-.<br/><i>Of iron, iron-hearted</i>, ferreus.<br/><i>Children</i>, libēri, pl.<br/><i>To love</i>, amare.</p> | <p><i>A letter</i>, literæ, pl.<br/><i>Truly, vere</i>.<br/><i>The soul</i>, animus, i.<br/><i>The mind</i>, mens, mentis<sup>c</sup>.<br/><i>Immortal</i>, immortalis.</p> |

*Exercise 15.*

- 93 1. He was *within a little of being killed*. 2. It cannot be denied *that* it is disgraceful to break one's word. 3. It cannot be denied *that* duty commands us *to keep* (75) our promises. 4. I am *within*

<sup>b</sup> From *re* and *causa*. It may also be followed by *quominus* or *nē*.

<sup>c</sup> *Anima*, the breath of life, the vital principle (common to all living things). *Animus*, 'the soul,' the mind with its passions, emotions, appetites, &c. 'the heart.' *Mens*, the intellectual faculty; the rational faculty. Hence *animus* should be used for *mind*, when it means *disposition, spirit, &c.*

*a very little of being* most miserable. 5. No one is so iron-hearted *as not to love* his own children. 6. *I cannot but*<sup>18</sup> send you a letter daily. 7. That you may be able to learn much, do not learn many things. 8. The truly wise man will never doubt *that* the soul is immortal. 9. I will not object *to your banishing* me. 10. I will not object *to your* all *leaving* the city. 11. It cannot be denied *that* the rational-faculty should (*debeo*) command the heart. 12. It cannot be that the mind is not immortal<sup>20</sup>.

§ 15. QUOMINUS.

Verbs of *hindering* are often followed by *quominus*. 94

This *quo minus* (by which the less) = *ut eo minus* (*that the less by it*).

- (a) They are, however, also followed by *nē* (which denotes more strongly the intention of the agent to *prevent* the action); and, when the verb of hindering has a *negative* with it, by *quin*. (See 92.)
- (b) *Non recūso*\* may be followed by either *quin* or *quominus*. (See 92.)

With verbs of fearing, '*that*' must be translated by '*nē*,' '*that* 95 *not*' by '*ut*.'

(a) '*That not*' may also be translated by '*ne non*,' which is stronger than '*ut*.'

☞ After verbs of *fearing*, the Eng. *future* and the *participial substantive* are 96 translated by the *present* or *imperfect subjunctive*, with *ut* or *nē*.

(a) *Quid obstat, quominus Caius sit beatus?* *What prevents* 97 *Caius* from being happy?

(Or, *quid obstat Caio*<sup>d</sup> *quominus sit beatus?*)

- (b) { *Vereor ne veniat, I fear that he will come.*
- { *Vereor ut veniat, I fear that he will not come.*

(Eng.) What prevents *Caius* from being happy?

(Lat.) What prevents, *by which Caius should be the less* happy?

98

*Vocabulary* 16.

(Verbs that may be followed by *quominus*.)

*To prevent, obstare, obstit-*, *dat.*  
*To deter, deterrere.*

*To hinder, prevent, impedire.*— 99  
(*So officere, obsistere; recusare, repugnare, intercedere, &c.*)

\* *Impedio, prohibeo, intercedo, interdico*, even when accompanied with a *negation*, scarcely ever have *quin*, but *quominus*. (M.)—Cic. has, however, *nullā re impediri, quin*—.

<sup>d</sup> With *quid obstat* (especially when the *person* is represented by a *pron.* of the *first* or *second* person) the *dat.* is generally omitted. Unless it be a *pron.*, it will then stand as *nom.* to the next verb.

After '*deter*,' &c. the *acc.* should be *expressed*, unless it be a *pronoun* of the *first* or *second* person.



<p><i>It is owing to Caius that—not, per Caium stat quominus &amp;c. To endure, sustinēre, sustent- To fear, vērerī, vēritus; timēre; me- tuere, metui.</i></p>	<p><i>Nothing, nihil, indeel. To obey, pārēre, dat. To increase, augēre, aux-, auct-, trans.; crescere, crēv-, intrans. By sea and land, terrā marique.</i></p>
---	---

*Exercise 16.*

[*Is quotidie or indies used of daily increase or decrease ?*]

- 100 1. What prevents us *from doing* this? 2. Nothing prevents you *from doing* this. 3. Nothing deters a wise man *from obeying* the laws of virtue'. 4. Nothing deterred Caius *from obeying* the laws. 5. I fear that I *shall not* endure such<sup>10</sup> labours. 6. I fear that he *will not* be able to endure such labours. 7. I fear that I shall increase your labours. 8. What prevents us from waging war by sea and land? 9. What prevents you from carrying all your property with you? 10. Do not pretend to be mad<sup>1</sup>. 11. It cannot be denied *that* vice increases daily. 12. *It was owing to Caius that* we did not wage war by sea and land. 13. Do not obey (your) temper'.

§ 16. INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

- 101 Questions (when *interrogative pronouns or adverbs* are not used) are *generally* asked in Latin by interrogative particles.

(a) *Nē* is used in questions that ask simply for information\*.

(b) *Num* expects the answer 'no :'. (c) *nonnē*, the answer 'yes.'

~~102~~ *Nē* is *enclitic*: that is, it is always appended to a word, and written as its last syllable.

- 102 (a) Scribitnē Caius? *Is Caius writing?*  
 (b) *Num* putas . . . ? *Do you think?* (= you don't think, do you?)  
 (c) *Nonnē* putas . . . ? *Don't you think?* (= you do think, don't you?)  
 Quid? *nonnē* canis similis est lupo? *What? is not a dog like a wolf?*

\* *Timēre, metuere, vereri*, are all used for *fear*; but

(1) if a *reverential or humble fear* is to be expressed, *vereor* should be used.

(2) if an *anxious fear* of a threatening evil, *metuere*. *Metus* is the *fear* of the mind arising from a consideration of circumstances and appearances: *timor*, the fear that arises from the body; from *timidity*. (See D. *vereri*.)

*Vereor*, which expresses the least degree of actual *fear*, should be used to express *doubt* or *fear* about the happening of such an event, or the truth of such an opinion.

*Formidare*, 'to dread,' of great and lasting fear.

\* *Nē* is, however, sometimes used in the sense of *nonne*. See Part ii. 455.

*Vocabulary 16\*.*

<p><i>Unexpected, insperatus.</i>  <i>Morals, mores, (Gen. -um) m.</i>  <i>To change, intrans.; to be changed, mutari.</i></p>	<p><i>For the worse, in pejus: acc. neut.</i>  <i>Sweet, dulcis.</i>  <i>Song, cantus. Of what decl.? why?</i>  <i>Invent, invenire, vên-, vent-.</i></p>	<p>103</p>
--	---	------------

☞ Any body or any one after *num* is *quis*: any thing is *quid*: any (in agreement with a substantive), *qui, quæ†, quod*.

*Exercise 17.*

[Not contained in the earlier editions.]

1. Dare you deny it? [No.] 2. Will a wise man be deterred from 104 obeying the laws of virtue? [No.] 3. Dare you deny that the morals of men are changing for the worse? 4. Will he be able to endure such<sup>10</sup> labours? 5. Is it not more disgraceful to deceive than to be deceived? 6. Is it more disgraceful to be deceived, than to deceive? [No.] 7. Does it not follow, that virtue and vice are contrary to each other? 8. Has not Cæsar been warned' by you not to believe the Gauls? 9. Will you not strive to conquer? 10. Did he not die with the greatest resignation? 11. Will you change the past? [No.] 12. Will you lose so great, so unexpected an opportunity? [No.] 13. Was any sweeter song invented by the Greeks? [No.] 14. Has any one dared to deny these things? [No.]

§ 17. INTERROGATIVE WORDS.

*Who?* (*quis?*) *What?* (*quis, quid, when used without a substan-* 105  
*tive; qui, quæ, quod, when used in agreement with one\*.* *Quid fecit?* *what has he done?* *quod facinus commisit?* *what crime has he committed?* *How?* (*quî, abl.*) *How does it happen that?* (*quî fit ut . . ? with subj.*) *How many?* (*quot? indecl.*) *How great?* (*quantus?*) *How much?* (*quantum? neut. adj.*)

*Why?* { *cur* (= *cui rei*).  
           { *quare*† (= *quâ re*).

*When?* (*quando?*)—(*Quum* is never interrogative.)

<p><i>Where,</i>  <i>Whence,</i>  <i>Whither,</i></p>	<p> </p>	<p><i>ubi,</i>  <i>unde,</i>  <i>quo,</i></p>	<p>} relatives to</p>	<p>{ <i>ibi,</i>  <i>inde, hinc,</i>  <i>eo (huc, illuc).</i></p>
---	----------	---	-----------------------	---

† Or *qua*. See Zumpt, 136, note.

\* This distinction is not invariably observed with respect to *quis* and *qui*. See Zumpt, 134, note.

† *Quare* (*wherefore*) is only used when the *cause* is decidedly asked: when, that is, an answer is required. *Cur* is used whether an answer is required or not: hence it is the proper word in *expostulatory* and *objurgatory* sentences.

*Exercise 17 (bis).*

- 106 1. Have not the good and wise been banished? 2. Are not virtue and vice contrary to each other? 3. Do men govern the winds and seasons? [No.] 4. Shall we not all die? 5. Was not the world made by design? 6. Do we not owe very much to our parents? 7. Was it *not owing to you*<sup>22</sup> that we did not leave the city? 8. Was not Caius within *a very little of* being killed<sup>24</sup>? 9. Were not the waves such<sup>10</sup> *as* you had never seen before? 10. Whence do you come? (or, *where* do you come *from*?) 11. Did all promise to help<sup>3</sup> you? [No.] 12. Did he not promise unwillingly to finish the business? 13. Do we not all hope to live<sup>2</sup> a long while? 14. Has he not finished the business satisfactorily<sup>3</sup>? 15. There are some who<sup>109</sup> deny, that Caius has finished the business. 16. There were some who reviled me. 17. What sweeter song was invented by the Greeks? 18. He was with difficulty restrained from assisting me.

## § 18. DEPENDENT (OR INDIRECT) QUESTIONS.

- 107 A *dependent* (or *indirect*) question is one that is connected with a preceding word or sentence.
- 108 Dependent questions *follow* and *depend* on such words as *to ask, doubt, know, or not know, examine, try, enquire, &c.*
- 109 (a) (b) (c) The verb in a dependent question must be in the subjunctive mood.
- 110 In English, dependent questions are asked by '*whether*;' or by *interrogative pronouns and adverbs*.
- 111 Since '*what*' and '*who*' are also *relatives*, but in Latin the *interrogative* pronoun has the forms *quis* and *quid*, which do not belong to the *relative*, care must be taken to use *quis, quid* (not *qui, quod*) in dependent questions, unless the '*what*' has a substantive with it. (See 105.)
- 112 ~~Who~~ *Who, what, which*, are often *dependent interrogatives*, especially after verbs of *asking, knowing, doubting, &c.*
- 113 After most of these verbs the dependent sentence stands as the *accusative* (or *object*) to the transitive verb. Such a sentence may be called an *accusative sentence*, or an *objective sentence*.
- 114 The verb in an *accusative* (or *objective*) *sentence* must be in the subjunctive mood.
- 115 (a) *Dubito, num*<sup>8</sup> *id tibi suadere debeam, I doubt, whether I ought to give you that advice.*

<sup>8</sup> Obs. In a dependent sentence, *num* is '*whether*,' and does not necessarily imply that the answer '*no*' is expected.

If, however, the answer '*no*' is expected, *num* should be used, not *ne*.

- (b) Quæsieras ex me, *nonne putarem*, &c., *You had enquired of me*, whether I did not think, &c.  
 (c) *Quid est?*—*Nescio, quid sit.*

Vocabulary 17.

To enquire, quærere, quæsiv-, quæsīt-

Of, after enquire, ex with abl.

To say, dicere, dix-, diet-

Well = rightly, recte.

Dog, canis, is.

Like, similis, dat.

Wolf, lūpus, i.

To be better, i. e. a thing to be preferred, *116*  
*satius esse.*

Dishonorably, turpiter.

*I don't know whether . . . not; I almost think; I am not sure that . . . not, haud scio an or nescio an with subj.*

(1) *Haud scio, an ita sit, I don't know whether (or that) it is not so* [= I am inclined to think it is so].

(2) *Haud scio, an nulla beatior sit vita, I don't know whether (or that) there is any happier life* [= I am inclined to think there is no happier life].

~~117~~ In translating '*I don't know whether (or that), I am not sure that,*' by *haud scio (or nescio) an*, if there is a 'not,' omit it in the Latin: if there is no 'not,' put in '*non.*' Also translate '*any body*' by *nemo (no body)*: and so '*any*' by *nullus (no, none)*; '*any thing*' by *nihil (nothing)*.

Exercise 18.

1. Where do you come from? 2. I will ask him, where he comes *117* from. 3. Ought I to do this? 4. I doubt, whether I ought to do this. 5. He asked, whether a dog was not very like a wolf. 5. *I don't know, whether* he has *not* said well. 7. He *said*, that he did *not*<sup>2</sup> know<sup>2</sup>. 8. Balbus is not come, *as far as I know*<sup>10</sup>. 9. Is it not better to die, than to live dishonorably? 10. I will leave nothing undone to finish<sup>18</sup> the business *to your satisfaction*<sup>5</sup>. 11. I will ask (him), how great the waves were. 12. Who does not know how delightful it is to be praised by the good? 13. I will enquire of Balbus, how many there were. 14. There are some, who<sup>109</sup> have enquired of Balbus.—15. I don't know, that he is surpassed by any body<sup>26</sup>. 16. I don't know, that any body has dared to deny this. 17. I don't know, whether it is not better to be deceived. 18. Ought I to be asked to do this? [No.]

§ 19. DOUBLE QUESTIONS. USE OF 'AN' IN SINGLE QUESTIONS.

(a) (b) In double questions '*whether*' is to be translated by *utrum, 118 num*, or the appended '*nē\**;' '*or*' by *an*.

*Num* in direct questions is only to be used when the answer '*no*' is expected.

\* *Nē . . . nē* is rare, and rather belongs to poetry than to prose.—*Utrum . . . nē* is very rare.

- 119 (c) (d) (e) But in dependent questions 'whether' is often untranslated, and 'or' translated by *an*, *annē*, or the appended *nē*.
- 120 (f) *An* is often found before single questions, but this was at least not a common practice with Cicero, &c. When *an* is so used, there is always an ellipse of the *other question*, which may generally be supplied without difficulty.
- (a) The omitted question is very often some such *general notion* as : *is it not so? is not this true? don't you agree with me? don't you think so?* or the like.
- (β) The supposition involved in the question is often *obviously absurd*; so that assent is really demanded to the *preceding statement*. It often involves something of *irony*. The force of such a question may often be given in English by 'then?' and often by 'or?', 'or perchance.' Thus : *Cur misereare, potius quam feras opem, si id facere possis! an sine misericordiā liberales esse non possumus?* *Why should you pity, rather than assist them, if you can? Or, is it impossible for us to be liberal without pitying?* or, 'is it then impossible, &c.'
- § 19 'Or' in questions is to be translated by *an* or *nē*; never by *aut* in a *proper double question*; when, that is, one question is to be answered in the affirmative, the other in the negative.
- 121 (a) *Utrum ea vestra an nostra culpa est? Is that your fault or ours?*
- (b) *Permultum interest, utrum perturbatione aliquā animi an consulto et cogitato fiat injuria, It makes a very great difference, whether an injury is done from some perturbation of mind, or deliberately and purposely.*
- (c) *Stellarum numerus par an impar sit, incertum, Whether the number of the stars is even or odd, is uncertain.*
- (d) *Quæritur, unusne sit mundus an plures, It is a question, whether there is one world or more.*
- (e) *Servi liberine sint, quid refert? What does it signify, whether they are slaves or free?*
- (f) *An tum quoque est utilis (iracundia)? Is (passionateness) useful even then? [Is it not then prejudicial?]*

The forms for double questions are;—

- |                     |             |   |
|---------------------|-------------|---|
| 1) <i>num</i> ..... | <i>an</i> . | } The line means that the first particle is omitted. The form 5, is almost confined to dependent questions. |
| 2) <i>utrum</i> *   | .....       |   |
| 3) <i>ne</i> .....  | <i>an</i> . |   |
| 4) —                | .....       |   |
| 5) —                | .....       |   |

### Vocabulary 18.

- 122 *It makes a very great difference, per- | What difference is there? what difference*  
*multum interest. | does it make? quid interest!*

\* There is the same suppression of the first supposition, in *haud scio*, or *nescio an* (see 116); *dubito an*; *incertum est an*; *quæro an*; *consulo an*; *forsitan* (*fors sit an*), &c. (*Hartung*, Partikellehre, ii. 190.)

• Sometimes *utrumnē*.

*There is no difference, nihil interest.*  
*Beasts in their wild state, fērae.*  
*To drink, bibere, bib-, bibit-.*  
*Wine, vinum.*  
*Water, aqua.*  
*Death, mors, mortis.*  
*Sleep, somnus.*  
*Beginning, initium.*

*Another* = a second, one more, alter, altera, alterum, *G.* alterius.  
*Or not*, often without a verb, as the second member of a double question, an *non* or *annon*, usually in *direct*, *necne*<sup>b</sup>, in *indirect*, i. e. *dependent*, questions.

*Exercise 19.*

1. What difference does it make, whether you drink wine or 123 water? 2. Whether the Romans have conquered or are conquered, is uncertain. 3. Was the world made for the sake of men or beasts? 4. Is death an eternal<sup>c</sup> sleep or the beginning of another life? 5. It makes a great difference, whether death be a perpetual sleep or the beginning of another life. 6. Whether the Romans have conquered or not, is uncertain. 7. Whether the Gauls have crossed or not, I see that no body doubts but<sup>32</sup> you. 8. Has he dared to deny this, or not? 9. Is it *then* a question, whether these things are useful, or not?

§ 20. HOW TO TRANSLATE MAY, MIGHT; CAN, COULD, &c.  
 WHEN THEY ARE PRINCIPAL VERBS.

MAY; perf. MIGHT. (*permission.*) Licet<sup>d</sup>, *it is permitted.* 124  
 PRES. (*mihī*) ire licet, *I may go.*  
 (*tibi*) ire licet, *thou mayest go.*  
 &c.  
 PERF. (*mihī*) ire licuit, *I might have gone.*  
 (*tibi*) ire licuit, *thou mightest have gone*  
 &c.

<sup>b</sup> By *necne* the questions are joined *copulatively*, by an *non adversatively*. In *necne* therefore the question is made, as it were, *one*; and no opinion of the speaker's is implied, as to the things being so or not. In an *non* the notions are *opposed* to each other, either *simply*, or so that it is implied that the one is *more probable* than the other (*Hand*).—The verb is more frequently repeated with *necne* than with *annon*: the only instance of *necne* in a *direct* question is Cic. Tusc. 3, 18. *Sunt hæc tua verba, necne?* (K.)

<sup>c</sup> *Æternus*, without beginning or end, '*eternal*.' *Sempiternus* is '*everlasting*,' '*perpetual*;' '*eternal*' in a looser sense, without reference to an eternity without either *beginning* or *end*. *Sempiternus* is therefore the right word here.

<sup>d</sup> Licet, *it is permitted*, or *lawful*, by *human* law (positive, customary, or traditional): *fas est*, *it is permitted*, by *divine* law (including the law of *conscience*): *concessum est*, *it is permitted*, *comprehends* both as a *general* expression.

- 125 CAN; perf. COULD. (*power, possibility*). POSSUM<sup>o</sup>, *can, am able*.  
 PRES. (*ego*) *facere possum, I can do it.*  
 (*tu*) *facere potes, thou canst do it.*  
 &c.  
 PERF. (*ego*) *facere potui, I could have done it.*  
 (*tu*) *facere potuisti, thou couldst have done it.*  
 &c.
- 126 OUGHT; SHOULD. (*duty, propriety*). { *oportet, it behoves.*  
 { *debeo, I ought.*
- PRES. (*me*) *facere oportet*<sup>f</sup> { *I ought to do*<sup>s</sup>  
 (it) } (*ego*) *facere debeo.*
- (*te*) *facere oportet* { *Thou oughtest*  
 to do (it) } (*tu*) *facere debes.*
- 127 PERF. (*me*) *facere oportuit* { *I ought to have*  
 done (it) } (*ego*) *facere debui.*
- (*te*) *facere oportuit* { *Thou oughtest*  
 to have done (it) } (*tu*) *facere debuisti.*
- (a) Or, with the subjunctive governed by 'ut' omitted;  
 (*ego*) *faciam oportet*<sup>h</sup>, *I ought to do (it).*  
 (*tu*) *facias oportet, Thou oughtest to do (it).*
- 128 ~~§~~ *May, might; can, could; should, &c.*, when they stand in principal clauses, are not *auxiliary*, but *principal verbs*; and must

<sup>o</sup> Or, *queo*; *cannot, nequeo* (Inf. *quire, nequire, like eo*). *Possum* relates to the ability of the doer; *queo* to the feasibility (to him) of the thing to be done. *Possum*, I can do it, if no external hindrances occur; *queo*, I can do it, because there are no external hindrances, sufficient to prevent me; I am in a condition to do it.

This is expressed by saying that *possum* denotes *subjective*, *queo* *objective* possibility: or (in Döderlein's words) *possum* *quantitative*, *queo* *qualitative* possibility.

Döderlein observes: "The best prose writers, as Cicero and Sallust, and even Pliny and other later authors, frequently use *queo*, but (like *quisquam* and *ullus*) only in *negative* propositions: that is, only in such as actually contain a negation, or at least are of a *negative* character."

<sup>f</sup> *Necessè est*, expresses necessity; *oportet*, duty or propriety; *opus est*, adviseableness.

*Debeo* is the corresponding *personal* form to *oportet*, as *indigeo* to *opus est*. *Oportet* expresses the moral claim; *debeo*, the moral obligation of a particular person to satisfy that claim. *Debère* is generally supposed to be *de-habere*, 'to have from' a person, and therefore to owe it to him. Döderlein is inclined to refer it, with *debilis*, to *δέω, δεύω, to want*.

<sup>g</sup> Or, *I should do (it).*  
*Thou shouldst do (it).* } &c.

<sup>h</sup> *Legem brevem esse oportet*, A law ought to be short.

*Me ipsum ames oportet, non mea, You ought to love me, not merely things belonging to me.*

be translated by the proper tenses of *licet*, *possum*, *oportet*, or *debeo*, &c.

'*May*, *might*,' are often used of events, the *possibility* of which is 129 granted by the speaker. '*May*' or '*might*' is then equivalent to *may* (or *might*) possibly; *may for any thing I know*.

(a) When '*may*' =  $\left. \begin{array}{l} \textit{may happen,} \\ \textit{may possibly,} \\ \textit{may for any thing I know,} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \textit{it is to be trans-} \\ \textit{lated by fieri} \\ \textit{potest ut . . .} \end{array}$

(*Fieri potest, ut fallar, I may be deceived.*)

The *perf. infin.* after a *past tense* of a verb expressing *duty*, *possi-* 130 *bility*, *permission*, &c., is generally to be translated by the *present infinitive*.

That is, the time is marked by the tense of the verb expressing *duty*, &c., and the *present infin.* marks the time *relatively to that verb*. If it is meant, that the action should *have been completed before* the time spoken of, the *perf. infin.* must be used.

☞ '*May*,' '*might*,' sometimes mean '*can*,' '*could*,' and must 131 be translated by *possum*.

☞ The *perf. infin.* must be translated by the *present infin.* after *might*, *could*, *ought*, unless the action is to be represented as *over* before the time to which *might*, *could*, &c., refer.

When the *infin. perfect* follows '*ought*,' '*ought*' is the *perfect*.

Vocabulary 19.

<p><i>To be the slave of, servire, dat.</i>  <i>To spend, or lead a life, agere, eg-, act-.</i>  <i>Virtuous, honorable, honestus.</i>  <i>Chaste, castus.</i>  <i>Moral, sanctus.</i>  <i>To shed one's blood, profunder, fud-, fus-,</i>  <i>For = in behalf of, pro, abl.</i></p>	<p>Country = the country of one's birth 132                  or citizenship, patria.  <i>To snatch away; take away, eripere,</i>  <i>eripu-, erept-.</i>  <i>To take away a man's life, vitam alicui<sup>1</sup></i>  <i>eripere.</i>  <i>To take away my life, vitam mihi eri-</i>  <i>pere.</i></p>
--	---

Exercise 20.

[N.B. A parenthetical '*then*' in an interrogative sentence is used to indicate that *an* is to be used. Cf. 120.]

1. May a man be-the-slave-of glory? [No.]
2. Ought we not to 133 have obeyed the laws of our country?
3. What ought I to have done?
4. I asked, what I ought<sup>k</sup> to have done.
5. No man may take away another's life.
6. It cannot be denied, that he has led a very moral' life.
7. Ought he not to have shed his blood for his country?
8. There is no doubt, that he lived a very disgraceful'

<sup>1</sup> Obs. The person *from whom* is put in the *dat.* This *dat.* may be explained thus: it is the *person towards* or *against* whom the action of snatching away life is directed.

<sup>k</sup> The *pluperf.* must here be used, for the *imperfect* would fix the duty to the time of asking.



life. 9. Ought' we (*then*) to be the slaves of glory? 10. Ought' he not to have obeyed the laws of virtue? 11. It was owing to you, that<sup>22</sup> my life was not taken away by Caius. 12. I don't know, that<sup>23</sup> any body has led a more disgraceful life.

### § 21. APPPOSITION.

- 134 When to a substantive or personal pronoun there is added a substantive (without a *preposition*) explaining or describing it, the latter is said to be placed in *apposition* to the former. 'Alexander *the conqueror* of Persia.'
- 135 A noun in *apposition* may be turned into the *predicate* (nom. *after* the verb) of a relative sentence.
- 136 (a) A substantive in *apposition* must agree *in case* with the substantive of *which* it is spoken.
- 137 (b) If the substantive of which it is spoken be *feminine*, the *fem. form* should be chosen for the substantive in *apposition*, whenever there is one.
- 138 (c) If the principal word be the name of a *town*<sup>1</sup>, with *urbs* or *oppidum* in *apposition* to it, the verb or participle generally agrees with the *apposition* instead of the principal noun.  
(With this exception, agreement with the principal noun is *the rule*, though a rule that is not *always* observed.)
- 139 (d) The English 'as,' 'when,' 'for,' standing with a noun, are often omitted, and the Latin substantive placed in *apposition*.
- 140 (Eng.) The city of Rome. The island of Cyprus.  
(Lat.) The city Rome. The island Cyprus.
- 141 (a) *Alexander, victor tot regum atque populorum, Alexander the conqueror of so many kings and nations.*
- (b) { *Usus, magister egregius, Experience an admirable teacher.*  
    { *Philosophia, magistra morum, Philosophy the teacher of morals.*
- (c) *Volsinii, oppidum Tuscorum opulentissimum, totum concrematum est fulmine, Volsinii, the most wealthy town of the Tuscans, was entirely destroyed (burnt) by lightning.*
- (d) *Ædem Salutis, quam consul voverat, dictator dedicavit, He dedicated as dictator the temple of Salus, which he had vowed when consul.*

#### Vocabulary 20.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>142 To take, cāpere, io ; cēp-, capt-.<br/>King, rex, rēgis.<br/>Philosophy, philosophia.<br/>Inventor, inventor ; inventrix, icis.</p> | <p>Teacher, māgister, tri ; magistra.<br/>Manners, morals, character, mōres,<br/>um, m.<br/>Discipline, disciplina.</p> |
|--|---|

<sup>1</sup> The name of a people often stands with the substantive *civitas*, in *apposition* to it in the singular ; 'Carmonenses, quæ est longe firmissima totius provinciæ civitas.' Cæs. B. C. ii. 19.

*Frugality*, frugalitas, atis.  
*Parent*, gēnitor; genitrix, icis.  
*Athens*, Athēnæ, arum.  
*Branch of learning*, doctrīna.  
*Maker*, causer, effector; effectrix,  
 icis.  
*Wisdom*, sapientia.  
*Happy*, beatus.

*An old man*, sēnex, G. senis; G. pl.  
 senum.  
*To wish, desire, to be willing*, velle, volu-  
 no sup.  
*To blot out; efface, destroy utterly*,  
 delēre, delev-, delet-.  
*Treaty*, fœdus, eris, n.  
*To renew, renovare.*

*Exercise 21.*

1. Apiōlæ, a town of the Latins (*Latini*), was taken by king Tar-<sup>143</sup>  
 quinius. 2. Philosophy was the inventor of laws, the teacher of  
 morals and discipline. 3. Frugality is the parent of virtues. 4.  
 It cannot be denied, that philosophy was the inventor of laws. 5.  
 Caius used to call<sup>m</sup> Athens the inventor<sup>n</sup> of all branches-of-learning.  
 6. It cannot be denied, that wisdom is rightly called the maker of a  
 happy life. 7. I do not desire the same things as an old man, that  
 I desired when a boy (p. 7. 15, b). 8. I have left nothing undone  
 to finish<sup>o</sup> the business to your satisfaction. 9. It was owing to  
 you<sup>2</sup>, that the city of Rome was not destroyed by fire. 10. The  
 treaty between the cities of Rome and Lavinium<sup>o</sup> has been renewed.  
 11. Has not the treaty been renewed between the cities of Rome  
 and Lavinium? 12. Ought not the treaty between the cities of  
 Rome and Lavinium to have been renewed?—13. I am not sure<sup>2</sup>,  
 that experience is not the best master.

§ 22. NOMINATIVE AFTER THE VERB.—ATTRACTION OF  
 THE PREDICATE.

(a) (1) When an *adjective, participle, or substantive* is the *predi-*<sup>144</sup>  
*cate* of *esse* (or any of the verbs in 1, 4), and is spoken of the  
*subject* (or *nom. case*) of the verb on which *esse* depends, that parti-  
*ciple or adj. will stand in the nominative case.* (2) But if the *esse*  
 depends on an *infinitive* having its *subject* in the *accusative*, the *pre-*  
*dicat*e will be in the *accusative*.

(b) After a verb of *wishing, desiring*, and the like<sup>p</sup>, the *accusative*<sup>145</sup>  
 of the *pronoun* is sometimes expressed, and sometimes omitted, if it  
 means the same person as the *nom.* of the principal verb.

(b) If the acc. is omitted before the *infin.*, the noun or participle<sup>146</sup>  
 with the infinitive is *attracted* into the *nom. case*.

(c) After verbs of *declaring, thinking*, and the like<sup>q</sup>, the *accusative*<sup>147</sup>  
 under the same circumstances, is *sometimes*, but *very seldom*, omitted.

<sup>m</sup> ~~was~~ 'Would' or 'used to' may be considered as signs of the *Imperfect*.  
 (Dicebat, would say; used to say.)

<sup>n</sup> Plural.

<sup>p</sup> *Studii et desiderii*.

<sup>o</sup> Inter Romam Laviniumque urbes.

<sup>q</sup> *Sentiendi et declarandi*.

148 (c) When the acc. pronoun *is* omitted before the *infn.* after a verb of declaring, &c. the adjective or participle is *generally attracted* into the *nominative*; but sometimes not, especially when it is the participle of the *fut. in rus, esse* being omitted.

149 (a) Soleo (possum) esse otiosus, *I am accustomed to be (I can be) at leisure.* [But : Dicit *se non posse esse otiosum.*]

(b) Vult { *se esse principem,*  
          *esse princeps,* } *He wishes to be the first.*

(c) Ait { *se esse paratum,*  
          *esse paratus;* } *He says that he is ready.*  
*Facturos*<sup>2</sup> pollicentur, *They promise to do it.*

Vocabulary 21. (Of Apposition-Verbs<sup>v</sup>. Cf. 1, 4.)

150 *To become, to be made, fieri, fact-*  
*To turn out, e-vādere, e-vās-*  
*To be named = appointed, nōminari.*  
*To be elected or chosen, e-ligi, e-lect-*  
*To be made, of an appointment to an office, creari.*  
*To be born, nasci, nāt-*  
*To be considered or held, haberi, habit-*  
*To seem, appear, videri, visus<sup>w</sup>.*  
*To be rendered, reddi, reddit-*  
*An orator, orātor, ōris.*  
*A poet, poēta, m.*

*To be wont or accustomed, solēre, solītus sum.*  
*To desire, cupere, -io, cupiv-, cupit-*  
*To have rather, malle, malu-, no sup.*  
*Rich, dives, divītis.*  
*To begin, cēpisse; incipere, cēp-, cept-<sup>x</sup>.*  
*Troublesome, molestus, with dat.*  
*To cease: leave off, desinere, desii, desitum.*  
*Timid, timidus.*  
*To go on; continue, pergere, perrexi.*  
*By accident, cāsus.*

<sup>r</sup> Cicero is fond of inserting *se* after *velle*.

<sup>s</sup> In Cicero the pronoun is seldom omitted except after *fateri, dicere, opinari*, and similar verbs. (Ochsner.)

<sup>t</sup> Bentley says: '*ait esse paratum*' "ne Latinum quidem est;" which, however, Krüger thinks is too much to say.

<sup>u</sup> But the participle of the *fut. act.* standing (with the omission of *esse*) for the *fut. infn.* is sometimes attracted, especially in poetry. '*Visura et quamvis nunquam speraret Ulixen,*' *Propert.* ii. 7, 45. '*Venturaque rauco | Ore minatur hiems,*' *Stat. Theb.* i. 347. So with other predicates. '*Retulit Ajax | Esse Jovis pronepos.*' 'Acceptum refero versibus, *esse noceus.*' '*Sensit medius delapsus in hostes,*' &c. (K.)

<sup>v</sup> By *apposition-verbs* are meant the verbs that make no complete predicate; but require a noun after them, which is rather in *apposition* to the subject (the *nom.* to verb) than governed by the verb. Cf. 1, (4).

<sup>w</sup> *To appear* must be translated by *videri*, when it means *to seem*; by *apparere* when it means *to come into sight*; *to be seen*; *to be evident*.

<sup>x</sup> *Cæpi* has only the tenses derived from the *perf.* *Cæptus est* is used for its *perf.* before *pass. infinitives*. So *desitus est* (ceased), though more rarely. *Zumpt*. When he adds that the *perf.*, *pluperf.*, and *fut. perf.* have respectively the meanings of the *pres.*, *imperf.*, and *simple future*, I believe him to be mistaken; for: (1) In many passages *cæpi* has *certainly* the meaning of the *perf.* (2) In many more, I think in all, the Latin idiom requires one of the *perfect*, where we should use one of the *imperfect* tenses.

*Cæpi* is regularly joined only with the *infn.*; *incipio* with (*infn.* or) a noun (as its subject or object): and *cæpi* dwells more on the action begun; *incepi* gives more prominence to the beginning that is made, and is altogether more emphatic. (D.)

*Exercise 22.*

1. I had rather be in good health than be rich. 2. I begin to be troublesome to you. 3. Cease to be timid. 4. There is no doubt, that the boy will turn out an orator. 5. Do not continue to be troublesome to Caius. 6. It cannot be denied, that Balbus seems wise to many persons. 7. No one is born rich. 8. No one becomes good by accident. 9. Numa Pompilius was made king. 10. *It was owing to you that*<sup>22</sup> I was not made king. 11. He promises to perform<sup>3</sup> the business (*omit esse*). 12. No one can be happy without virtue. 13. There is no doubt, that no man can be happy without virtue. 14. I had rather be a good man, than seem (one). 15. Many persons cannot turn out orators. 16. A poet is born, not made. 17. Was the world made by accident, or by design?—18. Has any philosopher dared to deny, that the world was made by design? [No.] 19. He says, that nobody becomes good by accident.

## § 23. DATIVE AFTER THE INFINITIVE ESSE.

(*a. b. c.*) When *esse*, &c., would properly have a pronoun in the *acc.* as its *subject*, and this *acc. pronoun* denotes the same person as the *object* (in the *dative*) of *licet* (*licebat*, &c.), the *acc. pronoun* is usually omitted, the noun after *esse* either remaining in the *accus.* or being (more commonly) attracted into the *dative*.

Thus when (for instance) the full construction would be '*licet mihi | me esse negligentem*,' the *acc. me* is usually omitted, and we find either '*licet mihi esse negligentem*;' or, (far less commonly) '*licet mihi esse negligentem*.' If the *dat. pron.* is omitted, the attraction seldom takes place in *prose*, the usual form being '*licet esse negligentem*;' but, '*licet esse beatis*.' *Hor.*

(*d*) After *contingit*, *expedit*, *vacat*, *prodest*, &c., this attraction of the noun after *esse* into the *dative*, belongs principally to *poets* and *later writers*.

- (*a*) *Mihi negligentem esse non licet*<sup>a</sup>, *I may not be negligent.* 153  
 (*b*) *Medios esse non licet*, *We may not be neutral.*  
 (*c*) *Civi Romano licet esse Gaditanum* (*Cic.*).  
*Annus, quo . . . ei consulem fieri liceret* (*Cæs.*).  
 (*d*) *Expedit bonas esse vobis*, *It is expedient for you to be good women.*

<sup>y</sup> The *gen.* and *ablat.* are never attracted in this way. We may not say: '*Interest Ciceronis esse eloquentis*;' '*damnor a nolente esse bono*.' (*K.*)

<sup>z</sup> This full construction is found in *Plautus*, '*non mihi licere meam rem me solum, ut volo, loqui*?' *Cas. 1. 1.*—'*Non licet me isto tanto bono uti*' occurs *Cic. Verr. 5, 59.*

<sup>a</sup> '*Per quam non licet esse negligentem*' (*sc. mihi*). *Catull.*

## Vocabulary 22.

- 154 (Verbs in the third person governing the *dat.*, and often used with an infinitive clause as their *subject*.)

*It is permitted*, licet.

*I have leisure*, vacat mihi; but *dat.* of *pron.* generally omitted when the person is known.

*It is given*, datur, datum est.

*It is expedient*, expedit.

*It is profitable*, prōdest, profuit, &c.

*It is injurious*, hurtful, nocet.

*Negligent*, negligens.

*Neutral*, medius.

*Luxurious*, luxuriosus.

*Free*, liber, libera, liberum

## Exercise 23.

- 155 1. Let us be permitted<sup>b</sup> to be miserable. 2. Let us be permitted to be neutral. 3. *There is no doubt*, that no man may be neutral. 4. It is injurious to be negligent. 5. There is no doubt, that it is expedient for all to be good. 6. Many persons doubt what is expedient for them. 7. It is not given to all to be wise. 8. It is expedient for no man to be luxurious. 9. I have no leisure to be luxurious. 10. It cannot be denied, that few have leisure to be luxurious. 11. There is no doubt, that it is profitable to all to spend a virtuous' life. 12. There is no doubt, that a wise man would rather be-in-good-health' than be rich. 13. There is no doubt, that no one becomes good by chance. 14. Had you rather be rich or be-in-good-health? 15. I asked him, whether he had rather be-in-good-health or be wise. 16. You ought not to *have been*<sup>19</sup> neutral.—17. I don't know, that<sup>20</sup> any philosopher has denied this. 18. Why may not these be free?

## § 24. THE GENITIVE.

- 156 (a) The Romans often used a *dependent genitive*<sup>c</sup> where *we* use *prepositions*: *in, for, with, &c.*
- 157 Almost every substantive that depends so closely on another as to form almost *one notion* with it, may in Latin be expressed by the *genitive*, no matter what preposition we should use in English.
- 158 The *genitive* is joined *attributively* to its substantive; and as no two languages exactly agree, it often happens that what one language expresses by an *adjective* another for want of an adjective would express by the Genitive case. Hence—
- 159 (b) Where *we* use the *genitive* or the preposition 'of' with a substantive, an adjective may often be used in Latin.
- 160 (c) Where *we* use a *substantive* with an *adjective* agreeing with it, an *adjective* in the *neuter* is often used in Latin, with a *genitive* governed by it.

<sup>b</sup> Let-it-be-permitted to us.

<sup>c</sup> This is called the *objective genitive*. 'The Genitive is *subjective*, when it denotes that which does something, or to which something belongs: it is *objective*, when it denotes that which is the object of the feeling or action spoken of. The *objective* genitive usually follows the noun on which it depends.' Z.

(a) These adjectives are *indefinite numerals* and *demonstrative pronouns*. They are only used as *quasi-substantives* (governing the *gen.*) in the *nom.* and *acc.* singular.

(β) The following are peculiar phrases: *id temporis*, at that time : *id ætatis*, of that age : *quid ætatis* † of what age ?

(a) *Gratia beneficii* <sup>c</sup>, *Gratitude for a kindness*. *Mulierum Sabinarum injuriæ*, *The wrongs done to the Sabine women*. *Luctus filii*, *Grief for his son*. *Suarum rerum fiducia*, *Confidence in his own affairs*. *Pyrrhi regis bellum*, *The war with king Pyrrhus*.

(b) *Res aliënæ*, *The affairs of others* (or, other people's affairs). *Causa regia*, *The royal cause* ; or, the king's cause. *Timor externus*, *Fear from without* ; fear of foreign enemies.

(c) *Quantum voluptatis*, *How much pleasure*. *Aliquid tempõris*, *Some time*. *Nimum tempõris*, *Too much time*. *Multum boni*, *Much good*. *Plus boni*, *More good*. *Quid novi* ? (what of new ? =) *What new thing ? what news ?*

(OBS. *Boni, mali, novi, falsi*, are used as *substantives* after these *neuters*.)

Vocabulary 23.

*Gratitude*, gratia.  
*Benefit* ; favour, beneficium.  
*Weight* ; burden, onus, onëris, n.  
*Heavy*, gravis.  
*Light*, lævis.  
*Flight* ; escape from, fuga.  
*Labour*, lãbor.  
*Remedy*, remedium.  
*Anger*, ira.  
*To overpower* by a violent emotion, frangere, frëg-, fract-; literally, to break.  
*Care*, cõra.  
*Not-one's-own* ; of others ; other people's, aliënus.

*Affair*, res, rei.  
*Difficult*, difficilis.  
*Silver*, argentum.  
*Gold*, aurum.  
*Nature*, rerum natura.  
*Of Abdëra*, Abderites <sup>e</sup>.  
*Advantage* = profit, gain, emolumentum.  
*To receive* or gain advantage, emolumentum cãpere, io; cãp-, capt-.  
*Replies* ; says he, inquit ; always following a word or two of the reply.  
*Compassion*, pity, misericordia.  
*Poor*, pauper, ëris.

162

<i>What</i> ,	<i>Too much</i> ,	<i>More</i> ,	<i>How much</i> ,	<i>Much</i> ,
<i>Quid</i> ,	<i>nimum</i> .	<i>plus</i> †.	<i>quantum</i> .	<i>multum</i> .
<i>Nothing</i> ,			<i>No time</i> ,	
<i>nihil</i> (indecl. neuter subst.).			<i>nihil temporis</i> .	

Exercise 24.

1. Is gratitude for a benefit a heavy weight ? [No.] 2. Is not 163 death an escape from labours ? 3. There is no escape from death.

<sup>c</sup> See note <sup>e</sup> in preceding page.

<sup>e</sup> Names from one's native town end in ENSIS ; ANUS (from towns in a, æ) ; INUS with I (from towns in ia, ium) ; AS, G. atis (from towns in um).

From Greek nouns the adjectives generally end in ius (often with some change of root) ; also in ñes, ñtes, iãtes ; and in æus from a. Those from towns of Greek origin, but not in Greece, usually end in ñnus. (Z.)

† Plus, pluris, only in the sing. Plur. plures, plura, G. plurium, &c.

4. Are there not many remedies against anger? 5. Good men are often overpowered by compassion for the poor. 6. The care of other people's affairs is difficult'. 7. We all lose too much time. 8. Is there more silver or gold in nature? 9. It was owing to you<sup>22</sup>, that I did not keep my promises. 10. We are now of such an age, that we ought to bear all things' courageously. 11. It cannot be denied, that Pythagoras of Abdëra was a very great philosopher. 12. Antisthènes was asked, what advantage he had received from (*ex*) philosophy. 13. Antisthenes, being asked what advantage he had received from philosophy, 'To be able  $\xi$ ,' says he, 'to converse with myself  $\theta$ .' 14. How much time do we all lose! 15. It cannot be denied, that we all lose much time. 16. There were some<sup>109</sup> who lost much time. 17. I doubt, whether<sup>23</sup> he has not lost much time.

§ 25. THE GENITIVE (*continued*).—PARTITIVES. GENITIVUS QUALITATIS.

- 164 A *partitive* adjective is one that expresses *some* individuals considered as *parts* of a larger number or body.  
*Partitive* adjectives are, therefore, such as *which, every, each, both, some, &c.* &c. with *ordinal* numerals, *comparatives*, and *superlatives*.
- 165 (a) A partitive adjective governs a noun in the *genitive* <sup>h</sup>.
- 166 The gender of the partitive adjective is generally the gender of the governed genitive, because that expresses the *thing meant*.
- 167 (b) But sometimes the genitive is the name of a *country* of which the person is *one* inhabitant: of course then the adjective agrees with *man* understood.
- 168 (c) Also when a *superlative*, or *solus*, &c. governs a *gen.*, and is also (with the *gen.*) spoken of another substantive, the partitive agrees in *gender*, not with the *gen.*, but with the *other substantive*.
- 169 (d) A substantive *having an adjective agreeing with it, and describing* a former substantive, stands in the genitive or ablative.  
 (It may be used *attributively* or *predicatively*; as an adjective, that is, to the substantive, or *after* the verb *to be*.)  
 If the description be merely *numerical*, the genitive only can be used.
- 170 (e) *Opus est*<sup>1</sup> (*there is need*) is followed by an *ablative of what is needed*. The *person who needs* must be put in the *dative*.

<sup>g</sup> Ut possim.

<sup>h</sup> Partitives are often followed by the prepositions meaning *from, out of, amongst*, (*e, inter, de,*) instead of by the genitive.

<sup>1</sup> *Opus est* (*it is a task or business*). Grotefend, comparing the Greek  $\epsilon\pi\omega\nu\ \lambda\omicron\tau\iota\ \tau\iota\nu\omicron\varsigma$ , thinks that the ablative originally expressed *the means by which* the business is to be accomplished. Probably *opus esse* had, in various constructions, come to have nearly the meaning of *to be necessary* or *required*: and then other constructions were commonly, or occasionally, used before the *ablative*

(f) After *opus est*, an English substantive is often translated by a *passive* 171  
*participle*.

(g) But *the thing needed* is often the *nom.* to the verb *sum*; or 172  
the *acc.* before *esse*.

☞ In this construction the verb *sum* will agree, of course, with its *nom.* In  
the former, it is always in the *third person sing.*; *opus* being its real *nom.*

(Eng.) I have need of food. 173  
(Lat.) { (1) There is a business to me with food (*abl.* without *prep.*).  
          { or (2) { Food is a business to me.  
                  { These things are a business to me.

The second construction is preferred with *neuter* pronouns and adjectives. (Z.) 174  
*How many are there of you?* = how many are you?  
There are very many *of you*, = you are very many.  
Few *of whom* there are, = who are few.

When 'of' with a *demonstrative* or *relative* pronoun follows a *plural numeral*  
or *superlative*, the numeral often expresses *all* who are meant by the pronoun:  
and then the pronoun and the numeral must be in the *same case* in spite of  
'of' k.

☞ 'Of you,' 'of us,' are not to be translated after 'how many,' or *other* 175  
*numerals*, when the *whole party* are spoken of.

When 'of us,' 'of you,' are omitted, the verb will be of the *first* and *second*  
person respectively.

- (a) *Uter vestrum? Which of you? Alter consulum, One of the* 176  
*consuls. Græcorum oratorum præstantissimus, The best of*  
*the Grecian orators.*
- (b) *Plato totius Græciæ doctissimus, Plato the most learned man*  
*of all Greece.*
- (c) *Hordeum est frugum mollissimum, Barley is the softest*  
*species of corn.*
- (d) { *Vir summo ingenio*<sup>1</sup>, *A man of the greatest ability.*  
      { *Vir excellentis ingenii, A man of distinguished ability.*

prevailed. *Plautus* uses even the *accusative*, as if it were the *object required*:  
the *gen.* is still sometimes found: probably the preference was at last given to  
the *abl.*, from that being the usual case after verbs of *needing*, or *requiring*.

k Consider, therefore, after such words, whether the pronoun *expresses more*,  
or *no more*, than the numeral.

<sup>1</sup> According to the German grammarians, the *gen.* denotes a *permanent*, the  
*abl.* a *temporary* state. *Grotefend* says, the *gen.* is used of a thoroughly inherent  
and permanent quality, penetrating the whole being, and making the thing what  
it is; whereas the *abl.* is used of any part or appendage of the thing spoken of,  
and only as far as it manifests itself; which part or appendage, moreover, may  
be *accidental* and *temporary*. To establish this he quotes; "Murena *mediocri*  
*ingenio, sed magno studio rerum veterum, multæ industriæ et magni laboris fuit.*"  
'Murena showed but moderate talents, though a great zeal for antiquarian  
pursuits; industry and laborious perseverance constituted his character.' Why  
not as well or better, 'He showed great industry and perseverance; but his mind  
was (*essentially, and permanently,*) one of little power, though with a great fond-



*Ingentis magnitudinis* serpens, *A serpent* of immense size.

*Classis septuaginta navium*, *A fleet* of seventy ships.

- (e) *Acūto homine nobis opus est*, *We have need of an acute man.*  
*Quid opus est verbis?* *What need is there of words?*
- (f) *Properato<sup>m</sup> opus est*, *It is necessary to make haste.*
- (g) *Quarundam rerum nobis exempla permulta opus sunt*, *Of some things we have need of a great many examples.* *Nihil opus est, there is no need.* *Quid opus est?* *what need is there?*

Vocabulary 24.

- 177 *Which of two, ūter, tra, trum, G. utrius.* *Serpent, serpens, ntis, c.*  
*Each of two, uterque, G. utriusque.* *Immense, ingens.*  
*Another; one of two things: a second;* *Size, magnitudo, inis.*  
*one more, alter, altera, alterum, G.* *Lemnos, Lemnos<sup>o</sup>.*  
*alterius.* *To find; discover, in-vēnīre, vēm-, vent-:*  
*Of Miletus, Milesius, 162, e.* *reperire, repēr-, repert-<sup>o</sup>.*  
*Greek, Græcus.* *Custom, consuetudo, dinis, f.*  
*Roman, Romanus.* *Nature, i. e. a man's nature, natura.*  
*To predict; foretell, præ-dicere.* *Money, often argentum, silver.*  
*Eclipse, defectio, onis.* *To draw away, avocare.*  
*Sun, sol, sōlis, m.* *Connexion, conjunctio, ōnis, f.*  
*Body, corpus, corpōris.* *Honour, i. e. probity, trustworthiness,*  
*Food; meat, cibus.* *fides, ei, f.*  
*Drinking, drink, potio, onis.*

*There is need of* { *making haste,*  
*deliberation,* } *properato.*  
*prompt execution,* } *consulto.*  
*mature factio.*

Exercise 25.

- 178 1. One of them was a Greek, the other a Roman. 2. Thales<sup>p</sup> of Miletus was the first of the Greeks who<sup>s</sup> predicted an eclipse of the sun. 3. I did the same when (139) consul. 4. He says (*ait*<sup>q</sup>)

ness for antiquity?' Was his *ingenium* (the in-born power of his mind) a less permanent quality than his *industria*? Zumpt says: 'With *esse* Cicero seems to prefer the *abl.*'

<sup>m</sup> *Properare* is used of a praiseworthy haste for the attainment of a purpose; *festinare* = to be in a hurry. An adj. *properus* was formed from *pro* (forth, forwards), as *inferus*, *exterus*, from their prepositions. (D.)

<sup>n</sup> Greek nouns in *os* of the second decl. are declined like Latin nouns of the 2nd, but have acc. *on* or *um*.

<sup>o</sup> '*Invenio*, properly to come upon any thing, expresses the general notion of to find: *reperio*, like to find out and to discover, implies that the thing found was before hid, and was sought for with pains.' (D.) Crombie observes that *invenire* is the proper word for the faculty itself; when we talk, that is, of the power of discovering generally, without adding *what*; i. e. without an accusative after it. He quotes from Cicero, '*vigēre, sapere, invenire, meminisse*,' a passage which plainly proves that *invenire* does not exclude the notion of searching, though it does not (like *reperire*) necessarily imply it.

<sup>p</sup> Thales, *ētis*.

<sup>q</sup> *Fari* is to talk; use articulate speech: *loqui*, to speak or talk (opposed to *tacēre*, to be silent): *dicere* is to say, the transitive form of *loqui*. As *distin-*

that there is no occasion for making-haste. 5. The body has need of much food. 6. Are not serpents of immense size found in the island of<sup>27</sup> Lemnos? 7. It cannot be doubted, that he is a man of no honour. 8. What need have we of your authority? 9. It cannot be denied, that the body has need of meat and drink. 10. (We) have need of deliberation. 11. It cannot be denied, *that* we have need of deliberation. 12. Is not custom a second nature? 13. Verres used to say<sup>28</sup>, that he had need of many things. 14. How much money have you need of? 15. I left nothing undone to<sup>29</sup> draw-away Pompey from his connexion with Cæsar (156). 16. How many are there of you<sup>30</sup>? 17. I will ask, how many there are of them. 18. He was asked, how much time he had lost.

Some English substantives relative to *position*, are often translated into Latin 179 by *adjectives* agreeing with their substantives. Such are *end, middle, whole, top, &c.* Thus—

<i>The top of the mountain.</i>	<i>The middle of the way.</i>	<i>The rest of the work.</i>
N. summus mons,	media via,	reliquum opus,
G. summi montis,	mediæ viæ,	reliqui operis,
&c.	&c.	&c.

*So ima quercus, the bottom (or foot) of the oak: universa Græcia, the whole of Greece: sapientia prima, the beginning of wisdom: extrêmus liber<sup>r</sup>, the end of the book: extrêmus liber tertius, the end of the third book.*

These adjectives generally stand before their substantives \*.

Vocabulary 25.

180

*The Alps, Alpes, ium, f.*

*Cold, frigus, oris, n.*

*Snow, nix, nivis, f.*

*To melt, liquescere, licu-.*

*To count; reckon, numerare.*

*Out of, ex, abl.*

*A thousand, mille, indecl. in sing. In plur. millia, ium, ibus<sup>t</sup>, &c.*

*To survive, super-esse, dat.*

*Three hundred, trecenti.*

*guished* from *loqui, dicere* expresses a more artificial or studied speech, *loqui* being to speak in the style of ordinary conversation. As distinguished from *ajo, dicere* is to speak for the information of the hearers, *ajo* expressing the assertion of the speaker, as the opposite of *nego*. Hence *ajo* is *I say = I assert, affirm, maintain* (but somewhat weaker than these words). D.

*Inquit* (which *Döderlein* derives from *inquit*, throws-in) is used to introduce the words of another, and also the objections which we suppose another to make (Bentley). It is also used in a vehement re-assertion ('one, one I say').

<sup>r</sup> The adjective so used, does not distinguish its substantive from other things of the same kind, but a part of itself from another part. Thus *summus mons* is the mountain where it is highest: not the highest of a number of mountains.

<sup>s</sup> Not, however, always, e. g. '*sapientia prima*' (*Hor.*), and '*In hac insulâ extremâ est fons aquæ dulcis,*' &c. (*Cic. Verr. 4, 118.*)

<sup>t</sup> *Mille* the *adj.* is indeclinable.

To swear, *jūrare*.

Moon, *Lūna*.

Lowest, *infimus*.

Planet, *planēta*, or *es*, *m*.

Master = 'master of a house,' 'owner of any property,' slaves as well as any other, *dominus*; *herus* is a master only in relation to his servants or slaves.

Wool, *lāna*.

Black, *niger*, *gra*.

White, *albus*.

Some—others, *alii—alii*.

Only, *solus*, *G. solius*.

Chameleon, *chamæleon*, *m*.

To nourish; support, *alere*, *alu*, *alſt* or *alt*.

River, *flūmen*, *inis*, *n*.

Neither—nor, *neq* or *neque* followed by *neq* or *neque* <sup>u</sup>.

### Exercise 26.

- 181 1. On the top of the Alps the cold is so great, that the snow never melts there. 2. Count, how many there are of you <sup>21</sup>. 3. Out of (*ex*) so many thousands of Greeks (but) few of us survive. 4. Three hundred of us have sworn. 5. The top of the mountain was held by T. (*Titus*) Labienus. 6. The moon was considered the lowest of the planets. 7. It cannot be denied, that custom is a second nature. 8. Slaves are of the same morals as <sup>22</sup> their master. 9. Who is there but <sup>23</sup> understands, that custom is a second nature? 10. Caius promises, that he will finish the rest of the work. 11. Three hundred of us have finished the rest of the journey. 12. Of wools some are black, others white. 13. The chameleon is the only animal that <sup>24</sup> is nourished neither by meat nor drink <sup>v</sup>. 14. The Indus is the largest of all rivers. 15. It is written <sup>25</sup> at [*Say*: in] the end of the second book.

### § 26. THE GENITIVE (continued). GEN. AFTER ADJECTIVES.

- 182 Adjectives which signify *desire*, *knowledge*, *recollection*, *fear*, *participation*, and their *opposites*; together with *verbals* in *ax*, and many of those that express *fulness* or *emptiness*, govern the *genitive*.

(a) These adjectives have an *incomplete meaning*, and may be compared with *transitive verbs*. The governed substantive expresses generally the *object* of some *feeling* of the mind.

- 183 (b) To this class belong many participles *used adjectively*.

(c) In poetry <sup>w</sup> the *gen.* may almost always stand after an *adjective*, where its relation to the adjective might be expressed by 'with respect to.'

<sup>u</sup> '*Neq* and *neque* stand indifferently before either vowels or consonants.' (Z.) The old doctrine, that 'in good writers *neq* is found usually only before consonants, is utterly groundless. In *Cic. de Rep.* alone, *neq* stands before a vowel nineteen times: *neq enim: neq id*, &c.—*neque reliquarum virtutum, neq ipsius reipublicæ; dabo tibi testes neq nimis antiquos, neq ullo modo barbaros: neq atrocis . . . neque apertius.*' (Freund.)

<sup>v</sup> *Potus*, *ūs*. "*Potio* is the act of drinking, and that on which this action is performed; a draught; a liquid swallowed; *potus* is drinking, and drink in itself, without reference to the action." (R.)

<sup>w</sup> And in *Tacitus*, who has—*vetus regnandi, summus severitatis*, &c.

- (a) Avidus novitatis, *Greedy of novelty*. Insidiarum plenus, *Full 184 of plots*. Beneficii immemor, *Apt to forget a favour*. Rei maritimæ peritissimi, *Very skilful in naval affairs*. Magnæ urbis capax, *Able to contain a large city*.
- (b) Veritatis amans, *Attached to truth; a lover of truth*. Amans patriæ, *A lover of his country*. Officii negligens, *Negligent of duty*.
- (c) Audax ingenii, *Bold of temper; of a bold temper*. Insolitus servitii, *Unaccustomed to slavery*. Insuetus laboris (*Cæs.*). Fidissima tui (*Virg.*). Seri studiorum (*Hor.*). Utilis mendendi (*Ov.*).

Vocabulary 26.

To hate, odisse<sup>z</sup>, with tenses derived from the perf.  
 Courage, virtus, ūtis, f.  
 Contention, contentio, onis, f.  
 Truth, veritas, atis, f.  
 Philosopher, philosophus.  
 Glorious, gloriosus.  
 Jest, jocus, i.  
 To hesitate, dubitare γ.  
 To undertake, suscipere, cēp-, cept-

In-such-a-manner, ita.  
 Not even, ne—quidem, with the word the even belongs to between them: ne joco quidem, not even in jest.  
 Nothing but, nihil aliud nisi;—the following adj. is not to agree with nihil, but with the substantive after nisi.  
 To take in good part; to receive favourably, boni consilēre\*, sulu-, sult-; in bonam partem accipere.

185

(Adjectives governing the gen.)

Mindful, mēmor, ōris.  
 Unmindful; apt-to-forget, immēmor.  
 Negligent; careless of; inattentive to, negligens.  
 Greedy, avidus.  
 Eagerly-desirous, stūdiosus.

Fond; desirous, cūpidus.  
 Skilled in, peritus.  
 Unacquainted with; ignorant of, rūdīs.  
 A partner, consors<sup>z</sup>, properly adj. one who has the same lot.

\* Of this verb the *perf.*, *pluperf.*, and *fut. perf.* are respectively used for (that is, where *æ* should use) the *pres.*, *imperf.*, and *simple fut.*

This is the case with most verbs that express simple emotions and operations of the mind, which are completed the moment they exist. The moment I do hate, I have hated; the moment I do know, I have known.

† Dubitare, to hesitate, is generally followed by *inf.*

\* So æqui boni (or æqui bonique) facere, to take in good part; to be satisfied.—Lucri facere, to turn to account; to get the credit of.

In boni consulere, boni is probably a gen. of the price or value, consulere being used in its first sense of 'to think upon, whether by oneself, or with others.' Freund and others derive it from obsol. *conso*, from which come *consul*, *consilium*.

Döderlein thinks *con-sulere* meant originally 'to sit down' (from the same root as *sol-ium*, *sel-la*, and perhaps *sol-um*), and that *boni* is an old adv. (of the same form as *heri*): so that *boni consulas* = *bene considas* or *acquiescas*. It occurs in Quint., Sen., &c.: not, I believe, in Cicero.

z *Socius*, 'a companion'; 'associate'; 'member of the same society'; 'sharer of the same fortune'; in which last meaning it is synonymous with *consors*.

*A lover of; attached to, amans, diligens*<sup>a</sup>.  
*Productive of, efficiens.*

*Such a lover of, adeo amans or diligens.*

*Exercise 27.*

- 186 1. All men hate (him who is) apt-to-forget a kindness. 2. Courage is greedy of danger. 3. Many are fonder of contention than of truth. 4. Pythagoras calls (those who are) eagerly-desirous of wisdom philosophers. 5. All men ought to be mindful of benefits (received). 6. Cicero has lost Hortensius, the partner<sup>b</sup> of his glorious labour. 7. That (*iste*) basest of all men is the same *that* he always was. 8. Epaminondas was such a lover<sup>c</sup> of truth, that he did not utter-a-falsehood even<sup>d</sup> in jest. 9. We ought all to be such lovers of our country as not to<sup>e</sup> hesitate to shed our blood for it. 10. I will warn the boy not to become inattentive to duty. 11. He said, that he was not<sup>2</sup> negligent of duty. 12. It cannot be denied, that we ought all to be lovers of our country. 13. He begs me to take these things in good part. 14. They say, that virtue is not productive of pleasure. 15. Let war be undertaken in-such-a-manner, that nothing but peace may seem (to be) sought-for.

§ 27. THE GENITIVE (*continued*).

- 187 (a) (*Eng.*) *To prefer a capital charge against a man.*  
 (Lat.) { *To make a man an accused-person of a capital matter.*  
*Aliquem rei capitalis reum facere.*  
 (b) (*Eng.*) *To bring an action against a man for bribery.*  
 (Lat.) *Aliquem de ambitu reum facere.*

*Comes*, 'companion,' 'fellow-traveller.' *Sodalis*, 'companion in amusement or pleasure.' (C.)

*Consortes fortuna eadem, socios labor idem;*  
*Sed caros faciunt schola, ludus, mensa sodales.*  
*Vir comis multos comites sibi jungit eundo.*

Com-it-es, con and 'it,' as in supine of eo.

<sup>a</sup> *Amare* expresses the affection of love; *diligere* (properly to choose apart) the preference of one object to another. If therefore any thing of deliberate choice or preference is to be expressed, *diligere* should be used.

<sup>b</sup> *Consortes*. *Socius* would imply that they shared the same toil, not that Hortensius had a separate share of the same occupation.

<sup>c</sup> *Diligens* with *gen.*, his attachment to truth being a principle with him. In the next sentence *amans*, because, though patriotism should be a principle, affection for one's country is the thing required.

<sup>d</sup> *Say*: 'that he uttered a falsehood not even in jest.'

<sup>e</sup> *A consequence*; not a purpose.

- (c) (Eng.) *To prefer a charge of immorality against a man.*  
 (Lat.) *Aliquem de moribus reum facere.*  
 (d) (Eng.) *He has informed me of his plan.*  
 (Lat.) *Certiozem me sui consilii fecit\*.*

Vocabulary 27.

(Adjectives governing the gen.)

*Tenacious, tēnax, acis.*

*Capable-of-containing, cāpax, acis.*

*Without, expers, expertis. es, pars.*

*Accused of, reus<sup>†</sup>, from res.*

*In his absence, absens, adj. agreeing with the substantive.*

*Bribery, ambītus: amb-ire, 'to go round,' to canvass. Properly, therefore, to accuse a man de ambitu, is 'to bring an accusation about his canvassing:' and then, as 'reum facere de moribus' is, 'to accuse of immorality,' so to accuse him de am-*

*bitu, is 'to accuse him of improper, 188*

*illegal canvassing,' i. e. of bribery.*

*Extortion, res or pecuniæ repetundæ; or repetundæ alone: properly, things or moneys to be claimed back.*

*Assault, vis<sup>§</sup>, violence.*

*Impiety, impietas.*

*To prefer a charge (or, bring an action) against, reum facere.*

*To inform, certiozem facere, fēc-, fact-.*

*To learn, discere, dīdīc-.*

*Design; plan, consilium.*

*Full, plenus. Danger, periculum.*

Exercise 28.

1. We are very tenacious of those things, which we learnt as<sup>22</sup> boys. 189
2. The island of Pharos is not<sup>h</sup> capable-of-containing a great city.
3. They are going to prefer a charge of immorality against Caius.
4. They have brought an action against Caius for an assault. 5.
- They have preferred a charge of impiety against Caius in his absence. 6. I left nothing undone to<sup>18</sup> inform Cæsar of my design.
7. I fear, that he will not<sup>13</sup> inform me of his design. 8. It is disgraceful to be without any<sup>1</sup> learning. 9. I fear, that he will not keep his word. 10. He promised, that he would<sup>4</sup> leave nothing undone to draw away Pompey from his connexion with<sup>14</sup> Cæsar.
11. There is no one but<sup>9</sup> believes, that you will be without any<sup>1</sup> dangers. 12. He warns<sup>1</sup> us, that all things are full of danger. 13. There are some who<sup>100</sup> deny, that virtue is productive of pleasure.

\* *Certiozem facere* may also be followed by *abl.* with *de*:

'Eum de rebus gestis certiozem faciunt.'

† "*Reos appello non eos modo qui arguuntur, sed omnes quorum de re discipatur; sic enim olim loquebantur.*" *Cic. 2 de Orat.* 43. From the *olim* it is plain that *reus* had come to be used of the *defendant* almost exclusively.

§ *Vis, vis, —, vim, vi | vires, virium, &c. Gen. vis in Tao.,* but very rare.

h *Non* is 'not:' *haud* is 'certainly not,' 'surely not,' used especially with *adjectives, adverbs, and impersonal verbs.*

i 'Any,' after *expers*, must be translated by *omnis*, 'all.'

j When *moneo* does not mean to warn or advise us to do (or not do) something, it takes *acc.* with *infm.* (not *ut ne*).

§ 28. THE GENITIVE (*continued*).

- 190 (a) Such a substantive as *property, duty, part, mark, &c.* is often omitted in Latin after 'to be,' so that 'to be' is followed by a *genitive* governed by this substantive, or by an *adjective* in the *neuter* gender agreeing with it.

Such a noun as *officium, munus, indicium, &c.* must be *understood*.

This genitive is construed in various ways in English: and therefore there are various English phrases that may be reduced to this construction.

- 191 (a) Such phrases are: *it is characteristic of; it is incumbent on; it is for* (the rich, &c.); *it is not every one who; any man may; it demands or requires; it betrays, shows, &c.; it belongs to.*

When the adjective is of *one termination* (and therefore would leave it doubtful whether *man* or *thing* is meant), it is better to use this construction.

('It is *wise*;' not '*sapiens est*,' but '*sapientis est*.')

- 192 So when the predicate is an abstract noun in the *nom.*, it is more commonly in the *gen.* in Lat.—'It is *madness*,' '*dementia est*.'

- 193 (b) These genitives are used in the same way with *facere, ferri, labori, duci.*

- 194 (c) Verbs of *accusing, condemning, acquitting, &c.* take a *genitive* of the charge.

- 195 (f) But if the *charge* be expressed by a *neuter pronoun*, it stands in the *accusative*.

- 196 This construction may be explained by the omission of *crimine, or nomine*, which are sometimes expressed.

- 197 (c) Instead of the *gen.*, the *ablat.* with *de* is very common.

- 198 (d) The *punishment* to which a person is condemned, stands generally in the *ablat.*; sometimes in the *gen.*, and often in the *acc.* with *ad*.

- 199 (e) *Satāgo*<sup>k</sup>, *misereor*, and *miseresco*, govern the *gen.*: verbs of *reminding, remembering*<sup>l</sup>, and *forgetting*, the *gen.* or *accusative*.

But verbs of *reminding* rarely take an *accus.* unless it be a *neut. pronoun*. Sallust has the three forms; *admonere aliquem rei; de re; and rem.*

- 200 (a) *Imbecilli animi est superstitio*, *Superstition is a mark of* (or betrays) *a weak mind*. *Judicis est*, *It is the part* (or duty) *of a judge*. *Est boni oratoris*, *It is the business of a good orator*. *Ingenii magni est*, *It requires great abilities*. *Cujusvis hominis est errare*, *Any man may err*. *Meum est*, *It is my business*. *Extremæ est dementia*, *It is the height of madness*. *Sub ditionis facere*, *To reduce to subjection; to bring under his dominion*.

<sup>k</sup> *Satagere* (to be doing enough); 'to have one's hands full.'

<sup>l</sup> When *memini* and *recolector* signify 'to make mention of,' *memini* takes the *gen.*, or *ablat.* with *de*; *recolector*, the *acc.*—*Memini* seldom takes the *acc.* of a person, except in the sense of *remembering him as a contemporary*. (Z.)

- (b) *Tempori cedere semper sapientis est habitum*, It has always been held a wise thing to yield to the times.
- (c) *Proditionis accusare*, To accuse of treachery. *De pecuniis repetundis damnari*, To be condemned for extortion.
- (d) *Capitis* (or *capite*) *damnari*, To be capitally condemned (or, condemned to death). *Ad bestias condemnare*, To condemn to the wild beasts.
- (e) *Misereri omnium*, To pity all. *Meminisse præteritorum*, To remember past events: *meminisse beneficia*, To remember kindnesses. *Officii sui commonēre*, To remind (a man) of his duty. *Dissensionum oblivisci*, To forget disagreements.
- (f) *Si id me accusas*, If you accuse me of that. (So, *id me admonuit*.)

Vocabulary 28.

To accuse, accusare<sup>m</sup>.  
 To charge falsely; to get up a charge against, insimulare<sup>n</sup>; or insimulare falso.  
 To prosecute, postulare<sup>o</sup>.  
 To acquit, absolvere, solv-, solūt-.  
 To remember, meminisse P, recordari q, also, to make mention of.  
 To forget, oblivisci, oblit-.  
 To remind; put in mind of, admōnēre, commonēre.  
 To pity, miserēri<sup>r</sup>, miserītus, misertus: miserescere  
 To condemn, damnare<sup>s</sup>, condemnare.  
 An Athenian, Atheniensis, 162, e.  
 Socrates, Socrātes, is.  
 Barbarian, barbarus.  
 To live for the day, forgetful, that is, of the morrow, in diem vivere.

It is agreed upon; it is an allowed fact, 201  
 constat<sup>t</sup>.  
 Superstition, superstitio.  
 Feeble, imbēcillus.  
 To disturb; agitate, perturbare.  
 Constancy; firmness of mind, constantia.  
 To persist, perseverare.  
 Error, error, ōris, m.  
 Treachery, proditio, onis, f.  
 Sedition, seditio, onis, f.  
 A Christian, Christianus.  
 Injury, injuria.  
 Adversity, res adversæ.  
 To condemn to death, capitis damnare.  
 To acquit of a capital charge, capitis absolvere.  
 Religion, religio, onis, f.

<sup>m</sup> Incusare is 'to accuse,' but not in a court of justice.

<sup>n</sup> Properly, 'to make a thing seem likely against a man:' it does not always imply that the charge is false.

<sup>o</sup> Literally, 'to demand,' i. e. for punishment.

<sup>p</sup> With tenses derived from the perf. See *odi*, 185, x. *Imperat. memento; pl. mementōte*.

<sup>q</sup> *Meminisse* is, 'to retain in my recollection,' 'to remember:' *reminisci* is, 'to recall a thing to mind,' 'to recollect:' *recordari* is, 'to recall a thing to mind, and dwell upon the recollection of it.' (D.)

<sup>r</sup> *Miserari* governs the acc. *Miserari* is, 'to show compassion,' *misereri*, 'to feel compassion,' as an act of free will, implying a generous mind, and thereby distinguished from *miseret me tui* (I am miserable on your account), which carries with it the portion of an irresistible feeling. (D.)

<sup>s</sup> *Damnare aliquem voti* (or *votorum*), is, to condemn a man to pay his vow (or vows) by granting his prayers. Also, *damnare votis*.

<sup>t</sup> Literally, it stands together as a consistent truth.



*Exercise 29.*

- 202 1. The Athenians (falsely) charged Socrates with impiety, *and condemned him to death*. 2. *It is for barbarians* to live for the day (only). 3. It is an allowed fact, that superstition *is the mark of* a feeble mind. 4. *It requires* great constancy not to be disturbed in adversity. 5. *It is characteristic of* a fool persist in error. 6. *It is your business* to obey the laws of your country. 7. *It is not every man, who can* leave life with an even mind. 8. *It was owing to you,* that he did not accuse Balbus of treachery. 9. He promises<sup>3</sup> to prosecute Dolabella for extortion. 10. He was condemned to death by Augustus. 11. Caius was acquitted of sedition by Augustus. 12. Do not forget benefits. 13. It is the duty of a Christian to pity the poor. 14. It cannot be denied that (86) it is the duty of a Christian to pity the poor. 15. I fear, that he will not<sup>4</sup> easily forget the injury. 16. I fear, that he will remember the injury. 17. Did you not admonish me of that (*f*)? 18. Adversity puts us in mind of religion. 19. It cannot be denied, *that* he has been *acquitted of the capital charge*.

---

 § 29. THE GENITIVE (*continued*). IMPERSONAL VERBS.

- 203 (a) With *interest* and *refert* (it *concerns* or *is important*);
- 1) The thing that is of importance may be either (α) an *infinitive* (*with* or *without* acc.) or (β) a *neuter pronoun* (*hoc, id, illud, quod*), or a clause introduced either (γ) by an *interrogative*, or (δ) by *ut, nē*.
  - 2) The *person to whom it is of importance* is put in the *gen.* with *interest* (not with *refert*); but a *possessive pronoun* in the *ablative feminine*; *meā, tuā, eūā, nostrā, vestrā*<sup>u</sup>, &c.
  - 3) The *degree of importance* is expressed either by the *gen.* of *price* (*magni, tanti, pluris*), or by an *adverb* or *neut. adj.* (*magnopere, vehementer, magis, parum: multum, plus, nimium, quantum, &c.*)
  - 4) The thing with *reference* to which it is of importance is sometimes governed by *ad*.

These impersonals are construed in various ways: *it is of importance* or *consequence*; it *signifies, matters, concerns* any body, &c.

---

<sup>u</sup> Krüger says, *refert* is allied to the phrase *e re est* = *it belongs to the matter; is conducive to it*: e. g. *ex tuā re non est, ut ego emoriar*. Plaut. Pseud. 1, 3, 102 (it is not for your advantage).—So also without *e*, as: ‘*hæc tu eadem si confiteri vis, tuā re feceris*,’ Plaut. Capt. 2, 2, 46 (= for your advantage). Hence *refert* = *συνφέρει*, *conducit*.—Döderlein says: *refert* = *rei fert*, for *ad rem fert* or *confert*. Prof. Key considers *meā, tuā, &c.*, to have arisen from the accusatives *meam, tuam, &c.* So that ‘*meā refert*’ = *meam rem fert*.

(b) These impersonals, *puđet, piget, pœnitet, tædet, miseret*, take an **204 accusative** of the *person feeling*, a genitive of what *causes* the feeling.

*What causes the feeling* may also be a *verb* (in the *infinitive*, or in an *indicative* **205 clause** with *quod*, or a *subjunctive* one with an *interrogative* word).

(a) *Intelligo, quanti reipublicæ intersit omnes copias convenire*, **206**

*I am aware* of what importance it is to the republic, *that all our forces should assemble.*

*Interest omnium recte facere*, It is the interest of all *to do right.*

*Quid nostrā refert?* *Of what importance is it to us?* (or, *What does it signify to us?*)

*Magni interest ad laudem civitatis, &c.,* *It is of great importance to the credit of the state, &c.*

*Magni interest, quos quisque audiat quotidie,* *It is of great consequence, whom a man hears every day.*

*Illud meā magni interest, te ut videam,* *It is of great consequence, that I should see you.*

*Vestrā interest, commilitones, nē imperatorem pessimi faciant,* *It is of importance to you, my comrades, that the worst sort should not elect an emperor.*

(b) *Ignavum pœnitebit aliquando ignaviæ,* *The slothful man will one day repent of his sloth.*

*Me non solum piget stultitiæ meæ, sed etiam puđet,* *I am not only sorry for my folly, but also ashamed of it.* *Tædet me vitæ,* *I am weary of my life.* *Tædet eadem audire milites,* *The soldiers are tired of hearing the same thing.* *Tui me miseret, mei piget,* *I pity you; I am vexed at myself.*

Vocabulary 28\*.

*It concerns; is of importance, or consequence; is the interest of, interest, refert; the latter very rarely when a person is expressed, unless by a pronoun; it occurs principally in quid refert? what does it signify? what difference does it make? and nihil refert, it is of no consequence, or makes no difference.*

*I am sorry for; vexed at, piget me.* **207**

*I repent; am discontented or dissatisfied with, pœnitet me.*

*I am ashamed of, puđet me.*

*I pity, miseret me. See 201, r.*

*I am disgusted at; am weary, or tired of, tædet me: for perf. pertassum est.*

*Like; equal to; as good as, instar, an old subst. signifying a model or image; and, as such, followed by the gen. It should only be used of equality in magnitude, real or figurative. Z.*

*On account of, ergo governing and following the gen. It is the Greek ἐργω.*

*To present, donare.*

*Crown, cōrōna.*

*Golden, aureus.*

Exercise 30.

[What are the various ways of translating 'whether—or' ?]

1. What difference does it make to Caius, whether he drinks wine **208** or water? 2. It makes a great difference to me, why he did this.

3. It makes a great difference to us, whether death is a perpetual sleep or the beginning of another life. 4. I will strive, that no one<sup>14</sup> may be dissatisfied with the peace. 5. It is of great importance to me, that Caius should<sup>15</sup> be informed of my design. 6. I will strive, that it may be your interest to finish the business. 7. *It is your business* to strive, that no one may be dissatisfied with the peace. 8. We pity those men, who have been accused of treason *in their absence*. 9. I will strive, that no one may recollect my error. 10. I am ashamed of, and vexed at, my levity<sup>16</sup> (p. 7. 15, a). 11. I will strive, that no one may be ashamed of me. 12. It is your interest, that they should *not* condemn me to death. 13. It is the interest of all, that the good and wise should *not* be banished. 14. Plato is to me equal to (*them*) all. 15. That (*ille*) one<sup>17</sup> day was to Cicero equal to an immortality. 16. He was presented (*perf.*) with a golden crown on account of his virtue<sup>18</sup>.

(For the Genitive of *price* see under the Ablative.)

### § 30. THE DATIVE. (DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.)

- 209 Adjectives which signify *advantage, likeness, agreeableness, usefulness, fitness, facility, &c.* (with their *opposites*) govern the *dative*. So also those that mean *known* or *unknown* (*to*).
- 210 But of such adjectives, several take a genitive without any essential difference of meaning.
- 211 (1) Many of these take different constructions: *utilis ad rem* (for a particular purpose); *benevólus erga aliquem*; *aliénus alicujus rei*, ab *aliquá re*, and *alicujus*. *Proprius alicujus*. *Amicus, familiaris, inimicus*, and (chiefly in later writers) *súperstítis* are also treated like substantives, and so take the genitive or a possessive pronoun. With *aptus, idoneus*, a *person* usually takes the *dative*; a *thing*, the accusative with *ad*. *Accommodatus* mostly *dat.*, unless followed by *gerund* (*ad persuadendum*).
- (2) *Æqualis, affinis, vicinus, finítimus, propinquus*, are also treated exactly as *substantives*, and so take *gen.* or a possessive pronoun (*meus vicinus, &c.*).
- (3) With *similis, dissimilis*, the *gen.* expresses *real, essential likeness in nature, character, &c.*; the *dat.* is used chiefly of *similarity in outward appearance*.
- (4) *Propior, nearer, proximus, nearest*, take *dat.*, but sometimes the *accus.*

#### Vocabulary 29.

(Adjectives governing the dative.)

- 212 *Grateful*, both actively and passively; | *Liable; subject; exposed to, obnoxius.*  
*acceptable, agreeable, gratus* v. | *Common, commúnis.*

v *Suavis* and *dulcis* are 'sweet'; the former especially sweet to the sense of *smelling*, the latter to that of *taste*; both being used *generally* and *figuratively*, like our 'sweet.'

*Juundus*, that which directly *causes joy and delight*. *Gratus*, that which is

(Some that take *gen.* or *dat.*)

*Like, similis*<sup>w</sup>, *superl. simillimus*.

*Unlike, dissimilis*,

*Equal, par*<sup>x</sup>.

*Peculiar to, proprius*.

*Foreign to; averse to; inconsistent with, alienus*<sup>y</sup>.

*Friendly; a friend, amicus*.

*Unfriendly; an enemy, inimicus*<sup>a</sup>.

*Allied to;—of a fault; chargeable with, affinis*<sup>a</sup>.

*Surviving, superstēs*<sup>b</sup>, *Itis*, used substantively, *a survivor*.

(The following are often followed by 'ad' to express a *purpose* or *object*, for which, &c.)

*Born, nātus; partep. of nascor*.

*Convenient; of character, obliging, commōdus*<sup>c</sup>.

*Inconvenient; unsuitable, incommodus*.

*Fit, aptus*.

*Suitable; serviceable, idoneus*<sup>d</sup>.

*Fitted; adapted, accommodatus*.

*Useful; expedient; good, utilis*.

*Useless, inutilis*.

*Pronc, proclivis*.

*grateful* or *acceptable*, from any cause. *Amēnus*, agreeable or delightful to the sight, though extended to other things by later writers.

*Dulcīa delectant gustantem; suavia odore:*

*Jucunda exhilarant animum, sed grata probantur*

*A gratis: quæ visa placent loca, amēna vocamus.*

*Döderlein* thinks that *amēnum* is not 'quod amorem præstat,' but is a syncope for *animēnum*, as *Camēnus* for *Canimēnus*, and is equivalent to 'animo laxando idoneus.'

<sup>w</sup> *Similis* takes *gen.* of internal, *dat.* of external resemblance (See 211, 3). This does not hold without exception: but to express, *like me, him*, &c. (i. e. *equal* to) the *gen.* should be used:

*Ille tui similis, mores qui servat eosdem;*

*Ille tibi similis, faciem qui servat eandem.*

*Cicero* always has *similis veri*, not *vero*.

<sup>x</sup> *Similis* expresses mere *resemblance*: *æqualis* denotes mutual and absolute equality: *par*, mutual congruity, proportionate equality. (C.)

<sup>y</sup> *Alienus* also governs the *abl.*, and especially with *ab* (211, 1). 'In the sense of *disinclined, hostile*, the prep. is rarely wanting.' (Z.)

<sup>a</sup> *Hostis*, properly a *stranger*; hence a *public enemy* (an enemy to my country, not necessarily to me personally). *Inimicus*, one who is an enemy to me personally. *Amicus, inimicus*, as *adjectives*, may be compared; and *us* such generally take the *dat.*

<sup>a</sup> Also to be *implicated* or *concerned* (in a conspiracy, &c.); an *object* (of suspicion).

<sup>b</sup> *Æqualis* and *superstes* have usually a *dat.*; but the former more commonly a *gen.*, when it signifies a 'contemporary.' (Z.)

<sup>c</sup> *Commodus* (from *con, modus*), commensurate with.

<sup>d</sup> *Idoneus* expresses a *natural fitness* actually existing, but that requires to be observed, made available, or (if spoken of a person) called forth.

*Aptus* (= *convenienter junctus*) expresses *actual fitness now existing*. In use, the two words may be thus distinguished.

(1) *Idoneus* necessarily requires a *purpose* to be mentioned or implied. *Aptus* does not necessarily require the mention of a purpose, but may express what is *fit* generally.

(2) *Idoneus* may express a person's fitness to *suffer*, to be acted upon. *Aptus* expresses a fitness or readiness to *act*.

(3) *Idoneus*, spoken of a person, describes a *fitness* that may never be observed or called forth: *aptus*, a fitness actually existing; that has been called forth, and is ready to act.

[*Idoneus* from *ideo*, as *ultroneus* from *ultra*. (D.)]

*Innocent*, innocens.  
*Word*, verbum.  
*Fault*, culpa.

*Lust*, libido, inis, f.  
*Age* = time of life, setas, atia.

(*Eng.*) Common to kings and peasants (or, to kings with peasants).

(*Lat.*) Common to kings with peasants.

### Exercise 31.

[Should *invenire* or *reperire* be used for finding what has been sought?  
 (177, o.)]

- 213 1. It cannot be doubted, *that* (we) men are born for virtue. 2. It cannot be denied, *that* it is very inconsistent' with your character to lie. 3. It is easy to an innocent man to find words. 4. I fear, *that* you will *not* find words. 5. It cannot be denied, that death is common to every age. 6. His father warned him not to think himself born for glory. 7. I fear, that these things are not<sup>13</sup> useful for that purpose (*res*). 8. Don't you understand, to how many dangers we are exposed? 9. I *fear*, that these things will not be agreeable to the rich. 10. We all love (those who are) like ourselves<sup>d</sup>. 11. Our own dangers are nearer to us (p. 7. 15, *a*) than those<sup>11</sup> of others. 12. He says, that he is not<sup>2</sup> chargeable with this fault. 13. It cannot be denied, that he was of a character very averse from impiety (p. 7. 14). 14. There is no one, but<sup>9</sup> thinks it inconsistent with your character to keep your word. 15. I wished to be like Balbus (149, *b*). 16. You, such is your temperance<sup>2</sup>, are the enemy of (all) lusts' (*gen.*). 17. I will strive to discover, what<sup>10</sup> is expedient for the whole of Greece. 18. I *fear* that these (arguments) are *not* fit for the times. 19. Are you exposed to these or greater dangers? 20. What you' said, is of no consequence.

### Exercise 32.

[What is the Lat. for *delightful to the eyes*?]

- 214 1. Are *not* your own dangers nearer to you than those of others? 2. It cannot be denied, *that* he is (a person) of a very obliging character. 3. Many persons say, that their own dangers are nearer to them than those<sup>11</sup> of others. 4. They *say*, that they are *not* prone to superstition. 5. Might he<sup>17</sup> not have spent<sup>19</sup> a more honorable life? 6. *It was owing to you*, that our life was not taken away. 7. Is philosophy' the best teacher of morals and discipline? [No.] 8. He used to say, that Athens was the inventor of all branches-of-learning. 2. *It was owing to you*, that I did not turn out an orator.

<sup>d</sup> Nostrī, *gen. pl.*

10. I had rather be like Cato<sup>e</sup> than Pompey. 11. Even Balbus is not<sup>f</sup> averse to ambition. 12. It cannot be denied, that (we) have need of a mind averse from superstition. 13. Have we done more good or evil? 14. This is common to me *and* you. 15. There is no one *but* understands, that these things are common to the rich man *and* the poor man. 16. I *cannot but*<sup>18</sup> take these things in good part<sup>35</sup>. 17. I will strive, that nobody<sup>14</sup> may pity me<sup>g</sup>. 18. Is wisdom peculiar to you? [No.] 19. I *fear*, the boy will *not* be the survivor of his father. 20. There is no doubt, that we are come<sup>12</sup> into a very *delightful* place.

---

§ 31. THE DATIVE (*continued*).

All verbs may be followed by a *dative* of the thing or person *to*, 215 *for*, or *against* which any thing is done. Hence—

The dative follows verbs that signify *advantage* or *disadvantage*; 216 verbs of *comparing*; of *giving* and *restoring*; of *promising* and *paying*; of *commanding* and *telling*; of *trusting* and *entrusting*; of *persuading*; of *complying with* and *opposing*; of *threatening* and *being angry*, &c.

~~215~~ Of these verbs many are *transitive*, and govern the *acc.* 217

(a) With these verbs the *acc.* expresses the *immediate*, the *dat.* the *remoter* object of the verb.

(a) Verbs of *comparing* are also followed by the *prepositions*, *cum*, *inter*, and 218 sometimes *ad*.

(b) Of verbs that signify advantage and disadvantage, *juro*, *lædo*, *delecto*, and *offendo* govern the *acc.*

(c) Of verbs that signify *command*<sup>h</sup>, *rego* and *guberno* govern the *acc.*, *tempero* 219 and *moderor* the *acc.* or *dat.*

*Tempero* and *moderor* with the *dat.* of a thing, are 'to moderate,' 220 'restrain within proper limits:' with the *dat.* of a person, 'to spare:' in the *acc.* 'to direct' or 'govern.' *Temperare ab* aliquâ re = 'to abstain from:' and hence 'to spare,' *temperare a sociis*, a *sacris* (*Liv.*).

(a) Confer *nostram longissimam ætatem cum æternitate*, *Compare* 221 *our longest life with eternity.*

---

<sup>e</sup> Begin with 'Catonis' and go on with 'than Pompey.'

<sup>f</sup> 'Not even Balbus is.'

<sup>g</sup> *Miseret*, not *misereri*. See 201, r.

<sup>h</sup> *Jubeo* takes *acc.* with *infn.* It may be followed by 'ut' with *subj.* if used absolutely, without the mention of a person. (Z.)

Hominem cum homine comparat, *He compares man with man.*

Vitam utriusque inter se conferte, *Compare the lives of both of them together.*

(b) Libris me delecto, *I amuse myself with books.* Offendit neminem, *He offends nobody.* Hæc lædunt oculum, *These things hurt the eye.* Fortuna fortes ad-juvat, *Fortune helps the bold.*

(c) Moderari animo, *To restrain your feeling (or feelings).* Temperare sibi, *To restrain oneself.* Temperare ab injuriâ, *To abstain from (committing) injury.*

### Vocabulary 30.

(Verbs governing the dat., but followed by no preposition in English.)

222 Advise, suadere, suas.<sup>1</sup>

Believe, credere, credit-; also to entrust, with acc. of what is entrusted.

Command, imperare.

Please, placere, placu-, placit-.

Displease, displicere.

Envy, grudge, invidere, vid-, vis-. It may also have acc. of the thing grudged.

Help; aid, assist, auxiliari; subvenire,

vên-, vent-; succurrere, curr-, curs-; opitulari. Sublevare and juvare take the acc.<sup>k</sup>

Heal; cure, mederi<sup>l</sup>.

Hurt, nocere, nocu-, nocit-.

Indulge, indulgere, induls-, indult-.

Favour, favere, fav-, faut-.

Marry, of a female, nubere<sup>m</sup>, nups-, nupt-, properly to veil.

<sup>1</sup> Monere (properly, to make a man think of something. D.) calls his attention to something from which he is to draw an inference for himself by his own reason and good sense. Hortari appeals to his will; suadere, to his understanding.

Suadere is to attempt to persuade: persuadere is to advise effectually; to persuade.

<sup>k</sup> Auxiliari (to make oneself a man's auxilium), to increase a person's strength; to help.

Juvare (allied to juvenis; properly to make youthful, powerful, active; hence) to help (one who is striving. D.); to facilitate the accomplishment of a purpose; support.

Opitulari (from opes), to aid with one's means, credit, resources, a person who is in great need or peril, from which he has no power to deliver himself.

Subvenire (to come-under, i. e. to support); to come to the assistance of a person in difficulty or danger.

Succurrere, to run to the assistance of; which implies a more pressing danger; to succour.

Sublevare, to raise a man up; to hold him up; to support:—figuratively, to alleviate, mitigate, lighten. (R.)

Adjuro and auxiliari do not necessarily imply that the person assisted needed assistance: the other verbs do. Adjutare (to help forward) often means to increase; enhance. (C.)

<sup>l</sup> Mederi (to administer a remedy with good effect) relates rather to the sick person, or to the operation of the physician; sanare, to the disease, or to the operation of the medicine. (D.)

<sup>m</sup> To be married is nuptam esse; and we also find, nuptam esse cum aliquo.

*Obey*, pārere, of the habit; obēdire [= ob-audire], of particular acts.  
*Oppose*, repugnare.  
*Pardon*, ignoscere, ignōv-.  
*Persuade*, persuadere, suas-.  
*Resist*, resistere, resist-.  
*Spare*, parcere, pēperc-.  
*Threaten*, minari, with acc. of the thing threatened.

*To compare*, comparare; conferre<sup>n</sup>, tūl-, lāt-.  
*To be angry with*, irasci, iratus: succensere, of deep lasting resentment; both govern dat.  
*To injure*; hurt, lædere, læs-, læs-; acc.  
*To delight*; amuse, delectare, acc.  
*To offend*, offendere, fend-, fens-; acc.

'He threatens me with death' should be  
 In Latin, 'threatens death to me.'

*Exercise 33.*

[Which interrog. particle is to be used when the answer would be 'no?']

1. Do not hurt another. 2. It is not every man, who can<sup>39</sup> 223 command his mind. 3. Is it easy to restrain (one's) mind? 4. It is the duty of a Christian to leave nothing undone, that<sup>18</sup> he may learn to govern his mind'. 5. Ought (you) not to obey the laws? 6. We ought to be angry<sup>o</sup> with vices', not with men. 7. He promised to abstain from<sup>3</sup> injury. 8. Venus married Vulcan (*Vulcanus*). 9. It is the *duty* of a Christian to succour the miserable. 10. They promised to abstain from (committing any) injury. 11. I will ask him, whether he can cure my head. 12. I have left nothing undone<sup>18</sup>, that I might cure my head. 13. It is strange that you should favour me. 14. Do you envy (pl.) me *or* Balbus? 15. I almost think<sup>25</sup>, that I have opposed nature in vain. 16. It shows<sup>39</sup> a great mind to spare the conquered. 17. I warned my son to envy nobody<sup>14</sup>. 18. Compare this peace with that war. 19. I have *unwillingly* offended Caius. 20. He threatens me with death every day. 21. Do not grudge me my glory. 22. There are some who<sup>189</sup> grudge me my glory. 23. There are some, who amuse themselves with these things.

§ 32. THE DATIVE (*continued*).

*Sum* with its compounds, except *possum*, is followed by the *dative*. 224  
 (The dat. after *sum* denotes the person or thing for *which* something exists.)

<sup>n</sup> *Conferre* (to bring together), *contendere* (to stretch together), *componere* (to place together), all express the bringing of things into *justa-position* for the sake of instituting a comparison between them. From their meaning, one should say that *conferre* is to compare things, the difference of which will be obvious, as soon as they are brought together; *contendere*, to institute a *close comparison*. Ramshorn says, *comparare* is to compare things that are *exactly similar*, and form, as it were, a *pair* (*par*). But Cicero has; 'conferre pugnantis, comparare contraria.'

<sup>o</sup> *Succensere*, because the anger is lasting.



- 225 Verbs compounded with prepositions, or with the adverbs *bene, satis, male*, generally govern the *dative*, but with many exceptions.  
 (a) *Most* of the verbs compounded with *ad, in, inter, ob, præ, sub, con*, govern the *dat.*  
 (β) *Many* of those compounded with *ab, ante, de, e, post, pro, re, super*, govern the *dat.*
- 226 Some are *transitive*, and govern the accusative only; some govern the *dative* or the *accusative* with no difference of meaning; and very many of them may be followed by the *prepositions*<sup>p</sup> they are compounded with.

### Vocabulary 31.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>227 <i>To be absent, abesse.</i><br/> <i>To be present, adesse</i><sup>q</sup>; hence, <i>to stand by.</i><br/> <i>To be engaged in, interesse.</i><br/> <i>To be in the way; to be prejudicial to, obesse.</i><br/> <i>To be wanting; fail, deesse</i><sup>r</sup>.<br/> <i>To be before, or at the head of; to command, præesse.</i><br/> <i>Eng.</i> To prefer death to slavery.<br/> <i>Lat.</i> { To reckon slavery after death (<i>posthabere servitūtem mortī</i>).<br/>             { Or, as the English.</p> | <p><i>To profit; to do good to; to be advantageous to, prodessē</i><sup>s</sup>.<br/> <i>To survive, superesse.</i><br/> <i>To oppose, obstare, obstīt.</i><br/> <i>To satisfy, satisficere, fēc-, fact-.</i><br/> <i>To confer benefits on, beneficere.</i><br/> <i>To prefer, antepōnere, pōsu-, pōsīt-,</i><br/> <i>To reckon one thing after, i. e. as inferior to another, posthābēre.</i></p> |
|--|---|

### Exercise 34.

[Obs. 'Better,' when it means, 'preferable,' 'more satisfactory,' should be translated by *satius*.]

- 228 1. It is wise<sup>39</sup> to prefer virtue to all things (*Transl. both ways*).  
 2. He says, that he has done good to very many'. 3. He says, that he was *not* engaged in the battle. 4. It is your business to stand by your friends. 5. *It is not every one, who can satisfy the wise.*

<sup>p</sup> This is especially the case when the object is no personal circumstance, or cannot well be conceived as such; for then the preposition merely expresses a local relation. (G.)

<sup>q</sup> *Præsens* is used as the *participle* of *adesse*. *Præsentem esse* expresses an immediate *audible* or *visible* presence; *adesse*, presence *generally*, within some sphere belonging to us. An expected guest *adest*, when he is *within our walls*; but to be *præsens*, he must be in the *same room* with ourselves. *Adesse* relates to a *person* or *thing* to which one is near; *interesse*, to an *action* that one is assisting at. (D.)

<sup>r</sup> *Abesse* is simply *to be absent* or *away; not to be there*.

*Deesse* is spoken of a thing that is *wanting*, the *presence* of it being missed, because necessary to the *completeness* of a thing.

*Deficere* is the *inchoative* of *deesse*, as *proficere* to *prodessē*. (D.)

<sup>s</sup> *Prodessē* drops the *d* before those parts of *sum* that begin with a consonant.

6. It is the *duty* of a judge to assist (*subvenio*) an innocent man. 7. He says, that he will not <sup>t</sup> be wanting to his friends. 8. Who commands the army? 9. I will ask, who commands the army. 10. I warned the boy to prefer nothing <sup>14</sup> to honorable conduct. 11. *How does it happen*, that all of you <sup>10</sup> prefer death to slavery? 12. It is *better* to do good even to the bad, than to be wanting to the good. 13. All of us <sup>10</sup> have been engaged in many battles. 14. To *some* courage is wanting, to *others* opportunity <sup>u</sup>. 15. He promised, that he would not be wanting either <sup>v</sup> to the time or to the opportunity. 16. Sometimes (402) fortune opposes our designs. 17. There were some, who <sup>100</sup> preferred death to slavery.

Vocabulary 32.

(Verbs that take the *dat.* or *acc.* without difference of meaning.)

229

To flatter; fawn upon, adulari: *acc.* in Cic. and Cæs.  
 Lie near; border on, adjacere.  
 Attend to; consider, attendere, tend-; *acc.* in Cicero, or with *ad*.  
 Excel; surpass; am superior to, antecellere, cellu-, very rare; præstare <sup>w</sup>, præstit-: *dat.* best with antecellere.  
 Fail, deficere <sup>x</sup>, féc-, fect-: to revolt from, a, ab; to, *ad*. Also, with *acc.* to desert.  
 To despair of, despérare; also with *de*, which governs the *abl.*: hence desperatus, given over.  
 To make sport of; make merry with;

mock, illudere, lûs-: also followed by *in*, with *acc.* or *abl.*  
 Fall upon; seize upon, of carea, &c. assailing the mind, incessere <sup>y</sup>, cessiv- and cess-.  
 Wait for, præstolari <sup>z</sup>.  
 Rival; emulate, æmulari <sup>a</sup>.  
 Accompany, comitari.  
 To show oneself brave, &c., præbere or præstare se fortem: the latter implying action; the former not necessarily so: præbere se, to show oneself; præstare se, to prove oneself.  
 Grief, dñlor.  
 Tuscan, Tuscus.  
 Territory, ðger, gri.

Exercise 35.

1. I will advise the boy to emulate the virtues of his father. 230  
 2. Attend to what <sup>b</sup> (*pl.*) will be said. 3. Let us not flatter the powerful. 4. The Tuscan territory borders on the Roman (terri-

<sup>t</sup> See note on the second of the Differences of Idiom.

<sup>u</sup> Let the verb be the last word in the sentence.

<sup>v</sup> Translate as if it were, 'would be wanting neither to the time nor' &c.

<sup>w</sup> So also the other verbs of going before, or surpassing: ante- or præ- cedere, -currere, -venire, -vertere, &c. (*præcedere* has only the *acc.* in prose. Z.)

<sup>x</sup> See 227, r.

<sup>y</sup> So also *invadere*.

<sup>z</sup> *Expectare* expresses merely a looking for the future in general; *opperiri*, to be keeping oneself in readiness for an occurrence; *præstolari*, to be in readiness to perform a service. Döderlein.

<sup>a</sup> *Æmulor* is sometimes said to govern the *dat.* in the sense of to envy; it does not however express simple envy, but the endeavour to equal or surpass a person, which may, or may not, be caused by envy.

<sup>b</sup> 'What' is here *rel.* (= those things, which.)

tory). 5. Did not words fail you? 6. Are the Veientes going to revolt from the Romans? [No.] 7. *I almost think*, that the Lydians (*Lydi*) are going to revolt from king Cyrus. 8. Does it show<sup>20</sup> a brave mind to despair of one's (*suis*) fortunes? 9. Grief seized upon the whole (*omnis*) army. 10. It was owing to you<sup>22</sup>, that the treaty between the cities of Rome and Lavinium was not renewed. 11. Do not make sport of us. 12. I cannot but<sup>18</sup> mock you. 13. She never beheld Caius without<sup>16</sup> making merry with his folly. 14. I will ask Balbus, whom he is waiting for. 15. I will exhort the boy to prove himself mindful of the kindness. 16. There were *some* who mocked the boy. 17. There are *some* who despair of their fortunes.

§ 33. THE DATIVE (*continued*). VERBS WITH TWO CONSTRUCTIONS.

- 231 (a) *Dono*<sup>c</sup>, *circumdo*, and several other verbs, take either a *dative* of the *person* and an *accusative* of the *thing*; or an *accusative* of the *person* and an *ablative* of the *thing*.

Verbs of *fearing* take a *dat.* of the person for whom one fears.

- 232 (a) *Circumdat urbem muro*; or, *circumdat murum urbi*, *He surrounds the city with a wall.*

*Ciceroni immortalitatem* donavit; or, *Ciceronem immortalitate* donavit, (The Roman people) *conferred immortality on Cicero.*

*Vocabulary 33.*

- 233 (Verbs that take *dat.* of *person* with *acc.* of *thing*; or, *acc.* of *person* with *abl.* of *thing*.)

*Besprinkle*; *bespatter*, *adspergere*<sup>d</sup>, *sper-*

*Surround*, *circumdare*, *déd-*, *dät-*.

*Clothe oneself with*; *put on*, *induere*, *indu-*, *indüt-*.

*Strip off*, *exuere*, *exu-*, *exüt-*: *acc.* of *person*, *abl.* of *thing*. *With acc.* only 'to throw off'; 'put off,' 'divest oneself of.'

*To cut off*; *prevent*, *obstruct*, *intercludere*, *clüs-*.

(Verbs with a different construction in different meanings.)

*Cävère*, *cäv-*, *caut-*, *to beware* (*cävère aliquem*<sup>e</sup>, *to guard against*; *be on one's guard against*; *cävère alicui*, *to protect a man*, by precautionary measures: *cävère* or *sibi cävère*, *to be on one's guard*).

*Consültere*, *sulu-*, *sult-* (*consulere aliquem*, *to consult*: *consulere alicui*, *to consult for a person*; *to consult his interests*: *consulere in aliquem*, *to proceed or take measures against a man*).

*Cüperere*, *cupiv-* (*cupere*<sup>e</sup> *alicui*, *to wish well to*).

*Prospicere patriæ* } *to provide for the*  
*Providere patriæ* } *interest of one's*  
                                  } *country.*

*Impönere*, *to lay upon* (*aliquid alicui*): *with dat.* only, 'to impose upon.'

*Incumbere rei*, *to lean upon*: *incumbere in rem*, *to apply oneself vigorously*; *to devote oneself to.*

<sup>c</sup> *So*, *impertire* or *impertiri*.

<sup>e</sup> *Also cävère ab aliquo* or *ab aliquá re.*

<sup>e</sup> *So*, *bene*, *male*, &c. *velle alicui.*

<sup>d</sup> *So*, *inspergere.*

*Cruelly, crudeliter.*

*Almost, nearly, prope; pene or pæne.*

*Altar, āra.*

*Baggage, impedimenta, pl.: properly, hindrances.*

*A camp, castra, pl.*

*A mound, agger, ěris.*

*A ditch, fossa.*

*To prepare, p̄rare.*

*The state, respublica; G. reipublicæ, &c. declined as a substantive res, with adj. publica in agreement.*

*To take a camp, &c., exuere: i. e. to strip the enemy, acc.; of their camp, abl.*

*Humanity; human feeling, humanitas. Flight, fuga.*

*A wall, murus, i, is the general term: mœnia, from munire, is the wall of a city for protection against enemies: paries, the wall of a building, allied to pars, portio, &c.: maceria, allied to margo, the wall of an enclosure, e. g. of a garden or vineyard. D.*

*A stone wall, murus lapideus.*

§ 34. In English, substantives standing before and spoken of other substantives, 234 are used *adjectively*, and must be translated into Latin by adjectives.

*Exercise 36.*

1. I warned Caius, whom to guard (*subj.*) against. 2. Tarquinius Priscus was preparing to surround the city with a stone wall. 3. There is no one *who is not* aware, that Cicero is watching over the state. 4. He *promised* to consult<sup>3</sup> my interests. 5. He imposed on his own (men), that<sup>55</sup> he might the more easily impose on the Gauls. 6. They have proceeded cruelly against Caius. 7. It remains, that (*ut*) we should consult our own interests. 8. That most base (person) has bespattered me with his praises. 9. I have persuaded Caius to *devote himself* to the state. 10. The Romans have taken the camp of the Gauls. 11. He *hopes* to take the baggage of the Gauls. 12. Do not divest yourself of your human-feeling'. 13. Cæsar surrounded his camp with a mound and ditch. 14. I pity the old man (who is) now almost given-over. 15. I will *warn* Balbus *not* to throw off his human-feeling. 16. Consult for yourselves: provide for the interests of your country. 17. Cæsar had cut off the flight of the Gauls. 18. He protects others extremely well.

§ 34. VERBS THAT TAKE A SECOND DATIVE.

*Sum*, with several other verbs, may govern *two* datives. 236

(*a, b*) The second dative expresses the *purpose* or some similar notion. This is the common construction for expressing the purpose for which a man *comes* or *sends* to another.

(*c*) A second dative often stands after *sum*, where *we* should use 237 the nominative. Such verbs as '*proves*,' '*serves*,' &c., may often be translated by *sum* with the *dative*; and an adjective after '*to be*,' may often be translated into Latin by the *dat.* of a substantive.

- 238 (d) The English verb 'have' may often be translated by *sum* with a dative †.

(Eng.) I have a hat.

(Lat.) There is a hat to me.

I have two hats.

There are two hats to me.

It is obvious that the *acc.* after 'have' will be the *nom.* before 'to be;' the *nom.* before 'have,' the *dat.* after 'to be.'

- 239 (e) In 'est mihi nomen,' the name is either in the *nom.*, the *dat.*, or (less commonly) the *gen.*

The construction with the *dat.* is even more common (in the case of *Roman* names) than the regular construction with the *nom.* It is an instance of *attraction*, the name being attracted into the case of *mihī*. (K.)

- 240 (f) The dative of a personal pronoun is often used to point out, in an animated way, the interest of the speaker, or the person addressed, in what is said.

- 241 (a) Pausanias, rex Lacedæmoniorum, venit Atticis auxilio, Pausanias, king of the Lacedæmonians, came to the assistance of the Athenians.

(b) Pericles agros suos dono reipublicæ dedit, Pericles gave his estates as a present to the state.

(c) Magno malo est hominibus avaritia, Avarice is a great evil (or, very hurtful) to men.

Ipsi sibi odio erit, He will be odious (or, an object of dislike) to himself.

(d) Fuere Lydiis multi ante Cræsum reges, The Lydians had many kings before Cræsus.

(e) C. Marcius, cui cognomen postea Coriolāno fuit, Caius Marcius, whose surname was afterwards Coriolanus.—Fonti nomen Arethūsa est, The name of the fountain is Arethusa. (Nomen Mercurii est mihi, My name is Mercury.)

(f) At tibi repente paucis post diebus venit ad me Caninius, But behold, a few days afterwards Caninius comes to me.

#### Vocabulary 34.

242

(Verbs that are often followed by two datives.)

(1) With *auxilio* (assistance).

Come, venire, ven-, vent-.

Send, mittere, mis-, miss-.

Set out, proficisci, profectus.

(2) With *culpa*, *vitiū*, *crimini*.

To impute as a fault, culpæ dāre, dēd-, dāt-: with acc. of thing.

To reckon, or impute as a fault; turn into a fault, vitios vertere, vert-, vers-, with acc. of thing.

† So 'can have' may be translated by 'potest esse.'

‡ *Vitiū* is any flaw, blemish, or fault; whatever makes a thing imperfect. It may therefore be found in things as well as in actions and persons. *Culpa* is fault; whatever is blamable; hence *vitiū* may be used for *culpa*, but *culpa* not always for *vitiū*.

*Scelus* always implies a wicked intention; *culpa* not always, but often only a want of prudence, caution, &c.

(3) *To give as a present*, dono, or muneri<sup>b</sup>, dare, with acc. of thing.  
*To be a hindrance*, impedimento esse.  
*To be a reproach; to be disgraceful*, opprobrio<sup>1</sup> esse.  
*To be hateful*, odio esse.  
*To be detrimental*, detrimento esse.  
*To be an honour; to be honorable*, honori esse.

*To be very advantageous*, magnæ utilitati esse.

*To mean*<sup>k</sup>, sibi velle: mihi, tibi, &c. to be used according to the person meant.

*To throw himself at any body's feet*, se<sup>l</sup> ad alicujus pedes or alicui ad pedes projicere: jec-, ject-.

¶ *What* is sometimes used for 'how' (quam): sometimes for 'how great' (quantus).

*Exercise 37.*

1. He promises to come<sup>s</sup> to the assistance of the Helvetii. 2. 24<sup>4</sup> Timotheus set out to the assistance of Ariobarzanes<sup>m</sup>. 3. *It was owing to you*, that I did not throw myself at Cæsar's feet. 4. It is *the part* of a wise man always to fear for himself. 5. There is no doubt, that (86) he is going to *consult the interests*<sup>n</sup> of Caius. 6. I fear that these things will not<sup>as</sup> *prove* an honour to you. 7. I don't understand what he means (by it). 8. It is very honorable<sup>o</sup> to you to have been engaged in such<sup>10</sup> a battle. 9. There is no doubt, that superstition ought to be a reproach to a man. 10. Timotheus has come to the assistance of Ariobarzanes. 11. They turn my greatest (*see Index*) praise into a fault. 12. I hope that men will understand, how<sup>p</sup> odious cruelty is to all men. 13. I will warn Caius, how<sup>p</sup> advantageous it is to keep one's word. 14. I will warn the boy, what<sup>21</sup> a reproach it is to break one's word. 15. He *says*, that he has *not* many slaves. 16. I will ask them, what they mean. 17. I will not object (87. 91) to their *imputing this* to me as a fault. 18. He promised<sup>s</sup> to give them *the island of Lemnos as a present*. 19. Might you not have brought<sup>18</sup> a charge of immorality against Caius<sup>27</sup>? 20. He does not understand how odious cruelty is to the good.

<sup>b</sup> A præmium is given to reward, with reference to the merit of the receiver: a donum, to produce joy, with reference to the gratuitousness of the gift: a munus, to express affection or favour, with reference to the sentiment of the giver. (D.)

<sup>1</sup> Probrum is 'what a person may be reproached with:' opprobrium is 'what he is (or has been) reproached with;' 'a reproach' actually made. (D.)

<sup>k</sup> That is, not what one's meaning is, but what one means by such conduct.

<sup>l</sup> Projicere se alicui ad pedes, which Krebs formerly objected to, is quite correct: See Cic. Sest. 11; Cæs. B. G. 1, 31.

<sup>m</sup> G. is.

<sup>n</sup> Part. in rus with the proper tense of sum.

<sup>o</sup> Say: 'It is for a great honour.'

<sup>p</sup> 'How' must be translated by quantus.

## § 35. THE ACCUSATIVE.

244 (a) Many intransitive verbs become transitive, when compounded with a preposition that governs the *accusative*; and a few, when compounded with a preposition that governs the *ablative* <sup>q</sup>.

Of these, those that are not deponent have generally a passive voice.

245 (b) Intransitive verbs may take a substantive of kindred meaning or origin in the *accusative*; and verbs of *tasting* or *smelling* of take the thing in the *accusative*. [*Accusativus cognatæ significationis.*]

246 (c) Other transitives are occasionally used transitively to express a *transitive notion* combined with their own proper notion.

Thus, *sitire* (to thirst) = 'to desire as a thirsty man desires;' *horrere* = 'to fear, and express my fear by *shuddering*;' *properare* mortem, 'to cause death, and to cause it in *haste*.'—This figurative use of intransitive verbs is common to all languages.

247 It has been already mentioned, that the *accusative* of neuter pronouns is found with verbs, with which the *accusative* of a substantive would be wholly inadmissible.

248 (a) Pythagoras Persarum Magos adiit, *Pythagoras visited the Persian Magi.*

Pythagoras multas regiones barbarorum pedibus obiit<sup>r</sup>,  
*Pythagoras travelled over many countries of the barbarians on foot.*

Postumia tua me convēnit, *Your Postumia has been with me.*

(b) Somniare somnium, *To dream a dream.* Servire servitūtem,  
*To suffer a slavery; to be a slave.* Ceram olēre, *To smell of wax.*

(c) Sitire honores, *To thirst for honours.*

Idem gloriatur, *He makes the same boast.* Idem peccat, *He commits the same sin.* Multa peccat, *He commits many sins.*

## Vocabulary 35.

(Transitive compounds of Intransitive Verba.)

249 *Attack*, aggrēdi, -ior, aggressus.  
*Visit*, adire<sup>s</sup>, adiū, aditum.

| *To enter into a partnership*, coire societatem; coeo<sup>t</sup>.

<sup>q</sup> With many of them the preposition is often repeated; and with others the *abl.* is more common than the *acc.*: *excedere* and *egrēdi*, in their proper meaning of *going out*, should be followed by *e* or the *abl.* But Livy has *urbem excedere*.

<sup>r</sup> *Ob* in *oberro*, &c. seems to be an abbreviation of *amb*, ἀμφί. (D.)

<sup>s</sup> *Visere* is, to pay a visit as a *friend* or *companion*; *adire*, to visit on *business*, or in consequence of some *want*; *convenire*, to visit, on *business*, or *not*; *salutare*, to pay a *complimentary* visit. (D.)

<sup>t</sup> The compounds of *eo* have generally perf. *ii*, not *ivi*.

<p><i>To stir out of the city, urbem (but better urbe) excēdere, cess-, cess-.</i>  <i>To exceed the bounds of moderation, modum excedere.</i>  <i>Die, mortem obire, ii, Itum; obo.</i></p>	<p><i>To call upon; have an interview with—hence speak to, convēnire, vān-, vent-.</i>  <i>To come to a determination; to adopt a resolution, consilium inire.</i></p>
<p><i>To encounter death, mortem oppētere, petivi, petii, petit-<sup>u</sup>.</i>  <i>To smell of, olēre.</i>  <i>To have a strong smell of; to smack or savour of, redōlēre<sup>v</sup>.</i></p>	<p><i>To taste of: i. e. have a taste or flavour of, sāpere, io; perf. rare.</i>  <i>To thirst for, sitire.</i>  <i>To boast of, gloriari.</i>  <i>To grieve for, dōlēre.</i>  <i>To sail past or along, prætervēhi, vectus.</i></p>
<p><i>Hardly any body, nemo fere; 'almost nobody.'</i>  <i>Coast, ora, æ.</i>  <i>Speech, oratio.</i>  <i>Antiquity, antiquitas.</i></p>	<p><i>Citizen, civis, m. and f.</i>  <i>Wonderful, mirus.</i>  <i>To dream, somniare: somnium, dream.</i>  <i>Herb, herba.</i>  <i>Honey, mel, mellis, n.</i></p>

*Exercise 38.*[How must the infin. be translated after *to persuade*!]

1. It cannot be denied, that you have dreamt a wonderful dream. 250
2. He published-a-proclamation, that nobody<sup>14</sup> should stir from the city. 3. I won't object to your entering into a partnership (87. 91) with me<sup>9</sup>. 4. Have you entered into a partnership with Balbus or with Caius? 5. He has commissioned me to have an interview with Cæsar. 6. The honey (*pl.*) smells of that herb. 7. His whole speech smacks of antiquity. 8. Does not Caius's speech savour of Athens? 9. It is the *duty* of a good citizen to encounter death itself for the state. 10. Ought he not to have encountered<sup>15</sup> death for the state? 11. Marcellus sailed past the coast of Sicily (*Sicilia*). 12. I have persuaded Caius to adopt such a resolution. 13. Three hundred of us<sup>10</sup> have come to this determination. 14. *There is hardly any body* who has not (44, (3)) come to this determination. 15. I fear he will not<sup>13</sup> choose to enter into a partnership with me'. 16. I *fear* he *will* enter into a partnership with Caius. 17. May a Christian thirst' for honours? 18. He makes the same boast as<sup>9</sup> Cicero. 19. We all commit many sins. 20. I cannot but<sup>13</sup> grieve *for* the death of Hortensius. 21. It is a difficult

<sup>u</sup> *Obire mortem*, or *diem supremum* (for which *obire* is used, with the acc. omitted), is only spoken of a natural death, which the *mortem obiens* simply *suffers*; *oppetere mortem* is, if not to seek it, yet at least to meet it with firmness and a disregard of life. (D.)

<sup>v</sup> *Re* has in many compounds the meaning of *forth*; thus *redolēre*, 'to smell forth'; 'to emit a smell.' It thus becomes a strengthening prefix: *Döderlein* thinks that, as such, it is possibly the Greek *ἔπι*.



(matter) to put off all (one's) human feeling'. 22. He commands his soldiers to attack (75) the enemy. 23. Both you and Balbus have exceeded the bounds of moderation. 24. There are some who exceed the bounds of moderation.

§ 36. THE ACCUSATIVE (*continued*).

251 (a) Verbs of *asking, teaching, and concealing*, may have *two accusatives*, one of the *person* and another of the *thing*.

252 (b) But *very frequently* (and with some verbs *always*) either the *person* or the *thing* is governed by a *preposition*.

Obs. Thus *docco*, to give information, prefers the ablative with *de*.—After *peto*, and sometimes after the other verbs of *begging*, the person is put in the *abl.* with *a*: and after *rogo, interrogo, &c.*, the *thing* often stands in the *abl.* with *de*.

253 (c) Transitive verbs that take *two nominatives* in the passive, take *two accusatives* in the active, one being in a sort of apposition to the other.

In the case of the *passive*, one nom. is the *subject*; the other, part of the *predicate*. It may be called "the complement of the predicate," the verb being one which cannot form a complete predicate by itself. So with the *active*, the *apposition accusative* is "the complement of the predicate." Such verbs are verbs of *calling, appointing to an office, considering, &c.* together with *facio, efficio, reddo, &c.* The second accusative is often an *adjective*.


254 (d) With *facio* and *efficio*, a sentence with *ut* is often found instead of the second accusative; and when *the accusative of the first verb represents the same person or thing as the nom. of the second*, it is generally omitted.

(*Eng.*) The sun makes *all things* (to) flourish.

(*Lat.*) The sun makes, that *all things* should flourish.

(*Eng.*) He had Lysis for (or, as) his master.

(*Lat.*) He had Lysis his master (= as his master).

255  'For' and 'as' are to be untranslated, when the noun that follows can be placed in *apposition* to another noun in the sentence.

256 (a) *Racilius me primum sententiam rogavit, Racilius* asked me my opinion *first*.

(*Verres*) *pārentes pretium pro sēpulturā liberām poscēbat, Verres* used to demand of parents a payment for the burial of their children.

*Quis mūsicam docuit Epaminondam? Who* taught Epaminondas music?

*Nihil nos cēlat, He* conceals nothing from us.

(b) *Socrates totius mundi se incōlam et civem arbitrabatur,*

*Socrates used to consider himself an inhabitant and citizen of the whole world.*

(c) *Mesopotamiam fertilem efficit Euphrātes, The Euphrates makes Mesopotamia fertile.*

*Homines cæcos reddit cupiditas et avaritia, Desire and avarice render men blind.*

(d) *Fac ut sciam* <sup>w</sup>, or (with *ut* omitted) *fac sciam, Let me know.*

*Temperantia sēdat appetitiōnes, et efficit, ut hæ rectæ rationi pāreant, Temperance quiets the appetites, and causes them to obey right reason.*

Vocabulary 36.

*Ask, rōgare* <sup>\*</sup>.

*Beg, petere, petiv-, or peti-, petit-; person, to be governed by ab.*

*Claim; require; demand, postūlare; poscere, pōposc-; flāgitare.*

*Beseech, obsēcare.*

*Pray, orare.*

*Adjure, obtestari.*

*Teach, dōcēre.*

*Unteach, dedōcēre.*

*Conceal, cēlare.*

*To teach Socrates to play on the lyre, Socratem fidibus docēre; i. e. to teach him with the strings.*

*To think = to imagine, putare.*

*To think, or to be of opinion = to deliver it as my opinion, censēre<sup>x</sup>, the word*

*for delivering an opinion in the senate-house.*

*To think = to reckon, judge, consider, existimare (= exēstimare), to pronounce judgment after a valuation: arbitrari, to decide as an arbiter.*

*To think, as opposed to know, opinari.*

*Not only—but also, non solum—sed etiam: or non solum—verum etiam.*

*To give much information about, multa docēre de. The person (aft. doc.) in acc.*

*Again and again = most earnestly, etiam atque etiam.*

*Experience, ūsus, ūs.*

*Just = fair, right, equitable, æquus.*

*Discourse, sermo, onis, m.*

<sup>w</sup> In comic writers the *acc.* is often expressed: ‘*Eum ita faciemus, ut quod viderit, non viderit.*’ ‘*Ego te faciam, ut miser sis.*’ ‘*Neque potui Venerem facere, ut propitia esset mihi.*’

<sup>\*</sup> *Petere* and *rogare* are the most general expressions of a wish to obtain, whether in the way of a request or a demand; thus standing between *poscere* and *orare*, but somewhat nearer to *orare*. Of the two, *rogare* relates immediately to the person applied to, *petere* to the favour asked.

*Postulare* and *exigere* denote a simple demand (without any accessory notion to strengthen it) as a quiet declaration of the will: but in *postulare* the stress lies on the wish and will of the person making the demand; in *exigere* on the legal obligation of the person against whom it is made.

*Poscere* and *flagitare* denote an emphatic demand: but the *poscens* only demands in a decided manner, from a feeling of right or power; the *flagitans* with passion and impetuosity under the influence of a vehement desire. (D.) Hence *flagitare* may be ‘to demand importunately;’ ‘to importune.’

<sup>x</sup> *Censēre* is followed by the *acc.* with *infin.*; or, if the opinion is given, to be followed by *ut* with the *subj.*; but the *ut* is often omitted.

*Exercise 39.*

- 258 1. Experience, the best master, has taught me many things. 2. Who taught you to *play upon the lyre*? 3. I ask you' (*thee*) again and again *not to desert* me. 4. I will not conceal from you the discourse of Titus Ampius. 5. Do not conceal those things from your father. 6. I fear, that he is preparing<sup>33</sup> to conceal those things from his parents. 7. He had warned Caius *not to conceal any thing*<sup>14</sup> from his parents'. 8. These things I not only ask of you, but also demand. 9. Who taught you those<sup>v</sup> (bad) manners (of yours)? 10. I will unteach you those manners (of yours). 11. The Gauls have given me much information about their own affairs. 12. I fear, that you will *not* consider yourselves citizens of the whole world. 13. Religion *will make us obey* the laws of virtue. 14. He thought<sup>2</sup> it just, that citizens (*acc.*) should<sup>31</sup> spare citizens (p. 7. 15, a). 15. There is *hardly any body, but* thinks it just that you should spare me.

*Vocabulary 37.*(Impersonals with *acc.*)

- 259 *It escapes me, me fugit*; fallit; præ-terit. | *It is becoming, dēcet.*  
*Unless I am mistaken, nisi me fallit*<sup>a</sup>. | *It is unbecoming, dedēcet.*  
 (Eng.) *It is becoming* (or *unbecoming*) *to* (or *in*) an orator to be angry.  
 (Lat.) *It becomes* (or *misbecomes*) an orator to be angry.

*Exercise 40.*

[Of *sanare* and *mederi*, which relates principally to the skill of the *physician*? (222, 1.)]

- 260 1. Three hundred of us<sup>31</sup>, unless I am mistaken, survive. 2. I do not forget (*it does not escape me*) to how many dangers we are exposed. 3. You, *such is your temperance*<sup>9</sup>, have learnt to rule your mind. 4. *It is not every one who can*<sup>39</sup> cure the mind. 5. I will ask Caius, whether he can cure the mind. 6. All of us not only ask you for peace', but even demand it (of you). 7. It is your *duty* to succour the citizens now almost despaired of. 8. It becomes a wise man not to be disturbed in *adversity*. 9. It is

<sup>v</sup> *Iste* is the demonstrative of the *second* person, 'that of yours.'

<sup>2</sup> *Censebat*. *Censēre* should be used when the opinion is the *expression* of a settled conviction.

<sup>a</sup> That is, *nisi me fallit a nimis*; which also occurs: as does *nisi fallor*.—*Latet me* and *latet mihi*, though they occur in *Justin, Pliny, &c.* should be avoided. (C.)



## Vocabulary 38.

266 To value, aestimare.

To hold cheap, parvi pendere; pepend-, pens-.

To cost, stare, stēt-; or constare; with dat. of person.

To sell, intrans.; to be sold, venire<sup>c</sup>, eo.

To sell, vendere, vendid-, vendit-.

To buy, emere, em-, empt-.

More highly; for more; dearer, pluris.

For less, minoris.

For as much—as, tanti—quanti.

For just as much as; for no more than, tantidem—quanti.

(Eng.) To cost a person much (or dear).

(Lat.) To stand to a person at much.

When one, two, &c. mean one, two, &c. apiece or for each, they must be translated by the distributive numerals, *singuli, bini, &c.*

For how much? quanti?

Too dear, nimis.

To reckon or think nothing of, nihili facere.

Not to care a straw for, flocci facere: literally, to make, i. e. reckon it 'at a lock of wool.'

Not to care that for it, non hujus facere.

Peck, modius, i.

Wheat, triticum.

Sesterce<sup>d</sup>, sestertius, i.

Merchant, mercator, oris.

## Exercise 41.

- 267 1. That victory cost the Carthaginians (*Pœni*) much blood. 2. It cannot be denied, *that* that victory cost us much blood. 3. Merchants do not sell for no more than they bought (at). 4. He says, that he does not care a straw for my glory. 5. I will ask him, for how much he bought these things. 6. I sell my (goods) for as much as Caius. 7. The peck of wheat was at *two* sesterces. 8. For how much does wheat sell? 9. Epicurus thinks nothing of pain. 10. There is hardly any body<sup>99</sup> who does *not* (44, 3) hold his own things cheap. 11. I do not care that for you. 12. My life is valued at ten<sup>e</sup> asses a day<sup>e</sup>. 13. It is foolish to hold one's own (blessings) cheap. 14. He says, that I have bought these things too dear. 15. Merchants never sell for less than they bought (at). 16. I will ask, what<sup>21</sup> corn is selling for.

§ 38. THE ABLATIVE (*continued*).

- 268 (a) Verbs of *abounding, filling, loading, &c.*, and their opposites, such as verbs of *wanting, depriving of, emptying of*, govern the *ablative*.

<sup>c</sup> Venire = venum ire, to go to sale, from an old substantive *venus*. So, *venundare, ven-dere* = venum dare. Tacitus has *posita veno*, exposed for sale.

*Veneo* is conjugated like *eo*, having *venii* rather than *venivi* for perf., and imperf. *veniebam* as well as *venibam*. No imperat.; no supines, gerunds, or participles.

<sup>d</sup> A Roman coin, worth about one penny  $3\frac{1}{2}$  farthings of our money. A thousand *sestertii* made one *sestertium*, which was a *sum*, not a coin.

<sup>e</sup> Denis in diem assibus.

(b) But of these *ego* and *indigeo* (especially the latter) govern the *genitive* 269 also.

(c) Some verbs of *freeing from, removing from, differing from* 270 *being at a distance from, &c.* are sometimes followed by the *ablative*, but generally (in prose) by a *preposition*<sup>f</sup>.

(d) *Fungor, fruor, ūtor* (with their compounds), *pōtior, vescor, 271 dignor, glorior*, take the *ablative*: as does also *supersedeo*.

But *potior* takes the *genitive*, when it means 'to obtain sovereign power over.'

(a) *Pericles florebat omni genere virtūtis, Pericles was eminent 272 in every kind of virtue* (i. e. *admirable quality*).

(b) *Res maxime necessariæ non tam artis indigent quam labōris, The most necessary things do not require skill so much as labour.*

(c) *Athenienses bello liberantur, The Athenians are rescued from the (threatened) war.*

*Leva me hoc onere, Relieve me from this burden.*

(d) *Divitiis, nobilitate, viribus, multi male utuntur, Many men make a bad use of riches, noble birth, (and) strength.*

*Augustus Alexandriæ brevi potitus est, Augustus soon gained possession of Alexandria.*

### Vocabulary 39.

(Verbs governing the ablative.)

To deprive of, *privare*.

To bereave of; deprive of, *orbare*.

To rob of, by open violence as an enemy, *spoliare*<sup>g</sup>.

To be without, *cārere*<sup>h</sup>.

To stand in need of; need; require, *egere*; *abl. or gen.*; or *indigere*, which is stronger.

To free from; set free from; relieve 273 from, *liberare*<sup>i</sup>.

To use, *uti, ūsus*.

To discharge; perform, *fungi, functus*: *perfungi* stronger.

To enjoy, *frui, fructus and fructus*.

To feed on; live on; eat, *vesci*<sup>k</sup>; *n. perf.*

<sup>f</sup> With *defendere, exsolvere, exonerare, levare*, the *ablative* alone is to be preferred. (Z.)

<sup>g</sup> *Expilare, compilare*, are 'to plunder,' as robbers.

<sup>h</sup> *Carere* is simply 'to be without:' *egere* is 'to need, to want:' *indigere* is 'to feel that I want;' the *in* expressing *intra animum*.

With reference to an advantage desired, *carere* is simply, 'to be without a desirable good,' *egere*, 'to be without an indispensable good.' (D.) This seems to be the proper limitation of Cicero's definition; that *carere* is '*egere eo quod habere velis*.'

<sup>i</sup> Also with *a, ab*.

<sup>k</sup> *Vesci* is the most general expression for *supporting life by food*, including *edere* and *bibere* as the actions of men, *pasci* and *potare* as the actions of beasts.

When *vesci* relates, as it generally does, to *eating*, it denotes *any manner of eating, chewing, swallowing, &c.*: whereas *edere, comedere* suppose the manner in

To boast of, *gloriari*: also followed by 'de,' and by 'in' when it signifies 'to glory in.'

To make the same boast, *idem gloriari*.

To rest or lean on, *niti, nisus and nixus*:

in aliquo *niti, is*, 'to lean on a person for support;' *that is*, 'to rest with,' in the sense of depending upon his exertions, &c.

*Rejoice, gaudere, gavisus.*

*Medicine, medicina*<sup>1</sup>.

*Milk, lac, lactis, n.*

*Flesh, caro, carnis, f.*

*Cheese, caseus, i.*

*Fever, febris, abl. i.*

*Quite, plane.*

(*Eng.*) Make a bad (perverse, &c.) use of.

(*Lat.*) *Use ill (perversely, &c.)*

*Debt, æs alienum, another man's money: æs, æris, n. copper.*

*A heavy debt, magnum æs alienum.*

*Severity of a disease, gravitas.*

*Disease, morbus, i.*

*Perversely, perverse.*

#### Exercise 42.

[Should 'every day' be translated by *indies*, or by *quotidie*, when there is no progressive increase from one day to another!]

- 274 1. Do not deprive another of his praise'. 2. I rejoice, that you are quite without fever. 3. The body, *to be* (ut) in good health, requires many things'. 4. Nature herself admonishes us every day, how few things we require. 5. He *promised* to set me free from my debt. 6. It is a disgraceful thing to rob another of his glory. 7. Have I not set you free from a heavy debt? 8. Many men make a perverse use of reason. 9. They live on milk, cheese, flesh. 10. *It was owing to you*<sup>22</sup>, that I was not bereaved of my children. 11. *But a little more*<sup>24</sup> and Caius would have been bereaved of his children. 12. *It is not every man, who can think nothing of pain.* 13. It is a disgraceful thing (for a man) to boast of his vices. 14. He makes the same boast as Caius. 15. May I not make the same boast as Cyrus? 16. I will *exhort* Caius to discharge (75) all the duties of life. 17. The safety of the state depends upon you alone (*in te uno*). 18. Do men alone feed on flesh? [No.] 19. The severity of disease makes us require<sup>66</sup> medicine (*gen.*). 20. We all enjoy many pleasures.

- 275 The *manner* or *cause*, and any word that restricts the meaning of another to a particular *part* of a thing spoken of, is put in the ablative.

which a man eats, by biting and chewing. In *vesci* the principal notion is the purpose of eating, the support of life; in *edere*, the means by which life is supported, the action of eating. (D.)

<sup>1</sup> *Medicamentum* or *medicamen* is a medicine with reference to its material substance, as it is prepared by an apothecary: *medicina*, with reference to its healing power, as it is prescribed by a physician: *remedium* is a preventive, a remedy against an impending evil. (D.)

## Vocabulary 40.

*Lame of one foot, claudus altero pede.*

(Adjectives\* followed by the *abl.*)

*Worthy; deserving of, dignus.*

*Unworthy, indignus<sup>m</sup>.*

*Banished, extorris, from ex, terra<sup>n</sup>.*

*Relying on, frētus.*

*Contented, contentus.*

*Endued with, præditus.*

*To deserve, dignus, um, &c. esse.*

*Censure, reprehensio, onis.*

*Punishment, pœna.*

*Severe, of punishment, &c., gravis.*

*Motion, môtus.*

*Reality, res, ei.*

*Name, nōmen, inia.——Of what declens.  
is motus? why?*

276

(*Eng.*) He deserves to be loved °.

(*Lat.*) He is a deserving (person) who should be loved.

(*Dignus est, qui amatur.*)

(*Eng.*) To inflict punishment on a person.

(*Lat.*) To affect (= *visit*) a man with punishment (aliquem pœnâ afficere).

## Exercise 43.

1. Are they deserving of praise<sup>l</sup>, who have done these things? 277  
[No.] 2. I think this man deserving not of censure only, but also  
of punishment. 3. These things are unworthy of us. 4. *I cannot but  
think<sup>18</sup>* these things unworthy of us. 5. *He has threatened me with<sup>44</sup>*  
severe punishment. 6. I have said this (*pl.*), relying on your com-  
passion. 7. *There is no doubt, that* he will inflict a severe punish-  
ment upon you. 8. Nature is contented with a little. 9. Agesilaus  
was lame of one foot. 10. Had you rather be blind, or lame of one  
foot? 11. The mind is endued with perpetual motion. 12. *It can-  
not be doubted, that* the mind is endued with perpetual motion. 13.  
*It cannot be denied, that* he sold his country for gold. 14. He is an  
orator not in reality, but in name. 15. He is a boy in age. 16.  
He deserves to be praised by all. 17. *It is not every one, who can*  
heal the diseases of the mind. 18. It cannot be denied, that he is  
banished from his country. 19. There are some who<sup>109</sup> deny, that  
these things are unworthy of us.

\* Adjectives signifying *want* or *freedom from* (vacuus, liber, &c.) take the *abl.*, or the *abl.* with *a, ab*.

<sup>m</sup> *Dignus* and *indignus* are (less commonly) followed by the *genitive*.

<sup>n</sup> *Profûgus* is one who has fled from his country; *exsul* and *extorris* imply that the person is under *sentence* of banishment. *Extorris* relates rather to the *misery* of the exile; *exsul*, to his *punishment and disgrace*. (D.)

° So, *he does not deserve to be* &c. 'indignus est, qui' &c.



## § 39. THE VOCATIVE. (ATTRACTION OF THE VOCATIVE.)

- 278 Sometimes in *poetry*, a *vocative* is used instead of a nominative *after* the verb<sup>p</sup>.

Another vocative has generally preceded, and this second vocative is *attracted* into agreement with it; but sometimes it merely refers to a nominative of the *second* person.

(a) The phrase '*macte virtute esto!*' (*a blessing on your valour!* or, *good luck to your valour!*) is probably an example of this construction, *macte* being the *vocative* of *mactus* from *mag-ere*<sup>q</sup> (to increase, enrich, &c.). The only objection to this explanation is Livy's *adverbial* use of *macte* with the infinitive. (See example: *juberem macte virtute esse.*) (K.)

- 279 (b) On the other hand a nominative sometimes stands in apposition to a vocative, or where a vocative would be the regular construction.

This is especially the case with *solus, unus, primus*.

- 280 (a) *Macte virtute esto!* *A blessing on your valour!* or, '*Go on in your valour!*'

*Macti virtute, milites Romani, este!* *Good luck, O Roman soldiers, to your valour!*

*Juberem macte virtute esse, &c.* *I would say, a blessing on your valour! &c.*

- (b) *Audi tu, populus Albanus!* *Listen, ye people of Alba!*

*Salve primus omnium parens patriæ appellate!* *Hail thou, the very first who was ever called the father of his country!*

## Vocabulary 41.

- 281 *Dutiful-affection; piety*<sup>r</sup>, *pietas, atis*.  
Towards, in, with acc.  
*Hail! farewell! ave, salve*<sup>s</sup>: *imperatives of the second conj.* *Vale, eto, is only farewell!*

*The toga*<sup>t</sup>, *tōga*: as opposed to the military cloak, it means the civil-gown.  
*A triumph, triumphus; a public procession granted by a decree of the senate to a victorious general.*

<sup>p</sup> Examples in poetry are *Matutine pater, seu Jane libentius audis.* (Hor.) *Tunc ille Odrysiæ Phineus rex inclytus oræ? Tu Phœbi comes, et nostro dilecte parenti?* (Val. Flac.) So in Greek ὀλβιε κῶρε γένοιτο! (Theocr.) (K.)

<sup>q</sup> The root *mag* (the Greek *μεγ*) of this obsolete verb is still found in *magnus* and *mactare* (to present with; to honour). (D.) See also *Journal of Education*, iii. 316.

<sup>r</sup> *Pietas* is *dutiful affection* (towards the gods, one's parents, relations, country, and even benefactors) arising from a *natural feeling*: *caritas* (properly their dear-ness to us) is founded on *reason* and a *just appreciation* of their value.

<sup>s</sup> That *ave* was a *morning*, *salve* an *evening* salutation, does not appear to be established. Suetonius makes *salve* the *morning*, and *vale* the *evening* salutation. See *Habicht*.

<sup>t</sup> A woollen upper garment, covering the whole body, and forming the ordinary dress of a Roman citizen. It was a *flowing* robe, covering the left arm, but leaving the right at liberty.

<p>To gain a triumph for a victory over the Gauls, de or ex Gallis triumphare.</p>	<p>To lead the captives in triumph, captivos per triumphum ducere. People<sup>u</sup>, populus: the voc. not in use. Bauer.</p>
--	---

*Exercise 44.*

1. A blessing on thy valour, Titus Manlius, and<sup>v</sup> on thy piety 282 towards thy father and thy country! 2. Hail thou, the first who has deserved a triumph in a civil gown! 3. Hear, O people of Rome! 4. A blessing, O citizens, on your dutiful-affection towards your country! 5. A blessing, O boy, on your diligence! 6. You, *such is your diligence*<sup>9</sup>, will soon finish the business. 7. His diligence is as great as<sup>9</sup> his abilities. 8. It cannot be denied, that (86) his diligence is as great as his ability. 9. There is no doubt, that he *told many falsehoods* about his age, *that* (63) he might appear *younger* (than he is). 10. It cannot be denied, that he told many falsehoods, *that* he might *not* be banished. 11. I *ask* you again and again *to succour* (75) me. 12. There were some who<sup>109</sup> denied, that I had deserved a triumph.

§ 40. THE PASSIVE VOICE.

(a) The *agent* after a passive verb (which is *regularly* under the government 283 of *a* or *ab*) is sometimes put in the *dative*, especially in poetry, and after the *gerundive* (or *participle in dus*).

The accusative after the active verb (the *object*) becomes the nominative 284 before the passive verb.

(b) But verbs that govern the *dative* in the active, are used *imper-* 285 *sonally* in the passive; so that the *nominative before* the English verb becomes the *dative after* the Latin verb.

(c) *Vapillo, vāneo, fo*, having a *passive* meaning, have also a *passive construc-* 286 *tion*.

(d) To express the *future subjunctive* of the *passive*, we must 287 not use the *participle in dus* with *sim, essem, &c.* but *futurum sit, esset, &c.* followed by *ut*, with the subjunctive.

(e) The *future infinitive* of the *passive* is made up of the *supine* 288 *in um* with *iri*; but when verbs *have no supine*, we must use *fore* or *futurum esse, &c.*

This substitute for a future infinitive passive must be used, even when the verb *has a supine*, unless the event is to be described as *being about to happen*.

In other words the *supine with iri* is a *paulo-post futurum*.

<sup>u</sup> Not in the sense of *folk* or *folks*, as in English, but of a *people*.

<sup>v</sup> *Ac.* See 4, note *d*.

- 289 (f) So also *fore ut* with the subjunctive should be used for the future infinitive active, when the event is not to be described as being *now about to happen*.
- 290 (a) *Mihi consilium captum jam diu est, My resolution has long been taken.*
- (b) *Gloriæ tuæ invidētur, Your glory is envied.*  
*Philosophiæ vituperatoribus satis responsum est, The revilers of philosophy have been sufficiently answered.*
- (c) *Rogatus est, an ab reo vapulasset, He was asked whether he had been beaten by the prisoner. Ab hoste venire, To be sold by an enemy. A me fieri, To be doing by me.*
- (d) *Nescio, quando futurum sit, ut epistola scribatur, I don't know when the letter will be written.*
- (e) *Dixit fore, ut oppidum expugnaretur, He said that the town would be taken.*  
*Dixit oppidum expugnatum iri, He said that the city was about to be taken. (G.)*
- (f) *Nunquam putavi fore, ut supplex ad te venirem, I never thought that I should come to you as a suppliant.*
- (Eng.) You are envied, favoured, spared, answered, &c.  
 (Lat.) *It is envied* (favoured, spared, answered, &c.) to you.  
 (Eng.) I don't know when it will be written.  
 (Lat.) I don't know when it will be (subj.) that it be written.

### Vocabulary 42.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>291 <i>To be beaten, vaptilare.</i><br/> <i>To recover from a sickness, convalescere</i> y, valu: p. 5, vii.<br/> <i>To heal; to be healed, of a wound, convalescere, sanu-.</i><br/> <i>To burst out, or bleed afresh, recrudescere, crudu-: properly, to grow raw again.</i><br/> <i>Wound, vulntis, eris, n.</i><br/> <i>Priest; priestess, sacerdōs, dotis.</i><br/> <i>A husband, vir, vīri; a man.</i></p> | <p><i>I am persuaded, persuasum est mihi, or persuasum habeo</i> z.<br/> <i>A liar, mendax, ācis: properly an adj. Faith; fidelity, fides, ei, f.</i><br/> <i>Most men, plerique: pleri declined, and que appended: but not found in gen.</i><br/> <i>To do any thing with a person, facere with abl.: abl. with de; or with dat. De should be expressed before the personal pronouns, the ablatives of which are of the same form as the accusatives.</i></p> |
|---|--|

w Of course *esset* and *scriberetur* after a past tense.

x The tense of the subjunctive verb depends not on *fore*, but on the preceding verb. *Spero fore ut convalescat: sperabam fore ut convalesceret.*

y The disease from which a person recovers, must be governed by *ex* with the *abl.*

z *Persuasissimum habeo* should never be used; *persuasissimum est mihi* does not occur in Cicero, but in a letter of Brutus's to Cicero. *Klots.*

*I am persuaded of* (*persuasum est mihi de* &c. with *abl.*).

*Exercise 45.*

1. I will ask, whether he has been beaten by his slave. 2. What 292  
will become of my Tulliöla? 3. I hope he will recover. 4. I  
hoped he would recover. 5. I doubt not, but that (86) you will be  
praised by all. 6. The wounds, which had been healed, bleed  
afresh. 7. *I fear* his wounds *will*<sup>3</sup> bleed afresh. 8. These  
priestesses of Vesta *are not permitted* to marry a husband. 9. Your  
virtue is envied. 10. Most men favour Cæsar. 11. Liars are not  
believed. 12. The unwilling are not easily persuaded of any  
thing<sup>a</sup>. 13. There is no doubt, that your glory will be envied. 14.  
*All my property* has been sold by an enemy. 15. It cannot be  
denied, that your virtue is envied. 16. I will ask, which<sup>b</sup> of them is  
favoured by Cæsar. 17. That (*ille*) age is *not only* not envied, but  
even favoured. 18. I am persuaded of your fidelity. 19. *I fear*,  
that these wounds will *not*<sup>3</sup> heal. 20. What will become of me?  
21. There are some who<sup>199</sup> believe, that he has been beaten by his  
slave. 22. There are some who envy your glory.

§ 41. THE PASSIVE (*continued*).

(a) The verbs that govern *two accusatives* in the active (251, &c.), 293  
sometimes govern *one accusative* (that of the *object*) in the passive.

Since, even in the active, it is only *some* verbs of *asking*, &c. (252) that govern  
the two accusatives, care must be taken not to extend the rule just given beyond  
the actual practice of good writers.—*Rogari* may take this *acc.* It is found with  
*indütus* and *edoctus*; with *doctus* or *dedoctus* it is not common in prose: with  
*celari* and *moneri* very rare, except with the neuter of pronouns, or such adjectives  
as *multa*, *pauca*. (Z.)

(b) Passive verbs and participles are sometimes followed by an 294  
accusative of the *part particularly referred to* (accusativus partis  
affectæ).

Thus we may say, not only *caput feritur alicui*, or *caput alicujus feritur*, but  
also *aliquis feritur caput*.

(c) In some particular constructions the *part referred to* is put in the *genitive*  
or *ablative*.

An accusative also follows many other passive participles, especially in the 295  
poets.

The peculiarity is this: the *dative* of the active is allowed to stand as the  
nominative (*subject*) before the passive, or, which comes to the same thing, with

<sup>a</sup> *Say*: 'to the unwilling nothing is easily persuaded.'

<sup>b</sup> Of two persons.

a passive participle in agreement with it; and then the *accusative* of the object is allowed to remain. This construction (which is called the *Greek accusative*), and that in 294, must not be imitated by those who wish to write in Cicero's style. (G.)

- 296 In many general expressions the *passive* voice is used *impersonally* where the active might be used in Latin, and *is* used in English.

(Thus *ambulatum est*, It has been walked [by us] = *we have walked*.)

- 297 (d) With verbs of *seeming*, and passive verbs of *declaring*, *thinking*, &c., the *personal* construction is far more common than the *impersonal* <sup>c</sup>.

(*Eng.*) *It seems, is said*, &c., that Caius has retired (or, as *Lat.*).

(*Lat.*) Caius *seems, is said*, &c., to have retired.

- 298 (a) Rogatus sententiam, *Being asked his opinion*. Longam indūtus vestem, *Clothed in a long garment*.

(b) Oblītus<sup>d</sup> faciem (Smear<sup>d</sup> as to his face =), *Having his face smeared or covered*. Incensus animum (kindled as to his mind =), *Having his mind agitated*. Adversum femur ictus (Struck as to his opposite thigh =), *Wounded in the front part of his thigh*.

(c) Pendēre animi or animo<sup>e</sup>, *To be in anxious suspense*. Discrucior animi, *My mind is on the rack: I am tortured in mind*.

(d) Lycurgi temporibus *Homērus fuisse dicitur*, *Homer is said to have lived (or, it is said that Homer lived) in the time of Lycurgus*.

*Miltiades videbatur non posse esse privatus*, *It seemed that Miltiades could not be a private man*.

#### Vocabulary 43.

- 299 *Blood*, when shed<sup>f</sup>, *cruror*, *oris*, *m*. | *To be silent; hold one's tongue, silēre.*  
*Silent*, *tacitus* if *actual*, *taciturnus* if | *To be silent; hold one's tongue; cease*  
*habitual* silence is meant. | *speaking, tacēre* §.

<sup>c</sup> In the past tenses, *traditum est*, *proditum est* are very commonly used. The passives of *audire* and *nuntiare* are frequently, though not so exclusively, used personally. (Z.)

<sup>d</sup> From *oblīnere*.

<sup>e</sup> Often *animis*, if more than one person is spoken of. Cicero uses *pendēre animi* and *pendēre animis*: not, I believe, *pendēre animo*.

<sup>f</sup> *Sanguis inest venis, oruror est de corpore fusus*.

With reference to the *moment of shedding*, *sanguis* should be used.

§ *Silēre* is, to emit no *sound*, to make no noise, to be still:—*tacēre* is, to utter no *word*, to be silent; especially, to pass over in silence.

The opposites of *silēre*, are *strepere*, *frēmere*; of *tacēre*, *dīcere* and *loqui*. (D.)

*Silence*, silentium.

*Habit of silence*, taciturnitas.

*About*, after *to be silent*, de with abl.

But neuter pronouns may stand in acc. without prepos.

*To set on fire*, incendere, cend-, cens-.

*To light; kindle*, accendere, succendere; cend-, cens-<sup>h</sup>.

*Torch*, tæda.

*Lamp*, lucerna.

*Funeral pile; pyre*, rōgus.

*To strike; hit; wound*, ferire; icere<sup>l</sup>, ic-, ict-; cædere, cecid-, cæs-

*Rod*, virga.

*Spear*, hasta.

*Arrow*, sâgitta.

*Lightning*, fulmen, ïnis, n.

*To be flogged; whipt with rods*, virgis cædi.

*Thigh*, femur, ðris, n.

*To walk*, ambûlare.

*Right*, dexter, tra, trum.

*Exercise 46.*

1. Cato was first asked his opinion. 2. You with your usual habit of silence<sup>9</sup> said nothing. 3. Marcus, having his face covered with his own blood, left the city. 4. The laws ought not to be silent. 5. I am afraid that<sup>22</sup> the laws are silent about these matters. 6. Hannibal, having his mind agitated by silent care, was silent. 7. Do not light the torch. 8. I warned the boy *not to light* the torch. 9. By whom has the funeral pile been lighted? 10. I will enquire, by whom the funeral pile was lighted. 11. Caius, being struck with lightning, died<sup>4</sup>. 12. I foretell, that you *will be flogged* (288). 13. Caius was wounded by an arrow<sup>7</sup> on his right thigh. 14. A league was made between the cities of<sup>27</sup> Rome and Lavinium. 15. It cannot be denied, *that* the lamp was lighted by the boy. 16. We have walked (*pass.*) enough. 17. We have come (*pass.*) to (*ad*) the town. 18. *It cannot be that*<sup>20</sup> he is not tortured in mind. 19. Both I and Balbus are in anxious suspense. 20. *It is said*, that Caius has been struck by a stone. 21. Was the funeral pile lighted by you or by Balbus?

<sup>h</sup> *Incendere* is to set the *whole* of a thing on fire; *accendere* and *succendere*, to set *a part* of it on fire, that it may be consumed *gradually*.

*Accendere* is to light it from *above*, *succendere* from *below*. Hence a torch, lamp, &c. *accenditur*: a funeral pile *succenditur*. (D.)

*Animus accensus* is merely an *excited* mind; *animus incensus*, an *agitated* mind. (D.)

<sup>l</sup> *Ferire*, to strike *generally*: *cædere* is to strike with what *cuts* (including rods, &c.): *icere*, to strike with what *pierces* (including lightning, stones, &c.).

*Ferire* and *icere* supply each other's deficiencies: thus *ferire* is used for *pres.*, *imperf.*, *fut.*, which *icere* wants; and *icere* supplies *ferire* with a *perf.*, and *past participle* for *ferii*, *feritus*, which are not in use. (D.) *Icere fœtus* is to *ratify* or *make* a treaty, league, &c.

<sup>k</sup> *Decessit*.

## § 42. EXPRESSIONS OF TIME.

- 301 (a) In answer to the question *when?* the noun which expresses time is put in the *ablative*: in answer to the question *how long?* in the *accusative*.
- 302 (b) In answer to the question *in what time? within what time?* either a preposition (*inter*<sup>1</sup>, *intra*) is used: or the noun is put in the *ablative* with a *cardinal* or *ordinal* numeral.
- If a *cardinal* number is used, the noun will be in the plural; if an *ordinal*, in the singular.—(In *ten years*: in the *tenth year*.)
- 303 (c) In answer to the questions *how long before? how long after?* the noun that expresses time is put in the *ablative*.—*Ante* and *post* are here used as *adverbs*, unless there be *another noun* or *pronoun* to be governed by them.
- 304 (d) A *point* or *space* of *future* time for which any arrangement or provision is *now made*, is put in the *accusative* with *in*: the exact time *at which* a thing is to be done, in the *acc.* with *ad*.
- 305 (e) *Abhinc* (ago) of *past* time is joined to the *accusative* or the *ablative*<sup>m</sup>: it must *precede* the numeral and its substantive, one of which must be the next word to it.
- 306 (f) *Natus* (born) with the *accusative* of time = *at such an age*; so many years *old*.

'*At such an age*' may also be expressed by the *genitive* only (without *natus*).  
The forms for *above* or *under* so many years old, are:—

1. Major or minor (decem) annis. (*Liv.*)
2. ————— (decem) annorum. (*Liv.*)
3. ————— (decem) annis natu. (*Cic.*)
4. ————— (decem) annis natus. (*Nep.*)
5. ————— (decem) annos natus. (*Nep.*)
6. ————— quam decem annos natus. (*Liv.*)

- 307 (a) Vere, *In the spring*. Auctumno, *In the autumn*. Hibernis mensibus, *In the winter months*. Solis occāsu (At the setting of the sun =), *At sunset*.  
Inediam biduum aut triduum ferre (To endure abstinence from food=), *To go without food* for two, or even three days.  
Ager multos annos quiēvit, *The field has lain fallow* for many years.

<sup>1</sup> *Inter*, if the *whole duration* is spoken of: *intra*, if *some point* within that space.

<sup>m</sup> Hand says, 'that the *accusative* is not more common than the *ablative*;' but Haase observes, that in *Vell. Paterc.* the *acc.* occurs twenty times, the *abl.* but once; and that *Terence* has only the *ablative*. The *ablative* is more *definite* than the *accusative*, and should (I think) be used when a *definite point of past time* is to be expressed: the *accusative* when *exact accuracy* is not intended.

- (b) Germāni *inter annos quatuordecim* tectum non subiērant, *The Germans had not entered a house for fourteen years together.* Multi *intra vicesimum diem* dictaturā se abdicaverunt, *Many persons have laid down their dictatorship within twenty days.* Agamemnon cum universā Græciā vix *decem annis* unam cepit urbem, *Agamemnon with the whole of Greece had great difficulty in taking a single city* in ten years.  
 Pompejus *undequingagesimo die* ad imperium populi Romani Ciliciam adjunxit, *Pompey in forty-nine days added Cilicia to the empire of the Roman people.*
- (c) Paucis post mensibus, *A few months afterwards.* Paucis ante diebus, *A few days before.*  
 Homērus *annis multis* fuit ante Romulum, *Homer lived many years before Romulus.*
- (d) Ad cœnam Canium invitavit *in postērum diem*, *He invited Canius to supper for the next day.*  
 Solvere ad Græcas Kalendas<sup>m</sup>, *To pay on the Greek Kalends.*
- (e) Abhinc annos (or annis) quatuor, *Four years ago.*
- (f) Cato annos *quinque et octoginta natus* excessit e vitā, *Cato departed this life when he was eighty-five years old (or, at the age of eighty-five).*  
*Minor triginta annis* natu, *Under thirty years old.* (Cic. Verr. 2, 49, 122.)  
 Qui *minores quinque et triginta annis* erant, *Who were under thirty-five years old.* (Liv.)  
 Obsides Romanis viginti dato . . . ne *minores octonūm denūm annorum*, neu *maiores quinquē quadragēnūm*, *Let him give the Romans twenty hostages . . . neither under eighteen years of age, nor above forty-five.* (Liv.)  
 Cato primum stipendium meruit annorum decem septemque, *Cato served his first campaign at the age of seventeen (or, when he was seventeen years old).*

Vocabulary 44.

To receive, accipere, recipere, excipere<sup>n</sup>; cēp-, cept-.  
 To succeed to = follow, excipere, cēp-, cept-: acc.  
 Swallow, hirundo, dīnis, f.  
 Winter as adj., hibernus.

Month, mensis, m.  
 Go away, abire, abeo; 78, x.  
 To kill, interficere, fec-, fect-: the most general term for killing, whether by starvation, poison, hanging, or the sword.

<sup>m</sup> That is, never; there being no Kalends in the Greek Calendar.

<sup>n</sup> Accipimus oblata; excipimus vagantia; recipimus fugientia. (D.) To receive is accipere, when the thing is offered or given: to receive a person flying or wandering is excipere or recipere; excipere being the act of a serviceable friend, an



*To kill*, as a violent, unjust, cruel act: by *poison, starvation, strangling, &c.*, *nécare*; or *enécare*, if by a *process* which takes up some time.

*To kill; slay*, especially in honorable, open fight, *occidere, cid-, cis-*: it is used however of all kinds of killing.

*To slaughter; butcher*, *trucidare*: according to Döderlein = *tauricidio*, I cut down an ox; I slaughter any body, as I would an ox.

*To reign*; *neut., regnare*.

☞ After an expression of time, 'that' is often used for on which.

(*Eng.*) To have reigned *more than* (or *above*) two years.

(*Lat.*) To be reigning *his third* year.

(*Eng.*) Before *the consulship, censorship, &c.* of Caius.

(*Lat.*) Before *Caius* (being) *consul, censor, &c.* (ante Caium consulem.)

*To lay down a magistracy*; *abdicare se magistratu*; in *Sall., Liv., &c.* also *abdicare magistratum*.

*Exactly*, of a number, *ipse*, in agreement with the noun.

*Ephesian*, *Ephesius*.

*Temple*, *templum*.

*To be burnt, deflagrare, intrans.*

*To serve a campaign*, *stipendium merere, or mereri, to earn pay*.

*To hold a magistracy*, *magistratum gerere, gess-, gest-*.

### Exercise 47.

- 309 1. I come to your epistles, six hundred of which<sup>1</sup> I received at one time. 2. The swallows go away in the winter months. 3. Do not the swallows go away in the winter months? 4. Mithridates slaughtered many Roman' citizens in one' day. 5. Mithridates, who in one day butchered so many Roman citizens, has already reigned above two and twenty years from that (*ab illo*) time. 6. We dream whole nights. 7. Caius laid down his dictatorship within ten days. 8. He died before my consulship. 9. Scipio<sup>o</sup> died a year' before my consulship. 10. Cato died *exactly* eighty<sup>p</sup> three years before the consulship of Cicero. 11. The eclipses of the sun are foretold for many years. 12. He published an edict, that no one<sup>14</sup> under (*f*) nine and twenty years old should command an army. 13. On the same night *that*<sup>q</sup> Alexander was born, the temple of the Ephesian Diana was burnt-down. 14. It is certain, that Caius served his first campaign at the age of eighteen. 15. He died at the age of thirty-three. 16. King Archelaus had been in possession of Cappadocia for about forty-nine years. 17. At the age of thirty he had already waged many wars. 18. May (then) a man under twenty-

*equal; recipere*, that of a benefactor, a superior. *Excipere* is to stop a living being in motion, and either receive him in a friendly, or intercept him in a hostile manner. (D.)

*Accipere vulnera* is to receive wounds intended for me: *excipere vulnera* is to expose myself to wounds 'that may every moment come in my way.' (*Hill.*)

*Recipere* is also distinguished from *accipere* by denoting to receive not merely for detention, but for actual possession. *Accepta pecunia* may be a mere deposit: *recepta pecunia* is a formal taking into possession. (D.)

<sup>o</sup> Scipio the last word.

<sup>p</sup> Annis octoginta et tribus *ipsis*.

<sup>q</sup> Begin with the relative clause. 30 (c). 32 (d).

two years old hold a magistracy? 19. He died three years ago.  
20. It is the part of a good citizen to receive wounds for his country.

- (a) (He did it) *three years after he (had) returned.* 310  
 (1) *post tres annos (or tertium annum)* } *quam redierat.*  
 (2) *tertio anno*<sup>r</sup> . . . . . }  
 (3) *tribus annis (or tertio anno) postquam redierat.*  
 (4) *tertio anno, quo redierat*<sup>a</sup>.  
 (b) *Prædie quam excessit e vitâ, The day before he died.*  
*Postridie quam a vobis discessi, The day after I left you.*  
*Postero anno quam &c. The year after &c.*  
*Priore anno quam &c. The year before &c. (Z.)*

Vocabulary 45.

*By day, interdiu or die.*  
*By night, noctu or nocte.*  
*By day and by night, die ac nocte; die noctuque; nocte et interdiu.*  
*In the evening<sup>t</sup>, vespèri or vespère.*  
*In good time, in tempore, or tempore only.*  
*At the time of the Latin Games, Ludis Latinis.*  
*In war, bello, as well as in bello: especially if joined with an adj. or gen.*  
*In the battle of Cannæ, pugnâ Cannensi, or with in.*

*A few days ago, paucis his diebus.* 311  
*A few days before a past time spoken of, paucis illis diebus.*  
*Found, condere, did-, dît-.*  
*To invest; blockade, obsidère, sêd-, sess-.*  
*To assault; storm, oppugnare.*  
*Spain, Hispania.*  
*Supper; or rather dinner, cœna<sup>a</sup>.*  
*Poison, venènum.*  
*Starvation, fâmes, is, f.*  
*Hanging: 'the rope,' suspendium.*

Exercise 48.

1. The city was *taken by storm* three years after the siege began<sup>a</sup>. 312
2. Hamilcar was slain nine years after he came (*had come*) into Spain.
3. Carthage was destroyed seven hundred years after it was founded.
4. He died the year after he was banished.
5. Why did he go out in the evening?
6. I will ask, why he set out in the

<sup>a</sup> It might be supposed that '*tertio anno quam (or quo) redierat,*' would mean, 'after two completed years from his return, and before the completion of the third:' this however does not appear to be so. '*Octavo mense, quam ceptum oppugnari, captum Saguntum,*' &c. (*Liv.*); *ἐν δεκτῷ μηνί (Polyb.)*: 'Tyrus septimo mense capta est' (*Curt.*): *πολιορκῶν ἑπτὰ μῆνας (Plut.)*, 'after a siege of seven months' (*Clinton*).

<sup>a</sup> Nearly so with *ante*: '*Ante triennium quam Carthago deleteretur, M. Cato mortem obiit.*' The use of the *subjunctive* here will be spoken of below.

Obs. In this construction *postquam* is oftener followed by the *pluperfect* than by the perfect. (See 514.) The following is an example of the perfect: '*Nero natus est post novem menses, quam Tiberius excessit.*' (*Suet.*)

<sup>t</sup> From *vesper, vespèris*.

<sup>a</sup> From *κοινός, common*: the principal meal of the day.

<sup>u</sup> Say: 'after it began to be assaulted.'

evening. 7. Caius came to supper in good time. 8. Is this said to have been done by night, or by day? 9. I will ask, whether these things were done by day, or by night. 10. He died a few years ago. 11. He died the day after he had called upon me. 12. He was killed the year after Saguntum was taken. 13. Was he not killed in the battle of Cannæ? 14. He set out at the time of the Latin Games. 15. The town was taken five months after it began to be blockaded. 16. *It is said*\*, that Caius killed his slave by poison. 17. Did he kill his slave by poison, or by starvation? 18. Has he not killed his enemy by the rope? 19. I am afraid that Balbus has killed his slave by poison.

---

§ 43. PLACE. SPACE.

- 313 (a) If the name of a town *at which* any thing *is* or *happens*, is a *singular* noun of the *first* or *second* declension, it is put in the *genitive*: if not, in the *ablative* †.

(*Carthago, Tibur, Anzur, &c.* often take *abl. i* in this construction \*.)

- 314 (b) In answer to *whither?* the place is put in the *accusative*: in answer to *whence?* in the *ablative*.

These rules apply only to the names of *towns* and *small islands*. Before other words *prepositions* must be used; and before *these*, when the name has an *adjective* †.

- 315 *Urbs, oppidum, locus*, in apposition to the name of a town in the *genitive*, stand in the *ablative*.

- 316 Such combinations as '*school at Capua*,' '*Carthage in Africa*,' &c. are not admissible in Latin. But the name of the town must be governed by the preceding rules, and the other noun governed by a *preposition*. (C.)

(*Eng.*) Running to his mother at Naples.

(*Lat.*) { Running to Naples to (*prep.*) his mother.

{ *Currens ad matrem Neapŏlim.* (C.)

- 317 (c) *Local space* is expressed by the *accusative*: sometimes by the *ablative*.

With *distare, exstare, eminere, acc.* or *abl.* is used (but not quite indifferently): with *abesse, ex-dis-cedere, acc.* should be used; with *considerare, castra facere*, the *acc.* or *abl.*‡; sometimes with *prep. a, ab*.

---

† If *oppidum* or *urbs* come before the proper name, it must take a *preposition* (Z.): e. g. *in oppido Hispali*.

\* Kritz and Berger, in their recent grammar, consider that *Romæ, Tusculi, &c.* are also *local ablatives*: *æ = a-i; i = o-i*.

† In almost all the constructions of *time* and *space* the prepositions are occasionally expressed. Thus '*ab Epidauro*:' '*per totam noctem*,' &c.

‡ Zumpt says (*Eng. Tr.*), 'If not the distance is to be expressed, but only a place to be designated by the circumstance of its distance, the *abl.* is used: ' in

- (a) *Vixi Romæ, Tarenti, Athenis, Gabiis, Tiburē* (or *Tiburi*), 318  
I have lived at *Rome, Tarentum, Athens, Gabii, Tibur.*
- (b) *Legati Athēnas missi sunt, Ambassadors were sent to Athens.*  
*Fugit Tarquinius Corintho, He fled to Tarquiniū from Corinth.*
- (c) *Tridui viam processit, He advanced a three days' march.*  
*Campus Marāthon abest ab oppido Atheniensium circiter*  
*millia passuum decem, The field of Marathon is about ten*  
*thousand paces from the city of Athens.*  
*Bidui abest, It is a two days' journey from us* (iter understood).  
*Milites aggērem latum pedes trecentos exstruxērunt, The sol-*  
*diers threw up a mound three hundred feet broad* (or, in  
*breadth*).

Vocabulary 46.

*A pace, passus, us* = 4 Eng. feet, 10-02 inches. A Roman mile of a thousand paces, mille passus. *Miles, millia passuum, thousands of paces.*

*Two days, biduum, i.*

*Three days, triduum.*

*To be distant from; to be at a distance of, abesse; distare* γ.

*To be nearer; not so far off, propius* 319  
*abesse.*

*To post himself; encamp, considere, sēd-, sess-.*

*To depart a finger's breadth, transversum digitum discēdere, ceas-*

*As they say; as the saying is, ut ajunt. Carthage, Carthago, ginis, f. Thebes, Thebæ, arum.*

Exercise 49.

.[How must 'I am answered' be translated? 285.]

1. He lived many years at Veii. 2. The boy died at Carthage. 320  
3. My father and mother died at Thebes. 4. Why did he set out for Rome in the evening? 5. I have lived several years at Carthage.  
6. Might he not *have* lived at Rome? 7. *I almost think* it would have been *better* for (*dat.*) the Roman people to have been contented with Sicily and Africa. 8. They are building a wall two hundred feet high. 9. The town is five (Roman) miles from Carthage. 10. He has posted himself (at a distance of) four miles from Cæsar. 11. Caius is nearer to Cæsar than Labienus. 12. Are (then) you nearer to me than Labienus (is)? 13. *I have been informed* that Cæsar is at a distance of two days' march from us. 14. There is no doubt, that the revilers of philosophy have been sufficiently answered. 15. Does *he not deserve*<sup>1</sup> to be relieved from his debt? 16. How much did that victory cost the Carthaginians? 17. From this rule I may not depart a finger's breadth, as the saying is<sup>2</sup>. 18. There are some who will not (541) depart even a finger's breadth from that rule.

the eighth edit. of the original, he says, 'in the *acc.*,' but the *abl.* is also correct. (Cæs. i. 48.)

γ *Distare* generally takes *a.*

<sup>2</sup> *Transversum, ut ajunt, digitum.*

§ 44. ON THE GERUNDS AND THE PARTICIPLE IN DUS  
(Gerundive).

321 The *Gerund* is a *verbal substantive*, but with the *power of governing* that belongs to the other parts of the verb. Another peculiarity is, that it cannot take an adjective in agreement with it.

The Gerund corresponds, as far as it goes, with the English '*participial substantive*' in *ing*, but its use is far less extensive<sup>a</sup>.

322 The *Gerundive* or *participle in dus* is nearly allied to the Gerund : its meaning is *passive*, denoting *necessity, fitness*, or something *intended* ; what *must, should, or is to be done*.

323 (a) When the participle in *dus* is in the neuter gender with the third person *sing.* of *esse*, a whole conjugation may be formed to express what one *must, or should do*. The *person* is put in the dative.

324 ~~323~~ In the *oblique* cases the *gerundive* (partcp. in *dus*) in agreement with a substantive, is nearly equivalent to a gerund *governing* that substantive in the case of its verb.

Of writing a letter, { scribendi epistolam.  
scribendæ epistolæ.

325 A whole conjugation may be formed with the *partcp. in dus* and *sum*.

Present { Amandus sum, *I am to be loved.*  
Amandus es, *thou art to be loved.*  
Imperf. { Amandus eram, *I was to be loved.*  
Amandus eras, *thou wast to be loved.*

Obs. *Amandus eram* or *fui* is generally to be construed *should* (or, *ought to have been loved*). The reason is this : a thing which *was* (then) a thing *to be loved*, is (now) a thing which *ought to have been loved*.

326 (a) Pres. Scribendum est, { *one must write.*  
*I, you, we, &c. must write.*  
*Sing.* mihi scribendum est<sup>a</sup>, *I must write.*  
tibi scribendum est, *thou must write.*  
illi scribendum est, *he must write.*  
*Plur.* nobis scribendum est, *we must write.*  
vobis scribendum est, *you must write.*  
illis scribendum est, *they must write.*

\* The pupil cannot be taught too early or too carefully to distinguish the '*participial substantive*' from a participle. It may be *compound* as well as *simple*; every participle, except the *simple* past participle, having a *substantive* use. 'An affectation of *being distinguished* : 'the pretext of their *having seized* some traders : 'after his *having been tumbling* about in his mind one poor sentence : 'an atonement for his *having been betrayed* into,' &c. See '*English Grammar for Classical Schools*.'

<sup>a</sup> The literal meaning probably is either '*it is to be written by me*' (according to the idiom by which the passive *used impersonally* is equivalent to the corresponding active form), or '*there is for me what has to be written*.' Mr. Key considers the *nom. in dum* to be, not the neuter of the gerundive, but the (active) gerund : so that the meaning is '*there is writing for me*.'

Imperf. Scribendum erat,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{one should have written.} \\ \text{I, thou, we should have written.} \end{array} \right.$   
 mihi scribendum erat, *I ought to have written.*  
 tibi scribendum erat, *thou oughtest to have written, &c.*  
 And so on for the other tenses.

(Part. in *dus* in agreement with a substantive.) 327

N. Epistola scribenda, *a letter to be written.*  
 G. epistolæ scribendæ, *of writing a letter.*  
 D. epistolæ scribendæ, *to or for writing a letter.*  
 Acc. (ad) epistolam scribendam, *to write a letter (or, to or for writing a letter).* [Not, *ad scribendum epistolam.*]  
 Abl. epistolâ scribendâ<sup>b</sup>, *by writing a letter.*  
 N. Auctores legendi, *authors to be read.*  
 G. auctorum legendorum, *of reading authors.*  
 D. auctoribus legendis, *to or for reading authors.*  
 Acc. (ad) auctores legendos, *to read authors (or, to or for reading authors).*  
 Abl. auctoribus legendis, *by reading authors.*

The *part. in dus* often appears to change its meaning, but it only appears to 328 do so.

Scribendum est mihi (*it is to-be-written by me =*) *I must write.*

Consilium scribendæ epistolæ (*an intention with respect to a letter to-be-written =*) *an intention of writing a letter.*

(*Eng.*) We should all *praise* virtue. 329

(*Lat.*) Virtue is *to-be-praised* by all (*dat.*).

(*Eng.*) A time *to play.* Fit *to carry* burdens.

(*Lat.*) A time of playing. Fit for (*dat.*) burdens *to-be-carried.*

(*Eng.*) He is born or inclined *to act.*

(*Lat.*) He is born or inclined for (*ad*) acting.

What is in form the *present participle active*, is often 'the *participial substantive*.' It is always so, when it *governs* or is *governed*, instead of merely *agreeing*. 330

What is in form the *infm. pass.* is often used as the *partic.* of the *fut. pass.*, implying *possibility, duty, or necessity*. 'Eng. Gr. for Classical Schools.'

### Exercise 50.

1. Man is born to understand and act. 2. Caius is skilled in 331 waging war. 3. We learn by teaching. 4. We should praise virtue even in an enemy. 5. He has snatched away from me the hope of finishing the business. 6. We are all of *us* desirous of

<sup>b</sup> After a preposition that governs the *accusative* the gerund is not used, but the gerundive [*ad placandos deos*; not, *ad placandum deos*]. After a preposition governing the *ablative*, the gerundive is *almost always* used.

Cicero and Cæsar prefer the gerundive (*M.*). But the *gerund* is mostly retained when the object is a neuter adjective or pronoun [*studium aliquid agendi; falsum fatendo*]; unless where the neut. sing. = an abstract subst., e.g. *veri inveniendi*. (*M.*)

seeing and hearing many things. 7. Water is good<sup>c</sup> for drinking. 8. Demosthenes was eagerly-desirous of hearing Plato. 9. Pericles was admirably-skilled (*peritissimus*) in ruling the state. 10. They adopt the resolution of setting the town on fire. 11. It cannot be denied, that virtue must be learnt'. 12. Ought not glory to be preferred to riches? 13. We must do this. 14. Those persons are not to be heard, who teach (*præcipiunt*) that we should be angry with our enemies. 15. We must all die. 16. An orator must see *what* is becoming. 17. We must take care to hurt (*subj.*) *nobody*<sup>14</sup>. 18. We must not take cruel measures even against Caius<sup>d</sup>.

332 If a verb does not govern the *accusative*, the *part. in dus* cannot be used in agreement with its substantive.

In other words, such verbs have only an *impersonal* construction in the passive: as we must say, '*mendaci non creditur*,' so we must say, '*mendaci non credendum est*.'

(a) Hence to express 'we must' do, &c. with a verb that governs the *dat.*, we must use the *part. in dus* in the neuter gender, retaining the object in the *dative*.

333 (b) But *fruendus*, *fungendus*, *potiendus*, *utendus*<sup>e</sup> are sometimes found in agreement with their substantives, because these words formerly governed the *acc.* When so used, they are generally in immediate agreement with their substantives.

As *res fruenda*; *ad officium fungendum*, &c. but also '*fruenda etiam sapientia est*.'

334 The *gen. sing. masculine* of the *partic. in dus* is used with *sui*<sup>f</sup>, even when it is plural or feminine singular:

{ *purgandi sui causâ*, for the sake of clearing themselves. }  
{ *placandi tui*, of appeasing you (of a woman). }

335 (a) *Parcendum*<sup>g</sup> est inimicis, *We must spare our enemies (our enemies are to be spared)*.

(b) *Ea, quæ utenda accepisti*, *Those things which you received to be used*.

*Utendum est cuique suo iudicio (abl.)*, *Every man must use his own judgement*.

<sup>c</sup> *Utilis*. *Utilis*, *inutilis* are followed by the *dative* of the gerund, or by the *acc.* with *ad*. Cicero generally uses *ad*.

<sup>d</sup> *Ne* in Caium *quidem*, &c.

<sup>e</sup> So also *vescendus*, *gloriandus*, *medendus*, *pœnitendus*, *pudendus*.

<sup>f</sup> Other genitives plur. are found in the same way, '*diripiendi pomorum*,' &c. In some other instances the *gerund in di* appears to have a passive meaning; '*spes restituendi*,' the hope of being restored. (Z.)

<sup>g</sup> In the *old* writers (e. g. *Varro*) the *acc.* of the *object* often stands after this impersonal construction; '*Canes potius paucos et acres habendum, quam multos*.' (Varr.)

(c) (Peculiar constructions.)

Inter bibendum, *Whilst they are drinking*. Solvendo esse (par, equal to, understood), *To be able to pay*. Oneri ferendo<sup>h</sup> esse, *To be equal to bearing the burden*. Conservandæ libertatis esse, *To tend to the preservation of liberty*.

☞ 'I have to do it,' must be translated by the *part. in dus*.

336

(Eng.) With whom we have to live.

(Lat.) With whom it is to-be-lived (quibuscum vivendum est).

☞ 'It is,' followed by the *infn. pass.*, generally expresses necessity, fitness, or something intended; but sometimes mere possibility, to be translated by *possum*. ['The passage is to be found in the fifth book' = the passage may or can be found in the fifth book.]

Vocabulary 47.

To overthrow, evertere, vert-, vers-.  
To occupy myself in; to be engaged in, operam dare<sup>l</sup>.  
To preserve, conservare.  
To study; devote oneself to, stûdère; dat.  
Literature, literæ, pl.; also a letter = an epistle.  
To spend his time in, tempus impendère, pend-, pens-; dat.  
To make it my first object or business, id

âgere, 'to be doing that' and nothing else<sup>k</sup>; êg-, act-.  
To plead a cause, dicere causam, of the orator.  
To feel thankful; to retain a grateful sense, gratiam or gratias habère.  
To thank; return thanks, gratias agere.  
To repay a kindness; to prove one's gratitude, gratiam referre: fêro, tîl-, lâ-; the person to whom, must be in the dat.  
To clear (= excuse), purgare.

Obs. 'Should,' which the pupil has been taught to translate by *debeo* or *oportet*, must now be translated by the *part. in dus*, whenever it is not emphatic; whenever it might be turned into 'is to be,' &c.

Exercise 51.

1. He is of opinion, that these things tend (c) to the overthrow of 338 the state. 2. Do these things tend to the preservation or the overthrow of the state? 3. Caius is engaged in writing letters. 4. There is no doubt, that (86) the state is not able to pay (c). 5. It is the part of a Christian to spend his time in assisting<sup>l</sup> the

<sup>h</sup> The *dat.* of the purpose is sometimes found instead of the acc. with *ad*; *distrahendo hosti, or ad distrahendum hostem*.

When the verb governs an object in the *dat.*, the agent is sometimes expressed with *ab*, to avoid ambiguity:

'Cives quibus a vobis consulendum est.'

Obs. Caius consulendus est (*must be consulted*): Caio consulendum est (*the interests of Caius must be consulted*).

<sup>l</sup> Vacare (*to have leisure for*) is never used in this sense by the best writers. Hotting. Cic. Div. i. 6.

<sup>k</sup> Followed by *ut* with subj.

<sup>l</sup> *Sublenandis*: as *subvenire, succurrere*, govern a *dat.*, they cannot be put in agreement with their object.



wretched. 6. Let us *consult the interests* of those with whom we *have to live*. 7. I will enquire of Caius, whether Balbus should be consulted. 8. We must consult the interests of Balbus. 9. We must provide for the interests of our country. 10. It was owing to you<sup>m</sup>, that the interests of Caius were not consulted. 11. *I made it my first object* to (*ut*) preserve the Roman territory. 12. I cannot repay your kindness. 13. There is no doubt, that he is going to thank you. 14. I will enquire of Caius, whose cause he is going to plead. 15. He satisfied me in proving his gratitude. 16. He made it his first business to satisfy Caius in (the way of) proving his gratitude. 17. Every animal *makes it his first object* to preserve itself. 18. We must strive to conquer. 19. Must we not repay the kindness of those from (*prep. a*) whom we have received benefits? 20. I persuaded Caius *to devote himself* to literature. 21. They had come into the camp for the purpose of clearing themselves (334). 22. They had called upon Caius for the purpose of clearing themselves. 23. There were some who *consulted the interests* of Caius.

#### Vocabulary 48.

839

(Words following the construction of proper names of places.)

*At home, domi*<sup>m</sup>.*From home, domo.**Home, domum*<sup>n</sup>.*At my, your, another man's, &c. house,*  
*domi meæ, tuæ, aliene, &c.**On the ground, humi: which may follow*  
*a verb of either rest or motion.**In the field, militiæ*<sup>o</sup>.*Out of doors; out, foras after verbs of*  
*motion: foris after other verbs.**To dine out, foras cenare.**Into the country, rus.**From the country, rure.**In the country, ruri: or, less commonly,*  
*rure.**To return, redire; eo.**To return; turn back, revertere, vert-*  
*ers-; or reverti*<sup>p</sup>.*To be reconciled to, in gratiam redire*  
*cum aliquo.**To confer an obligation on a superior,*

<sup>m</sup> *Domus* is partly of the second, partly of the fourth, and has both forms in some cases. The following line gives the forms not in use:

Tolle me, *mu, mi, mis, si* declinare domus vis;

but it has *domi* for *at home, &c.*; though not for 'of the house.'

<sup>n</sup> Also 'to Pomponius's house,' *Pomponii domum*, without a preposition: 'to my house,' *domum meam*.

<sup>o</sup> *Belli* and *militiæ* are used only in connexion with *domi*: *bello* however is used for *in war*. (Z.)

<sup>p</sup> *Reverti* (perf.) is more common than *reversus sum; revertor, -ebam*, less common than *revertor, -ebar*. *Redire* properly expresses the *continued action* intervening between the momentaneous actions of the *turning back* (*reverti*), and the *return* or *arrival home* (*revenire*). D. *Redire* is said of one who returns after having arrived at his journey's end and finished his business; *reverti* of one who turns back before he has completed his journey or business. (*Ernesti*.)

<p>gratiam inire ab aliquo, Cic., apud aliquem, Liv.; in eo.  <i>Youth</i>, <i>juventas</i>, <i>utis</i>; <i>juventa</i> †. <i>Juventus</i> also 'the youth.'</p>	<p><i>To cast forth</i>, <i>projicere</i>, <i>jēc-</i>, <i>jeet-</i>.  <i>To resolve</i>, <i>constituere</i>, <i>stītu-</i>, <i>stītūt-</i>.  <i>Approved</i>, of valour; <i>tried</i>, <i>spectatus</i>, <i>seen</i>.</p>
---	--

*Exercise 52.*

1. Titus Manlius spent his youth in the country. 2. When Tullius returns (*shall have returned*) from the country, I will send him to you. 3. Quintus resolved to spend his life in the country. 4. *On the day after he returned* from the country, he was accused of treason. 5. He is the same in the field, that (45, *b*) he has always been at home. 6. He answered, that Pomponia *was* supping out. 7. Might he not have spent his life in the country? 8. They (*illi*) kept their word both at home and in the field. 9. He set out into the country. 10. There is no doubt, that he set out for the country in the evening. 11. There is no doubt, that he will cast these things out of doors. 12. Diodorus lived many years at my house. 13. Balbus came to my house. 14. Had you not rather be in your own house without danger, than in another-man's with danger? 15. There is no doubt, that he was a person of most-approved merit (*virtus*) both at home and in the field (p. 7. 14). 16. It cannot be denied, that he has resolved to turn back home. 17. He was always desirous of waging war. 18. There is no doubt, that you will confer an obligation upon Cæsar. 19. Balbus is already reconciled to Caius (*perf.*). 20. We must succour the miserable. 21. There is no doubt, that a Christian should succour the miserable\*. 22. There is no doubt, that he threw these things (forth) on the ground *against his will*. 23. The Roman youth were of approved valour in war. 24. I fear that he will turn back home.

§ 45. ON THE CONSTRUCTION OF PARTICIPLES.  
 (ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.)

Every *attributive* word involves an assertion.

341

Thus 'a *fine* house' = a house *which is a fine* one. 'Charles's hat' = the hat *which belongs to Charles*, &c.

† *Juventa*, youth = the time of youth; *juventus* (*utis*), youth = the time of youth; or, 'the youth' = the young men; *Juventas*, the goddess of youth.

Cicero does not use *juventa*; but *Livy* and later writers use *juventa* for the time of youth, *juventus* for the youth. (D.)

\* See page 96, note<sup>b</sup>.

- 342 Thus then every participle makes an assertion in an *indirect* manner: it *assumes* it *attributively*, instead of *stating* it predicatively; that is, as a *formal proposition*.
- 343 Whenever therefore it is convenient to express by a complete sentence the assertion *assumed* by a participle, we may do so, connecting it with the principal sentence by a *relative* pronoun, or a *conjunction* (or conjunctive adverb) of *time, cause, limitation, &c.*
- 344 On the other hand, subordinate sentences connected with a principal one by *relative pronouns* or *conjunctions* (such as, *when, after, if, since, because, although, &c.*) may often be expressed by *participles*.
- 345 Since the use of the participle is far more extensive in Latin than in English, such sentences must very frequently be translated into Latin by participles. By this construction the Latin gains more compactness and power of compression than the English possesses, but with an occasional *vagueness* from which our language is free<sup>r</sup>.
- 346 When a participle does not refer to a *noun* or *pronoun* already governed or governing in the sentence, it is *put in the ablative* in agreement with its own *noun*.

(α) An ablative thus unconnected with the general structure of the clause in which it stands, is called an *ablative absolute*. The noun and partep. stand to each other (virtually) in the relation of *subject* and *predicate*.

(β) In turning a subordinate sentence into the participial construction, if the *nominative* of the subordinate sentence be not a *noun* occurring in the *principal sentence*, or a *pronoun* representing such a *noun*, the construction must be the *ablative absolute*.

347

## EXAMPLES.

- |             |     |  |   |     |
|-------------|-----|--|---|-----|
|             | (1) | { Nobody <i>who considers</i> this, will hesitate.             | } | I.  |
|             | (2) | { Nobody <i>considering</i> this, will hesitate.               |   |     |
| (abl. abs.) |     | { Nobody, <i>if Caius considers</i> this, will escape.         | } |     |
|             |     | { Nobody, <i>Caius considering</i> this, will escape.          |   |     |
|             | (1) | { Alexander, <i>after he had taken</i> Tyre, marched on, &c.   | } | II. |
|             | (2) | { Alexander, <i>having taken</i> Tyre, marched on, &c.         |   |     |
| (abl. abs.) |     | { The King, <i>when Alexander had taken</i> Tyre, retired, &c. | } |     |
|             |     | { The King, <i>Tyre being taken</i> by Alexander, retired, &c. |   |     |

<sup>r</sup> Since in the *attributive* combination no particle of connexion is expressed, its relation to the principal parts of the sentence must be gathered from the general meaning of the author. An instructive example of the possibility of *misconnecting* occurs in a late review of *Tate's Horace* (Quart. Rev. No. cxxiv.). Speaking of the passage,

Causa fuit pater his, qui *macro pauper agello*

Noluit in Flavi ludum me mittere, &c. (Sat. I. 6, 71.)

the reviewer, understanding the meaning to be, *BECAUSE the father's means were slender, he would not send his son to a provincial school, but carried him to Rome*—proceeds to consider, *how* education could be cheaper in the capital than in the country. If the critic had but construed the passage correctly, he would have found no grounds in it for speculating about *foundation schools, &c.* at Rome, but have remained satisfied with the obvious meaning, that, *'THOUGH the father's means were slender, he nevertheless would not send his son to a school that was thought good enough for the children of great centurions, &c., but resolved to give him the best education the capital could afford.*

- |             |  |        |
|-------------|--|--------|
| (1)         | { I desire joys <i>which will last</i> for ever.<br>{ I desire joys <i>about-to-last</i> for ever.   | } III. |
| (2)         |  |        |
| (abl. abs.) | { I desire heaven, because <i>its joys will last</i> for ever.<br>{ I desire heaven, <i>its joys being about-to-last</i> for ever.         | }      |
| (1)         |  |        |
| (2)         | { We miss many things, though <i>they stare</i> us in the face.<br>{ We miss many things, <i>staring</i> us in the face.                   | } IV.  |
| (abl. abs.) |  |        |
| (2)         | { We miss many things, though <i>some truths stare</i> us in the face<br>{ We miss many things, <i>some truths staring</i> us in the face. | }      |
| (abl. abs.) |  |        |

Vocabulary 49. [Preposition *a, ab, abs.*]

*A* before consonants; *ab* before vowels and *h*; but also before *all* consonants (Freund), especially *s*, before which it is more common in Cicero than *a*; *abs* hardly ever occurs, except before *te*<sup>s</sup>, and never except before *o, qu, t*.

The meanings of *a* are (1) *from*; (2) *by*, governing the *agent* after pass. verbs; (3) *after*; (4) *on* or *at*, of relative position; (5) *on the side* or *part of*; (6) *in point of*; (7) the office held.

*From a boy, a puero.*

*Immediately after the battle, confestim a proelio*<sup>t</sup>.

*In front, a fronte*: frons, *forehead*. 348  
*In flank, a latero*<sup>u</sup>: latus, *side*.  
*In the rear, a tergo*.  
*At two miles distance; two miles off, a millibus passuum duobus*.  
*So near home, tam prope a domo*.  
*To make for us, a nobis facere*.  
*To be on our side; to stand on our side, a nobis stare*.  
*To be of a man's party, ab aliquo sentire*; sens-.  
*An amanuensis, a manu servus*<sup>v</sup>.  
*Again from the beginning; all over again, ab integro*: integer, *whole*.

Exercise 53.

[Obs. A (P) prefixed to a clause, indicates that it is to be translated participially.]

1. Let us oppose the evils <sup>P</sup>that are coming'. 2. Must we spare 349 even <sup>P</sup>those who resist (us)? [No.] 3. We must spare them even <sup>P</sup>though they should resist (us). 4. I must spare <sup>P</sup>those who favour' me and <sup>P</sup>stand on my side. 5. I must not despair <sup>P</sup>if (but a) few' stand on my side. 6. Timotheus increased by (his) many virtues the glory <sup>P</sup>which he had received from his father'. 7. Caius, <sup>P</sup>after he was banished, lived many years at Athens. 8. The father, <sup>P</sup>after his son was banished, lived many years at Carthage. 9. We do not believe <sup>v</sup> a liar, even <sup>P</sup>when he speaks the truth. 10. The father turned back, <sup>P</sup>because he feared *for* his son (231).

<sup>s</sup> In Cicero's time *abs* was generally confined to account-books (Or. 47, 158).

<sup>t</sup> *Pugna* is any battle, from a single combat to the general engagement of large armies: *praelium* is an engagement of troops. Döderlein confines the meaning of *praelium* too much, when he makes it only the 'occasional engagement of particular divisions of an army,' e. g. *praelium Pharsalioum* (Cic.), 'illustrissimum est *praelium* apud Platæas.' (Nep.) *Acies*, when used of a battle, is a general engagement.

<sup>u</sup> *On the flanks* (a lateribus).

<sup>v</sup> So, *ab epistolis*, a secretary: a *rationibus*, a steward or accountant.

<sup>w</sup> We believe a liar, *not even*, &c. (ne—quidem).

11. Caius, <sup>p</sup>who was accused of treason, has been acquitted of the capital charge<sup>41</sup>. 12. Why did you turn back so near home? 13. The Gauls attack the Romans in the rear. 14. Ariovistus posted himself at about two miles off. 15. He took Massilia <sup>p</sup>after it had been blockaded two years. 16. A treaty was ratified <sup>p</sup>after the city had been besieged two years. 17. Do not these (arguments) make for us? 18. Scipio immediately after the battle returned to the sea. 19. Are not the Gauls of our party? 20. Almost from a boy he has devoted himself to literature.

### § 46. THE PARTICIPLE (*continued*).

350 (a) The *participle of the future in rus* often expresses the *purpose with which a person acts*.

351 (b) The *participle in dus* often expresses the *end or purpose for which a thing is done*.

(a) This is especially the case after *curare* (to cause a thing to be done) and verbs of *giving, receiving, sending, undertaking*. In English the *infn. active* is often used where the *infn. passive* would be allowable, but less common.

(β) He gave them the country to dwell in.

(Or) He gave them the country to be dwelt in (by them).

352 Of two connected sentences, one may often be got rid of by turning its verb into a participle.

Of course the *more emphatic* should be retained: for instance, that which is the *effect* rather than that which is the *cause*; that which is the *consequence* rather than that which is the *condition*; that which is *posterior in point of time* rather than that which *precedes it*.

353 It is a peculiarity of the English language, that we use a *present participle* when, though two events are *closely connected*, yet that represented by the participle must be *over* before the other begins.

~~353~~ A *present participle* must be translated by a *perfect participle* (or its substitute, *quum* with *perf.* or *pluperf. subj.*) when the action expressed by it must be *over*, before that expressed by the verb *begins*.

#### EXAMPLES.

- 354 (a) I write to aid the student. } I.  
 (part.) I write going-to-aid the student (*adjuturus*). }  
 (b) He gave them the country to dwell in. } II.  
 (part.) He gave them the country to-be-dwelt-in (*habitandum*). }  
 355 He apprehended them and took them to Rome. } III.  
 (part.) He took them apprehended to Rome. }  
 He took up the bundle and ran off. } IV.  
 (abl. abs.) The bundle being taken up, he ran off. }  
 (Eng.) Leaping from his horse, he embraced him.  
 (Lat.) Having leapt from his horse, he embraced him.

## Vocabulary 50.

To cause to be done; to have a thing done, aliquid faciendum curare.  
 To contract to build, aliquid faciendum conducere.  
 To let a thing out to be built by contract, aliquid faciendum locare.

A sentence, sententia.  
 To corrupt, corrumpere, rūp-, rupt-.  
 To learn by heart, ediscere.  
 To repair, reficere, io; fēc-, fect-.  
 To pull down, diruere, ru-, rūt-.  
 Bridge, pons, pontis, m.

356

## Exercise 54.

1. Conon causes the walls <sup>p</sup> which had been pulled down by Ly-sander <sup>x</sup>, <sup>p</sup> to be repaired. 2. He undertook <sup>p</sup> to corrupt Epaminondas with money. 3. For how much will you undertake <sup>p</sup> to corrupt Balbus? 4. He had contracted <sup>p</sup> to build a bridge. 5. He gave Cyrus to Harpagus <sup>p</sup> to be killed. 6. Carvilius, when <sup>77</sup> consul, had let out the temple (*ædes*<sup>y</sup>) of Fortune (*Fortuna*) <sup>p</sup> to be built by contract. 7. I will enquire of Caius, whether he has contracted <sup>p</sup> to repair the bridge. 8. We give boys sentences <sup>p</sup> to learn by heart (354, b). 9. He has set out for Rome <sup>p</sup> to free his son from debt. 10. I cannot but think <sup>18</sup> you corrupted by gold. 11. Forgetting <sup>21</sup> the (54) benefits which he received from Caius, he took cruel measures against him. (Begin with *relat. clause*; 30, 31.) 12. He says that it is *not*<sup>2</sup> necessary to make haste. 13. There are some who <sup>100</sup> have turned-back home.

§ 47. THE PARTICIPLE (*continued*). THE SUPINE.

(a) No Latin verb (except the *deponents* and *neuter-passives*) has 358 a participle of the *perfect active*. Hence this participle must be translated by the (passive) *past participle* put absolutely, or by *quum* with the perfect or pluperfect *subjunctive*.

<sup>x</sup> G. *Lysandri*.

<sup>y</sup> *Ædes* and *templum* are both a *temple*: but in the former it is considered as the *one principal building* which is the dwelling-place of the God; in the latter as the *whole temple*, with all its buildings, courts, &c. *Ædes* in the *sing.* has generally the adj. *sacra* with it, or the name of the Deity; *Jovis, Minervæ*, &c.

*Fanum* is a spot consecrated for the erection of a temple by the augurs; and hence the temple itself, considered as a consecrated place, 'a sanctuary.' *Delubrum* was either the temple itself, as a place of expiation and purification; or, according to others, the part of the temple where the image of the Deity stood; the *shrine*.

*Templum* is from *τέμνω, τέμνω* (*cut*), a portion 'cut off' by the augurs; *delubrum* probably from *de-luo*, to wash away: Döderlein thinks that *fanum* is the German *Bann*, Engl. *ban*.

- 359 (b) An English substantive may often be translated by a participle.

It is very frequently necessary to translate *abstract nouns* expressing a mode of action in this way ; as such nouns are comparatively seldom used in Latin.

- 360 (c) So also the *participial substantive* may often be translated not only by the *participle in dus*, but by other participles. This is a common way of translating it when it is under the government of 'without.'

- 361 After 'to hear' and 'to see' the *present infin. active* must be translated into Latin by the *present participle active*.

- 362 When the participle of an *abl. absol.* is 'being,' it is omitted in Latin, and *two substantives*, or a *substantive* and *adjective*, are put together in the *ablative*.

- \*362 The supine in *um* (*act.*) follows verbs of *motion* : the supine in *u* (virtually, though not really *pass.*) follows a few adjectives (such as *best, difficult, &c.*) and the substantives *fas, nefas, &c.*

(a) The supine in *um* with *ire* means 'to go about to,' &c. implying *effort* and *exertion*.

- 363 (a) (*Eng.*) Cæsar, having crossed the Rubicon, marched to Rome.

(*Lat.*) { Cæsar, the Rubicon being crossed, marched to Rome.  
or, Cæsar, when he had crossed the Rubicon, marched to Rome.

- (b) 1. Tarquinius, after his banishment from Rome, &c.

Tarquinius, being banished from Rome.

2. After the banishment of Tarquinius, consuls were elected. } I.

(*abl. abs.*) Tarquinius being banished, } consuls were elected.

(or) After Tarquinius banished, }

(Tarquinius expulso ; or, post Tarquinius expulsum.)

(*Eng.*) From the foundation of Rome, } a Româ conditâ.

(*Lat.*) From Rome founded, }

(So, ante Romam conditam, &c.)

(*Eng.*) By the practice of virtue, } virtute cultâ.

(*Lat.*) By virtue practised, }

(Virtute colendâ, by practising virtue.)

(*Eng.*) A reward for having despised the deity ; or, for contempt of the deity.

(*Lat.*) A reward of (= for) the deity despised (*spreti numinis merces*).

- (c) (*Eng.*) He assists others without robbing himself.

(*Lat.*) He assists others, not robbing himself (*se ipsum non spolians*).

(*Eng.*) He goes away without your perceiving it.

(*Lat.*) He goes away, you not perceiving it (*te non sentiente*).

(*Eng.*) He goes away without saluting any body.

(*Lat.*) He goes away, nobody being saluted (*nullo † salutato*).

(*Eng.*) He condemns him without hearing him.

(*Lat.*) He condemns him unheard (*inauditum*).

---

† With the *pass. particip.* *nullo* is seldom found : *nullo imposito*, Sall. Jug. 100, 3. *Nemine* is found with it in Tac. (Ann. 16, 27) and *Suet.*

## Vocabulary 51.

<p><i>At the suggestion of the Magi, Magis auctoribus: auctor, an adviser.</i></p> <p><i>Under your guidance, te duce, you being our leader: dux, dūcis.</i></p> <p><i>In the reign of Herod, Herōde rege or regnante*.</i></p> <p><i>Against the will of Caius, Caio invito.</i></p> <p><i>In the lifetime of Augustus, Augusto vivo.</i></p>	<p><i>I have completed the work, opus abso- 364 lūtum habeo*.</i></p> <p><i>I plainly see through his design, consilium ejus perspectum habeo.</i></p> <p><i>It can't be said without impiety, nefas est dictu.</i></p> <p><i>It may be said without impiety, fas est dictu.</i></p> <p><i>Hard to find, difficilis inventu.</i></p>
--	--

☞ The English *present part. act.* is generally translated by the 365 Latin *past partic.* when the verb is *deponent*.

This arises from the principle given in 353, and from this; that the Romans spoke of a *feeling as over*, the moment it *had been felt*; and of a *mental operation as over*, the moment it *was performed*; whereas we should describe both as *present*; as *now going on*.

## Exercise 55.

[Which word for *to light* should be used of a funeral pile † 299, h.]

1. <sup>p</sup>If nature opposes, you will strive to no purpose. 2. Pytha- 366 goras came into Italy <sup>p</sup>in the reign of Tarquinius Superbus. 3. <sup>p</sup>After Dion (G. *Dionis*) was killed at Syracuse, Dionysius gained possession of the city. 4. Æneas, <sup>p</sup>after the taking of Troy by the Greeks, came into Italy. 5. The slave, having lighted the funeral pile, cast himself at his master's feet <sup>st</sup>. 6. They returned to Veii <sup>p</sup>without waiting for the army of the Romans. 7. He turned back home <sup>p</sup>without our perceiving it. 8. They could scarcely be restrained from <sup>st</sup>condemning you to death *without hearing you*. 9. He went away without saluting me. 10. At the suggestion of Caius, Balbus pretended to be mad <sup>st</sup>. 11. I am afraid, that I do not <sup>st</sup>see through Balbus's design. 12. The son died <sup>p</sup>after the banishment of his father. 13. He pretends, that he has finished the work. 14. I have now finished the work which I promised to perform <sup>st</sup> (*Invert by 30*). 15. <sup>p</sup>After the taking of Massilia by storm, a league was made (*Express post*). 16. Was (then) man born <sup>p</sup>to drink wine? 17. You have recovered from a severe disease <sup>p</sup>by drinking water. 18. I heard Caius cry out, that it *was all over with the army*. 19. Is virtue hard *to find*? [No.] 20. You will do what shall seem best to be done. 21. Why do you go about to destroy yourself? 22. They sent to Delphi, to consult (*sup.*) what should be done.

\* If the *reign* were that of a Roman emperor, *imperante* must be used.

† From this idiom, which dwells more on the *possession* of the completed action than on its *mere completion*, arose the perfect with 'have' in our own and other modern languages.



## § 48. PRONOUNS.

- 367 (a) 'Own,' when it is to be more strongly expressed than by *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, &c. must be translated by *ipsius* or *ipsorum* (as *one* or *more* are meant) after those pronouns.
- 368 (b) *Self*, *-selves*, &c. in an oblique case are often translated by *ipse* and a personal pronoun together; the *ipse* being in the *nom.* if the meaning is that *that* agent did it; in the case of the personal pronoun, if the agent's doing it to *himself* is the stronger notion.
- 369 Properly *sui* relates to the nominative case of its own verb; but it may be used, in a dependent clause, for the nominative of the principal verb, when either the grammar or the sense would prevent its being referred to the verb of its own clause.
- 370 (c) Hence in a *dependent* sentence, that expresses some *thought* or *purpose* of the subject of the principal sentence—  
*His, him, her, their*, denoting the nominative of the principal sentence, should be translated by *sui* or *suus*, whenever (from the *grammar*, or the *obvious sense*) there would be no danger of understanding it to mean the *nominative of its own verb*.  
*His, him, her, their*, denoting the nominative of the principal sentence, must be translated by *ipse*, when there *would be danger* o. understanding *sui* or *suus* to mean the nominative of its own verb.
- 371 (d) *Suus* often refers to an oblique case, especially when *quisque* or *unusquisque* is used.
- 372 Obs. *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are to be used (not *nostrī, vestrī*) when 'of us,' 'of you' = 'out of us,' 'out of you:' that is to say, after *partitives* (including *numerals, comparatives, and superlatives*<sup>b</sup>).
- 373 (a) *Mea ipsius culpa*, *My own fault*.  
*Nostra ipsorum culpa*, *Our own fault*.  
 (b) *Me<sup>c</sup> ipse consolor*, *I console myself*.  
*Se ipsos omnes naturā diligunt*, *All men naturally love themselves*.  
 (c) *Cicero effecerat, ut Q. Curius consilia Catilinæ sibi pröderet*, *Cicero had induced Q. Curius to betray to him (Cicero) the designs of Catiline*.  
 (It being *obviously absurd* to suppose that Curius was to betray them to Curius.)

<sup>b</sup> *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are also used when they have *omnium* in agreement: *omnium nostrum*, &c.

<sup>c</sup> The cases of the personal pronouns (except *tu* and the *genitives plural*) are sometimes strengthened by *met* to signify 'self,' with or without *ipse*: *mihimet ipsi, sibi met ipsi, nobismet ipsi, de memet ipso*, &c. *Se* is also doubled into *esse*: for *tumet, tute* is said. *Matthiæ* says, that *Cic.* never puts *ipse* in the *nom.* after this appended *met*.

Persæ, mortuo Alexandro, non alium, qui imperaret *ipsis*, digniorem fuisse confitebantur, *The Persians, after the death of Alexander, confessed that nobody had ever better deserved to rule over them.*

(*Qui imperaret sibi, might have meant 'a fitter person to govern himself.'*)

(*d*) Hannibalem *sui* cives e civitate ejecerunt, *Hannibal was banished by his fellow-citizens.*

### Vocabulary 52.

To befall; happen, accidere<sup>d</sup>, cîd-; dat.  
To happen; turn out, evenire, vên-, vent-.

To happen, of fortunate events, contingere, tîg-; dat.

It was the man's good fortune, huic contigit, ut &c.

To restore liberty to his country, patriam in libertatem vindicare.

To defend a thing or person actually 374  
attacked, defendere, fend-, fens-.

To defend a thing or person, if and whenever it is attacked; to take under one's protection, tueri<sup>e</sup>.

His own friends or adherents, sui, pl.  
For its own sake, propter sese.

To love each other, inter se amare; of two or more persons.

### Exercise 56.

[How is 'through' to be translated, when it expresses the cause? (261).]

1. The mind is a part of me. 2. The better part of you is immortal. 3. Let none of us doubt that it is expedient to obey the laws of virtue. 4. Which of you is believed? 5. Many evils befall us by our own fault. 6. Many evils have befallen me through (*abl.*) my own fault. 7. Do not many evils happen to us by our own fault? 8. All men favour themselves. 9. These evils may have happened to us (129(*a*)) through our own fault. 10. It cannot be denied, that the mind is a part of ourselves (*of us*). 11. I will pray Caius to *take* my cause *under his protection*. 12. Ought he not to have commanded himself? 13. *It is not every man who can* command himself. 14. He is an enemy to himself. 15. It cannot be denied *that* he is an enemy to himself. 16. We should

<sup>d</sup> *Accidere* and *evenire* are said of any occurrences whatever: *contingere*, *obvenire*, and *obtingere*, only of fortunate ones. But *accidentia* are occurrences that take us by surprise; *evenientia* those that are expected. *Accidentia* are represented as the effects of chance; *evenientia* as the results of preceding actions or events; *contingentia* as favours conferred upon us by good fortune; *obtingentia* and *obvenientia* as advantages falling to our lot. (D.)

From the use of *contingere* to describe the happening of fortunate occurrences, *accidere* would come to be generally used of unfortunate ones.

<sup>e</sup> Neither is in itself stronger than the other: for as the *defendens* shows more spirit and strength in resisting an actual danger, so the *tuens* shows more care and affection in endeavouring to prevent an anticipated one. (D.)

practise justice for its own sake. 17. They prayed Artabazus to take their<sup>f</sup> cause under his protection. 18. He was called king by his own adherents. 19. *It was this man's good fortune* to restore liberty to his country. 20. I *fear* that he will *not* be able to restore liberty to his country. 21. They asked to be allowed to take all their property with them. 22. There are some<sup>109</sup> who favour themselves.—23. The boys love both me and each other.

§ 49. PRONOUNS (*continued*). (Is, hic, iste, ille.)

376 (a) *He, she, it; they*, are translated by *is, ea, id*, when they merely stand for a person or thing either *before mentioned* or *about to be described* by a *relative clause*.

'*Is*,' is wholly without emphasis, or the power of *distinguishing* one object from another. 'One of its main duties is to act as a mere antecedent to the relative *s*.'

377 When used to distinguish objects, *hic* denotes the nearest, *ille* the most remote, *iste* that which is the nearest to the party addressed.

(b) *Iste* may be considered as the demonstrative of the second person = 'that of yours,' 'that which is *known* to (or *concerns*) you.'

378 From this power of denoting comparative *nearness* and *remoteness* (whether in *space* or *time*), *hic* and *ille* are used 'to discriminate between the different words that form the subject of discourse.' Thus then,

Of two things already mentioned, *hic* relates to the *nearer*, the *latter*; *ille* to the *more remote*, the *former*<sup>h</sup>.

'*Hic*, referring to what *immediately precedes*, must occupy a very early, if not the first place in its sentence.'

379 'While *hic* refers to what has just come from the *pen* (or *mouth*), *ille* may be opposed to it in another direction, and introduce some new matter.'

380 So also '*hic* may refer to *what follows*, but it must then descend from its

<sup>f</sup> *Ipsorum*; for *suam* might mean, they prayed him to support *his own* cause.

<sup>g</sup> '*Is qui pugnat*' means '*the combatant*' or '*a combatant*' (accordingly as he has been mentioned, or not mentioned before): while '*hic qui pugnat*,' '*ille qui pugnat*,' signify respectively '*this combatant*,' '*yonder combatant*.'—Quart. Journ. of Education, vol. iii. 320, which contains an excellent account of these pronouns, from which the passages in inverted commas are taken.

<sup>h</sup> Of the passages where *hic* relates to the more remote word of a sentence, all probably may be explained by one or other of these considerations:

(1) The well known order of the *actual occurrence* or *existence* of the things may be reversed in the sentence. (G.)

(2) *Hic* may denote *what is before our eyes*. (3) Or *hic* may denote '*id de quo potissimum agimus*.' Raschig. ad Liv. xxiv. 29. See also Quart. Journ. as before.

prominent place at the beginning of the sentence, to occupy one equally emphatic either at, or very near, the end.<sup>1</sup>

*Ille*, from relating to the *past*, may denote that *which has long been known*, 381 *whether favorably or unfavorably.*

(c) Here *ille*<sup>1</sup> = *the well known; the famous.*

In *letters*, *iste* relates to the place where *the person addressed* is residing, and 382 to the things that concern him: in *trials*, *iste* denotes the *opposite party*, as long as he is directly addressed; but when the speaker turns to the judges, he may use *hic* to denote the opposite party. (G.)

As *ille* may mean '*whom all know*,' so *iste* may mean '*whom you know*,' whether for good or not<sup>k</sup>. So also *hic* may mean '*whom you or I see before us*.'

(d) *Ille* is used before *quidem*, where *we* use '*it is true*,' '*in- 383 deed*,' to make some *partial concession*, to be followed by a '*but*.'

(a) Dionysius servus meus aufūgit: *is* est in provinciā tuā, 384 *Dionysius, a slave of mine, has run away: he is in your province.*

(b) *Ista* civitas, That *state* of yours.

(c) *Medea illa*, The famous *Medea*. *Magnus ille* Alexander, The celebrated *Alexander the Great*.

(d) Non sine ratione *ille quidem*, sed tamen &c., *Not without reason it is true, but yet &c.*

Vocabulary 53.

<p><i>And that too</i>, et <i>is</i><sup>1</sup>; <i>isque</i>: et <i>idem</i>, <i>idemque</i>.  <i>Not that; and that too not</i>, nec <i>is</i>.</p>	<p><i>That only</i>, <i>is</i><sup>m</sup> <i>demum</i>: <i>that at length</i>, as if the others had been <i>travelled through</i> before this was <i>arrived at</i>.</p>	385
--	---	-----

<p><i>To know</i>, <i>scire</i><sup>n</sup>.  <i>To know</i> = to be <i>acquainted</i> with, no-</p>	<p><i>visse</i>, <i>nosse</i>: <i>perf. of noscere</i>, to <i>learn to know</i>; to <i>make acquaintance with</i>.</p>
--	--

<sup>1</sup> '*Ille* can never perform the part of a mere antecedent to the relative (= *is*); and the employment of *hic* for this purpose must be confined to those cases where the relative clause precedes (see 30, (c) ), so that here too it supports its ordinary character of referring to what has just been mentioned.' p. 319.

<sup>k</sup> In this way *iste* is often used to express contempt, but by no means always.

<sup>l</sup> The writer in the Quart. Journ. of Education doubts the existence of the forms *ii* and *iis*. *Grotefend* gives dat. *eis* (also *iis*): *Zumpt* (in his eighth edit.) *ii* (*ei*), *iis* (*eis*); adding that the former are the more common, and generally written in MSS. with a single *i*.

<sup>m</sup> When *is*, *hic*, or *qui*, &c. stands as the *subject* of an *apposition-verb* (150), it generally agrees with the following noun, where we might suppose it to agree with '*thing*.' [*"Ea demum est vera felicitas."*]

<sup>n</sup> *Scire* relates to a *proposition*; if followed by an accusative only, it is a *neut. pronoun* or *nihil*. It expresses actually acquired *knowledge*.

*Nosse* is to have *become acquainted* with the signs and marks by which a thing may be known: it '*describes therefore knowledge as the result of external or internal perception*.' (R.) Hence *nosse* is often followed by the accusative of a noun.

To know thoroughly by experience; to be conversant with, callère; properly, to be hard, as a hand becomes by much manual labour; acc.  
 To take away, adimere°, of good things; eximere, of bad things: em-, empt-.

They govern the *dat.* of that from which.

To make a beginning with, facere initium a.

Of-a-common kind, vulgaris.

*Exercise 57.*

- 386 1. He has killed both his father and his mother; the former by poison, the latter by starvation. 2. What prevents him from making a beginning *with* himself? 3. This\* only is true wisdom, to command oneself. 4. What\* true wisdom is, the wise only know. 5. Do you know Caius? 6. I will ask what true wisdom is. 7. At how much is *that* state of yours to be valued, from which the good and wise have been banished? 8. I doubt whether *this* is true happiness or not. 9. I have had an interview with Caius: he says, that he has *not* seen the man. 10. Do not take away from me my liberty. 11. That (famous) Plato has taken away from me all fear of death. 12. Apollo admonishes us to become acquainted with ourselves. 13. It is not every one who can<sup>o</sup> know himself. 14. Those good things which can be taken away, are not really good things<sup>p</sup>. 15. Having set my son<sup>r</sup> at liberty, he has taken away all my<sup>q</sup> care. 16. I have been praised by a good man, it is true (*d*), but (one who is) unskilled in these matters. 17. Christians after death will enjoy a happy life, and *that too* an eternal one. 18. He has always devoted himself to literature, and that too of no<sup>s</sup> common kind.—19. There are some who deny that the boys love each other.

*Vocabulary 54.*

387 *Also*, may often be translated by *idem*<sup>r</sup>. *This*, or *that*, as well as some other, et ipse.

Where you are: in your neighbourhood, istic.

Even or very, with *that*, ipse: illud ipsum<sup>s</sup>, even *that*.

To join battle with; to give battle to, praelium committere cum.

To your neighbourhood; to where you are, isto or istuc<sup>t</sup>.

From your neighbourhood; from where you are, istinc.

Proud, superbus.

<sup>o</sup> Demitur quidlibet; adimuntur bona; eximuntur mala. (D.)

<sup>p</sup> See note <sup>m</sup> in preceding page.

<sup>r</sup> Say: 'are not true good (things).'

<sup>q</sup> Say: 'all care from me.'

<sup>s</sup> Nihil est liberale, quod non *idem* justum (which is not *also* just).

<sup>t</sup> 'To justify the use of *ille* (to denote any thing, provided it did not immediately precede) there must always be an intermediate object to which *hic* is applicable.' p. 218.—Not if the remote event be one of general notoriety. "Quid T. Albutius † nonne æquissimo animo Athenis exsul philosophabatur † cui tamen illud ipsum numquam accidisset si" &c. *De Fin.* v. 108.

<sup>u</sup> Adverbs of motion to a place end in *o* or *uc*; of motion from, in *inc*, *nde*.

*Exercise 58.*[How must '*I am believed*' be translated † 285.]

1. Those whom we love, we also wish to be happy. 2. Let him 388  
 who commands others, learn also to command himself. 3. Are  
 (then) liars believed in your neighbourhood? 4. Those who come  
 from your neighbourhood, say that you are proud. 5. It is not be-  
 coming for<sup>7</sup> a Christian to be proud. 6. I had already set out to  
 your neighbourhood. 7. Even that would never have befallen me,  
*in your lifetime*. 8. A Christian may not be proud. 9. Do not  
 join battle. 10. I fear the Romans will *not* be willing to join battle  
 with the Gauls. 11. It cannot be denied *that* justice should be  
 practised for its own sake. 12. It remains, that I should give  
 battle to the Gauls. 13. It follows, that it is a difficult thing to  
 know oneself. 14. I know that in your neighbourhood you both  
 are wise and seem (so). 15. Such<sup>10</sup> a war was undertaken, as  
 Rome had never before seen.

§ 50. PRONOUNS (*continued*). (ON THE TRANSLATION OF  
 'ANY.')

'Any' when all are *excluded* is *quisquam* or *ullus*. 389

'Any' when all are *included* is *quivis*<sup>u</sup> or *quilibet*. 390

(a) All are *excluded* in sentences that are *really* or *virtually negative*; and  
 after *vis* (*scarcely*), *sine* (*without*).

Sentences that are *virtually negative* (that is, as good as negative) are (1)  
 such *questions* as expect the answer '*no*,' and are asked not for *information*, but  
*assent*; thus, 'can any man believe this?' = 'no man surely can believe this :'  
 (2) *comparative sentences*; 'he was taller than any of his friends' = 'none of his  
 friends was so tall as he.'

(β) All are *included* when 'any' means '*any you please*,' '*every*.'

(γ) '*Quisquam*' is used *without*, '*ullus*' generally *with* a substantive. *Ullus*  
 is however used *substantively* in the cases in which *quisquam* is *unusual*; i. e. in  
 the *fem.* of the *nom.*, *acc.* and *abl. sing.*; and throughout the *plural*. In *abl.*  
*masc.* both *ullo* and *quoquam* occur. *Quisquam* may also be used with designa-  
 tions of men (*homo, civis*), &c.

(δ) '*Any*' after *si, nisi, num, nē, quo, quanto*, is the indefinite 391  
*quis* or *qui*.

(But *aliquis* follows these particles when the '*any*' or '*some*' is *emphatic*.)

<sup>u</sup> In *quivis* (and *utervis*) a *deliberate* and *thoughtful* choice is supposed, in *qui-  
 libet* (and *uterlibet*) a *blind* and *inconsiderate* one.—*Quilibet* generally carries with  
 it some expression of contempt. (D. after *Lachmann*.)

<sup>v</sup> With respect to *sine*, *aliquis* should follow it in a *negative* sentence (in which  
 it is to be considered *positive*), and *ullus* in a *positive* sentence (in which it is to  
 be considered *negative*). G.

<sup>w</sup> *Si* is also sometimes followed by *ullus* or *quisquam*. The '*any*' is then *very*

- 392 'Any' is translated by *aliquis* or *quispiam*<sup>x</sup>, when it means 'some one or other,' 'some.'
- 393 (d) The indefinite article 'a' may sometimes be translated by *quidam*, *aliquis*, or *quispiam*<sup>y</sup>, when 'a certain' or 'some' might be substituted for 'a.'
- 394 (e) *Nescio quis* (the *quis* agreeing with the subst.) is sometimes used for *quidam*, but it generally carries with it some notion of contempt or of indifference at least.  
 (Eng.) Henry, Charles, and John.  
 (Lat.) Henry, Charles, John. Or, Henry and Charles and John.
- 395 (a) *Solis candor illustrior est, quam ullius ignis*, *The brightness of the sun is more intense than that of any fire.*  
*An quisquam potest sine perturbatione mentis irasci? Can (then) any man be angry without some mental agitation?*
- (b) *Num quis irascitur infantibus? Is any body angry with infants?*
- (c) *Quodlibet pro patriâ, parentibus, amicis, adire periculum . . oportet, We ought to encounter any danger for our country, our parents, and our friends.*  
*Mihi quidvis sat est, Any thing is enough for me.*

*emphatic*, often implying a doubt of the existence of *any*, but sometimes only an emphatic assertion that *if there be any*, it is *enough*, whereas there really are several or many: e. g. *si ulla mea apud te commendatio valuit, quod scio multas plurimum valuisse, hæc ut valeat, rogo* (Cic. pro Mil. 4, 9. So ad Fam. 2, 16, 5). The strict meaning is 'any single,' 'any, though but one'; thus it occurs in such passages as *quamdiu quisquam erit, qui te audeat defendere, vices*.

Such expressions as 'sine omni curâ' for 'sine ullâ curâ' are only found in *Plautus* and *Terence*. In *Cicero* 'sine omni curâ' would mean 'without all (imaginable) care.'

The nom. *masc.* and *neut.* are *quis*, *quid* when used *substantively*; *qui*, *quod* when used *adjectively* (i. e. in agreement). Whether *quis* or *qua* should be preferred for *fem. sing.* and *neut. pl.*, is a disputed point. The poets use *qua* with few exceptions. (Z.) The form *qui* is also used *substantively* in the *sing. nom. masc.*: *si qui, equi*. Even *aliqui* (= *aliquis*) is found in a few passages of *Cicero*.

<sup>x</sup> If 'some' is emphatic = *some at least*, though but little, or of a *bad quality*, *aliquis* should be used. *Quispiam* is nearly = *aliquis* (at least the *aliquis* in which the *ali* is unaccented): it is *more frequently used substantively than adjectively* (but *agricola quispiam*, *quæpiam cohors*, &c. are not uncommon): and often used = 'somebody' in such expressions as *dixerit quispiam*, 'some one will or may say.' According to Krüger it always relates to some number. [On *aliquis*, *quispiam*, in *negative clauses*, see Appendix II.]

<sup>y</sup> When *quidam* expresses 'a' it implies 'a certain' one, though it is unnecessary, perhaps impossible, to name it: *quispiam* and *aliquis* do not imply an allusion to a particular individual.

- (d) Agricola *quispiam*, Some husbandman (any, or a, husbandman). Pictor *aliquis*, Any, or a, painter.
- (c) Prope me hic *nescio quis* loquitur, Some body or other is talking here near me.

## Vocabulary 55.

*Every body*, *quisque* <sup>a</sup>.

*Every body who*; *whoever*, *quisquis*;  
*neut.* *quidquid*, *every thing that*;  
*whatever*.

*Whatever*; *every—that*, *quicumque* <sup>a</sup>,  
*quæcunque*, *quodcunque*.

*Why?* *quid!*

*How?* *qui!*

*Somebody* = a person of consequence, 396  
*aliquis*.

*At once—and*, *idem—idem* <sup>b</sup>.

*Any one man*, *quivis unus*.

*Take care*; *see that*, *vide ne*.

*Rashly*; *inconsiderately*; *without sufficient reason*, *temère*.

*What?* *quid!*

*Somehow or other*, *nescio quomòdo*.

## Exercise 59.

1. Can (then) <sup>c</sup> any man govern the seasons? 2. Take care not 397 to be angry with any body without sufficient reason. 3. Take care to do nothing inconsiderately. 4. Can (then) any of you govern the seasons? 5. Hardly any one can govern himself. 6. Every man ought to defend his own' friends <sup>d</sup>. 7. Will any man hesitate to shed his blood for his country? 8. This might *have* happened to any body. 9. Shall (then) any thing deter me from encountering <sup>e</sup> any danger (whatever) for my country' and my parents'? 10. Is not any thing enough for Balbus? 11. He is braver than any (390, v) of the Gauls. 12. If any one breaks his word for the sake of his friend, he sins'. 13. Do you (then) believe that any Roman (you please) is braver than any Greek? 14. You may say any thing (you please) here. 15. Whatever things are in the whole (*omnis*) world, *belong* to men. 16. Some are the slaves of glory, others of money. 17. How does it happen that you (*pl.*) do not know this? 18. What! do not all understand this? 19. There are some who believe any body.

<sup>a</sup> *Quisque* is a sort of enclitic, and therefore never stands at the beginning of a sentence in prose, and seldom even in poetry. The corresponding *emphatic* form is *unusquisque*, 'each particular one.'

<sup>b</sup> *Quicumque* is the adjective form of *quisquis*.

<sup>c</sup> *Fuere quidam*, *qui idem* ornate, *idem* *versute* *dicerent*. (Z.)

<sup>d</sup> Though *num* expects the answer 'no,' it does not imply that the answer 'yes' cannot possibly be given, as 'an' does. '*An quisquam*' is therefore more common than '*num quisquam*,' and *stronger* than '*num quis*.'

<sup>e</sup> *Quisque* should immediately follow cases of *sui* or *suus*, and numerals (*decimus quisque*, 'every tenth man').



§ 51. PRONOUNS (*continued*). ON THE PREFIXES AND AFFIXES OF THE INTERROGATIVES.

- 398 (a) The syllable *ec* often appears as a *prefix*, and the syllable *nam* as an *affix*, to interrogative pronouns and adverbs.

The *ec* is from *en!* *em!* *hem!* a particle calling for attention to what is going to be said. [See note *e*, below; and, on the decl., end of note *w* on p. 110.] 'Nam' is properly *namely*, *by name*; so that *quisnam* is, *who by name*; *name*, or *tell me who*. (*Hartung*.)

The *en* stands alone in *en unquam*: 'En unquam cuiquam contumeliosius audistis factam injuriam, &c.!' *Ter. Phorm.* ii. 3. *Nam* is appended to *quis quid, ubi, num, &c.*

- 399 (b) 'Always' after one superlative and before another, may be translated by *quisque*, agreeing with the same substantive that the superlatives agree with.

The *singular* is generally to be used, when a substantive is not to be expressed in Latin.

- 400 (a) *Ecquid*° sentitis in quanto contemptu vivatis? *Do you perceive at all (or perchance) in what contempt you are living? Ecqui pudor est? ecqua religio? Is there any shame left? any religion? (implying that there is or seems to be none.) Num quidnam novi accidit? Has any thing fresh occurred?*
- (b) *Optimum quidque rarissimum est, The best things are always the rarest.*  
*Altissima quæque flumina minimo sono labuntur, The deepest rivers always flow with the least sound.*
- (c) *Doctissimus quisque, All the most learned men.*
- (d) *Aliud alii natura iter ostendit, Nature points out one path to one man, another to another.*  
*Aliud alio fertur, One thing is borne in one direction, another in another.*

- 401 (Eng.) *One* Balbus. (Lat.) A certain Balbus. (*Quidam*.)

(Eng.) *One* does one thing, another another<sup>†</sup>.

(Lat.) *Another* does another thing.

*Vocabulary* 56.

- 402 *Little*=but or too little, *parum*, with gen. *A little* = some, but not much, *paulum* or *paululum*. } *A considerable quantity; some considerable, aliquantum, with gen. In the mean time, interim.*

° *Eo* (= *en*) prefixed to *quis, quid, quando, &c.* puts a question *doubtfully*, but intimates that the answer 'no' is rather expected. It often gives a tone of *impatience* to the enquiry. In *ecquid* the *quid* = the indef. *ri, at all*.

† In a sentence of this kind, 'some—one' must be translated by *alius—alius*; and 'another—another' be untranslated.

*Meanwhile; all that time, interest.*  
*Sometimes = now and then; approaching, as compared with nonnunquam, to the notion of but seldom, interdum. Sometimes, approaching to the notion of pretty often, nonnunquam: aliquando<sup>h</sup>, the last being properly, 'some time or other,' and often therefore equivalent to at last<sup>i</sup>.*  
*Ever, unquam with negatives; aliquando when it means 'at some one time, be it when it may:' quando after si, nisi, nã, &c. when the ever is not emphatic<sup>k</sup>: also in equando, which is used*

*to imply that the time never will come, or at least, that it seems as if it never would come.*  
*In a different direction; to some other place, alio: 387, t.*  
*From a different direction, aliunde.*  
*Any where = any whither, usquam<sup>l</sup>, aliquo, quo: to be used according to the rules for 'any.' See Any in Index.*  
*No where or whither, nusquam.*  
*Strength, vires, virium, &c. In sing. force; violence; vis, vim, vi.*

**65** Rarius interdum quam nonnunquam esse memento.

*Exercise 60.*

['*Ever*,' when marked as emphatic by an accent, is to be translated by *equando*. When '*ever*' and '*any*' are marked as emphatic (in other cases), they are not to be translated by *quando, quis*. '*Perchance*,' or '*at all*,' in questions are to be translated by the addition of *quid* to *en* or *num*: *ecquid, numquid*. '*A*' emphatic (*a'*) is to be translated by a *pronoun*.]

1. What prevents us from banishing every tenth man? 2. We 403 have lost some considerable time by playing. 3. They say, that they shall never<sup>2</sup> die. 4. We shall all die some time or other. 5. The best men always (*b*) die with the most resignation. 6. In the mean time one Octavius called upon me at my own house.

<sup>s</sup> *Interea* refers to an event continuing during the whole interval; *interim* to one that occurs at some time or times within that interval. Hence, as *Döderlein* observes, in negative sentences *interea* is the regular word, as the possibility and expectation of a thing's happening is always of some duration. [Comp. note<sup>t</sup> in Part ii. p. 195.]

<sup>h</sup> The syllable *ali*, whether as prefix or termination, always denotes quality. Thus '*si aliquis adest*' is '*if there be any one present, be he who or what he may:*' whereas '*si quisquam adest*' would mean '*if there be but one present, no matter whether more or not.*' (G.)

*Aliquando* is properly '*at one time, whether near or far off;*' but as a thing's once happening may prove the possibility of its often happening, *aliquando* is often equivalent to *aliquoties*. But in the golden age it is used by preference of things that had better happen never. (D.)

<sup>i</sup> It gets this meaning from its being implied by the nature of the sentence that no early time remains. In this meaning it is often joined with *tandem* (= *tam demum*. D.).

<sup>k</sup> Hence '*ever*' = at any time, is translated by *unquam, aliquando, quando, or equando*, according as '*any*' would be translated under the same circumstances, by *ullus, aliquis, quis, or ecquis*. *Si quis, si quando* are nearly equivalent to *whoever, whenever*.

<sup>l</sup> *Usquam* is more regularly the '*any where*' of rest; but is used after verbs of motion, as we use '*where*.'

7. None of you called upon me all that time'. 8. There is no one but (44, (2)) is sometimes mistaken. 9. Most' of us are pretty often, all of us are sometimes deceived (p. 7. 15, b). 10. Which is the wiser, Caius or Balbus? 11. Does any' man believe liars? 12. In the mean time a' (393) greater fear seized upon the soldiers. 13. I hear that there is a' greater fear in the city. 14. If you ever return (*shall have returned*) home, you will understand these things. 15. Have you ever' heard this from any body? [No.] 16. If you are setting out any where, return in the evening. 17. Are you going to set out to some other place? [No where.] 18. Some considerable time has been lost (in) asking my friends. 19. Some persons devote themselves to one thing, others to another. 20. Virtue is not of such <sup>10</sup> strength *as* to defend herself <sup>15</sup>. 21. Have you perchance two countries? 22. *Let me know* whether I shall ever' see you. 23. There were some who had two countries. 24. Did you imagine that you should ever' render an account of your actions?

---

### § 52. COMPARISON.

404 (a) The regular particle of comparison is *quam* (*than*). The things compared will of course be in the *same case*.

(b) When the same noun belongs to each member of the comparison, it is omitted in one. In English we express it in the *first* clause, and use the pronoun '*that*' (pl. '*those*') for it in the second. This '*that*' (or '*those*') is not to be translated into Latin.

405 (b) Sometimes *quam* is omitted, and the following noun put in the *ablative*<sup>m</sup>.

(a) As a rule, the *ablative* should not be used in this way, except where the same noun would follow *quam* in the *nominative*. Sometimes however the *ablative*, especially of *pronouns*, is used for the *accusative* after *quam*. In the construction of the *acc.* with *infn.* this would be regular.

(β) Moreover, the construction with the *ablative* should not be used, unless the object with which another is compared, actually *possesses the property*<sup>m</sup> in question.

406 (c) Comparatives and superlatives are often accompanied by *ablatives*, expressing *by how much* one thing exceeds or falls short of another.

407 (d) The English *the—the* (= *by how much—by so much*) are expressed in Latin by *quanto—tanto*; *quo—eo* or *hoc*.

A sentence of this kind may also be expressed by *ut quisque* with a superlative, followed by *ita* with another.

---

<sup>m</sup> If I say a person is '*sapientior* *Caius*,' I ascribe wisdom to *Caius*, though less of it than to any other person. If I say he is '*sapientior quam* *Caius*,' I do not necessarily ascribe to *Caius* any wisdom at all.

'Somewhat' and 'too' with the *positive* are expressed by the *comparative*, when those adverbs are not emphatic. (g) And sometimes an *emphatic positive* is expressed by the *comparative*.

(a) Europa minor est, *quam* Asia, *Europe is less than Asia.* 409

(b) Non ego hac nocte longiorem vidi, *I have not seen a longer night than this.*

(c) Multo difficilius, *Much* more difficult.

(d) Eo minor est arcus, quo altior est sol, *The higher the sun is, the less is the arc.*

Tanto brevius omne tempus, quanto felicius est, *The happier any time is, the shorter it is* (i. e. *appears*).

Ut quisque est vir optimus, ita difficillime esse alios improbos suspicatur, *The better a man is, the more difficulty he has in suspecting that others are wicked.*

(e) Romani bella quædam fortius quam felicius gesserunt, *The Romans carried on some wars with more courage than success.*  
Pestilentia minacior quam perniciosior, *A pestilence more alarming than (really) fatal* (or, *alarming rather than destructive*).

(f) Prælium majus quam pro numero hostium editur, *A severer battle is fought than could have been expected from the (small) number of the enemy* (or, *A battle unusually severe for the number of the enemy*).

Alexander consedit regiâ sellâ multo excelsiore quam pro habitu corporis, *Alexander sat down on the royal chair, which was far too high for his stature.*

(g) Res graviores (important). Morbi graviores (severe).

Vocabulary 57.

Passionate, iracundus.

Angry, iratus.

Considerably more, aliquanto plus. See 402.

Many times as great, multis partibus major.

Are hard to be avoided, or difficult to avoid, difficile vitantur.

Hidden, occultus, part. of occulere.

Snares, insidiæ.

Frequent, crêber, bra; frêquens<sup>a</sup>.

Loquacious, loquax, acis.

Old age, senectûs, ütis.

Difference, distantia.

Worse, pejor: less good than, deterior.

410

<sup>a</sup> Crêber denotes close and crowded succession, and often implies censure: frêquens denotes a plentiful supply, and rather as an epithet of praise.

Frêquens is also used of a place 'much resorted to,' and a 'full' senate-house: in which sense orber is not used, but celeber, which is related to it as καλύπτω to κρύπτω. (D.)

(Words by which superlatives are strengthened.)

*As shortly as possible, quam* ° brevis-  
sime.*Extremely flourishing* in resources, longe  
opulentissimus.*Far; by far, multo.**The very least, vel minimus.**The most unjust possible, or in the world,*  
vel iniquissimus.

(Eng.) He is too proud to be a slave.

(Lat.) He is *prouder than that he should be a slave.*

(Quam ut mancipium sit, or possit esse.)

(Eng.) I took the *greatest* pains I could.(Lat.) I took pains (as great) as *P* the *greatest* I could (*quam*).

(Eng.) As great a difference as there can possibly be.

(Lat.) A difference as *great-as the greatest* can be.

(Quanta maxima potest esse distantia.)

*Exercise 61.*

- 411 1. That report was frequent rather than certain (e). 2. The better a man is, with the more resignation will he die. 3. Caius is too wise to be deceived by his slave. 4. The most hidden dangers are *always* the most difficult to avoid. 5. The more hidden a danger is, the more difficulty is there in avoiding it<sup>95</sup>. 6. The more passionate a man is, the more difficulty has he<sup>96</sup> in commanding himself. 7. He is too angry to be able to command himself. 8. I prefer the most unjust peace *in the world* to the justest war. 9. Saguntum was an extremely flourishing state. 10. I will say as shortly as possible, what it seems to me should be done<sup>97</sup>. 11. They perceive the very least things. 12. They worship Libera, whom they also<sup>98</sup> call Proserpina. 13. I will strive to do good to as many as possible. 14. I have accomplished the longest journey I possibly could. 15. I have finished the business with the greatest care I possibly could. 16. In important matters, there is need of deliberation<sup>99</sup>. 17. Old age is by nature somewhat (408) loquacious. 18. We have lost considerably more gold than you. 19. *It is an allowed fact*, that the sun is *many times as great* as the earth. 20. There is the greatest possible difference of character between them.

## § 53. REMARKS ON SOME OF THE TENSES.

- 412 The *perfect definite* (perf. with 'have') is virtually a *present* tense, being used of an action *begun* at some past time, and carried on *up to*, or *nearly up to* the present moment. Hence, as we have seen (40, d), it may be followed by the *present* or *perfect* subjunctive 4.

° *Potest, possunt, &c.* may be inserted after *quam*. 'Aves nidos quam *possunt* mollissime substernunt' = *tam molliter*, quam possunt mollissime. (G.)

P *Quam maximas potui copias* = *tantas*, quam maximas. (G.)

¶ Nevertheless the Roman ear was so accustomed to the *imperf. subj.* after

(a) To express, 'I have been doing a thing for a long time,' the Romans said 413  
'I am doing it for a long time already.'

(*Jam pridem cupio, I have long been desiring.*)

In animated narrative, the *past* is often described by the *present*. 414

(b) The present when thus used (*præsens historicum*) may be followed either by the *present subj.* (according to the general rule for the sequence of tenses) or by the *imperfect subj.* (as being itself *virtually* a past tense). The imperfect is, on the whole, the more common. (Z.)

(c) A *present* tense after *relatives*, or 'when,' 'if,' 'as long as,' 415  
'before,' &c. is generally to be translated by a *future*, when the action expressed by it is still *future*.

The action is generally still future, when the verb in the principal clause is in a *future* tense or the *imperative* mood<sup>r</sup>.

If one action must be *completed* before the other begins, the *future perfect* should be used. In this case the *perfect definite* is sometimes (by no means *always*) used in English<sup>s</sup>.

(1) (*Eng.*) Whosoever I take<sup>t</sup> my journey into Spain, I will come to you. 416  
(*Lat.*) Whosoever I shall take my journey, &c.

(2) (*Eng.*) When I have performed this, I will come, &c. (Rom. xv. 28.)  
(*Lat.*) When I shall have performed this, I will come, &c.

(3) (*Eng.*) When he is come (perf. def.), he will tell us, &c. (John iv. 5.)  
(*Lat.*) When he shall have come, he will tell us, &c.

(4) (*Eng.*) (Saying) they would neither eat nor drink till they had killed Paul  
(Acts xxiii. 12).

(*Lat.*) (Saying) they would neither eat nor drink till they should have killed Paul.

(5) (*Eng.*) As soon as they hear of me, they shall obey me (2 Sam. xxii. 45).

(*Lat.*) As soon as they shall hear of me, they shall obey me :

(or) As soon as they shall have heard, &c.

the *perf.* that they used it (even where the *perf.* is plainly equivalent to our perfect with 'have'), provided 'the action could be conceived as one advancing gradually to its completion.' (Z.) 'Diu dubitavi (have long doubted) num melius sit,' &c. would sound strange to Roman ears : they preferred 'num melius esset,' even when they did not narrate, but were only stating the result. (K.)

<sup>r</sup> The subjunctive present used *imperatively*, is virtually an *imperative*.

<sup>s</sup> The Roman, viewing the future action or event from his *present*, marked its *futurity*, and, if necessary, its *completion* : the Englishman removes himself to the 'when' spoken of, and contemplates it as a state *then existing*. The Roman considered it *relatively* : the Englishman considers it *absolutely*. There are some constructions, in which the *completion* of the action is not marked, even in Latin ; for instance, in the use of the *imperfect subjunctive* in marking the relative time of a *wish*, *request*, or *question* : e.g. 'He answered when he was asked.' 'quum interrogaretur,' not *interrogatus esset*, though the question must be completed before the answer is given.

<sup>t</sup> Even in Latin, the *present* (after *si*) is sometimes used, as in English, in connexion with a *future* ; but only when it is to intimate that the *future event* depends upon some *present circumstance*, or *resolution*. Examples are : 'Perſi

417 (d) 'Should,' 'would,' 'could,' &c. when used to soften an assertion by throwing into it an expression of *doubtfulness*, are generally to be translated by putting the verb in the *present* or *perf.* of the *subjunctive*.

a) In this idiom the *perfect* does not appear to bear any reference to the *completion* of the action. See 428, note\*.

β) (e) *Velim, nōlim, mālim*, are often used in this manner, and often in connexion with the verb in the *subjunctive* governed by 'ut' omitted.

418 (f) After *ut* a *consequence* (but not a *purpose*) is often put in the *perf.* subj., instead of the *imperf.*, after a past tense.

a) This occurs very frequently in Cornelius Nepos. The use of the *perf.* gives more *prominence* and *independence* to the *consequence*. (K.)

β) The IMP. SUBJ. marks (1) something past, (2) something *contemporary* with another in past time, (3) something contemporary and *continuing*.

γ) The PERF. SUBJ. is either the subj. of the *aorist* ('wrote') or of the *præteritum in præsentis* (or *perf. definite*, 'have written'). (K.)

419 (a) Jam pridem (or jampridem) cupio, I have long desired.

Vocat me alio jam dudum (or jamdudum) tacita vestra expectatio, Your silent expectation has for some time been calling me to another point.

Copiarum quas diu comparabant, Forces which they had long been collecting.

(b) Subito edicunt Consules, ut ad suum vestitum Senatores redirent, The Consuls suddenly publish (=published) an edict, that the Senators should return to their usual dress.

(c) Quum Tullius rure redierit, mittam eum ad te, When Tullius returns from the country, I will send him to you. Facito hoc, ubi voles, Do this when you please.

Si te rogavero aliquid, nonne respondebis? If I put any question to you, will you not answer?

(d) Hoc sine ullâ dubitatione confirmaverim<sup>u</sup>, I would assert this without any hesitation.

(e) De me sic velim judices, I would wish you to judge thus of me.

Nolim factum, I could wish it not to be done. (Nollem<sup>v</sup> factum, I could wish it had not been done.)

---

dictur bellum, si non urgemus obsessos,' &c. Liv. v. 4. 'Si vincimus, omnia nobis tuta, &c. . . . patebunt.' Sall. 58, 9. (G.) On the *subj. pres.* after *si*, see 435 (b).

<sup>u</sup> The *perf. subjunctive* used in this manner to withhold a positive assertion, occurs in *negative* sentences oftener than in positive ones. (G.) See 428, note\*.

<sup>v</sup> When a *conceived case* is to be expressed with the intimation that the *fact* corresponds to it, or may so correspond, the *pres.* and *perf.* of the *subj.* are used: but when it is to be intimated that the *fact* does not or cannot correspond to it, the *imperf.* or *pluperf. subj.* must be used. (Z.)

(f) Quo factum est, ut plus, quam collēgæ, Miltiades *valuerit*,  
The consequence of which was, that *Miltiades had more influ-  
ence than his colleagues.*

Vocabulary 58.

<p><i>For some time, dūdum or jamdūdum ; applied to short preceding periods ; an hour or few hours : less, generally, than a day.</i></p> <p><i>Long ; for a long time, diu, or jamdiu<sup>w</sup> ; of an action continued, suspended, or not occurring, through the whole period.</i></p> <p><i>Long ago, pridem or jampridem ; re-</i></p>	<p><i>ferring to a past point of time ; not, 420 like diu, to a past period of time.</i></p> <p><i>To desire, cupere<sup>x</sup>, io, 150 ; this is of the inward feeling : optare is, to de- sire = to express a wish for.</i></p> <p><i>To long, avēre of a restless, impatient, gestire of a delighted, joyous longing.</i></p> <p><i>Not above two or three times, bis terve.</i></p> <p><i>Two or three times ; several times, bis terque.</i></p>
---	---

[The preposition *Ad.*]

(1) *To ; (2) at ; (3) up to, until ; to the amount of ; (4) for, &c.*

*To a man, ad unum.*

*To extreme old age, ad summam senec-  
tutem.*

*He is nothing to = compared to him,  
ad eum nihil est.*

*For a time, ad tempus : also 'at the  
proper time.'*

*As many as two hundred, ad ducentos.*

*Word for word, ad verbum.*

*At most, ad summum, or summum  
only.*

*At least, ad minimum ; minimum.*

*At last, ad extremum.*

(a) (*Eng.*) They do nothing but laugh.

(*Lat.*) They nothing else than laugh (*nihil aliud quam rident : faciunt  
omitted*).

*Exercise 62.*

[By what verb should *to take away a bad thing* be translated !]

1. I have for some time been desiring to take away from you 421  
*that care of yours.* 2. I have long desired to call upon Caius. 3.  
When I have had an interview with Caius, I will set out home. 4.  
All to a man were slaughtered by the Gauls. 5. <sup>p</sup> After his soldiers  
had been slain to a man, he himself returned to Rome. 6.  
<sup>p</sup> Having taken Marseilles by storm<sup>77</sup>, he returned home. 7. I am

<sup>w</sup> But *pridem* and *diu* are often interchanged, though only in constructions where the notions of *duration* or of a distant *point of beginning* (respectively) may easily be implied, though the exact word would require *duration* rather than a *point*, or a *point* rather than *duration*.

In '*jampridem cupio*,' &c. the notion of *continuance* is plainly implied : in the corresponding English construction we have it expressed.

*Dūdum* = *diu-dum* (where *dum* restricts the meaning as in *vixdum, nondum*) : *pridem* = *πρὶν δὴ* (*Hartung*) or *πρὶν δὴν*. (D.)

<sup>x</sup> *Velle, cupere*, denote the *inward feeling*.

*Optare, cupere*, denote the *expression* of that feeling.

*Velle* and *optare* denote, respectively, the *calm feeling* and its expression ; *cupere* and *expetere* the *eager, excited feeling* and its expression. *Avēre* expresses a *restless, impatient longing ; gestire a delighted anticipation*. (D.)



longing<sup>p</sup> to take Marseilles, and *obtain a triumph for a victory over the Gauls*. 8. He was whipt with rods several times. 9. He was whipt with rods two' or three' times' at most. 10. There is no doubt *that* Caius is nothing (compared) to Balbus. 11. Time is wanting<sup>p</sup> for finishing that business (of yours). 12. I would wish you to pardon me. 13. Caius to extreme old age *learnt something additional* every day. 14. At last all held their tongues. 15. I am longing to return thanks to Caius. 16. It cannot be denied that death is a rest from labours<sup>44</sup>. 17. Do we not give boys sentences *to learn by heart*<sup>75</sup>? 18. He gives boys the longest sentences he can<sup>93</sup> to be learnt by heart, word for word. 19. They *do* nothing but cry out, that it is all over with Cæsar's army. 20. His industry was *such*<sup>10</sup>, *that* (418) he *learnt* something additional every day.

---

§ 54. REMARKS ON SOME OF THE TENSES (*continued*).

422 (a) The *second person* of the *perfect subjunctive* is used as an imperative in *prohibitions* (with *ne, neve, ne quid, nihil, &c.*).

When the prohibition is directed to a *particular person*, this form is always to be preferred, in prose, to *ne, &c.* with *present subj.*

423 (b) The future is sometimes used, as in *English*, for the *imperative*; in other words, we sometimes express a wish that a person *should act* in a particular way, in the form of an assertion that he *will* so act.

424 (c) *Questions* that do not ask for information, but for *assent*, are to be translated into Latin by the *present* or *imperfect* of the *subjunctive*, according as a present or past time is referred to.

The object of such questions, which may be called '*rhetorical questions*' or '*questions of appeal*,' is, to excite the *same emotion* or produce the *same conviction* in the minds of the persons addressed, that the speaker himself feels or pretends to feel. If they are *negative* in form, the answer or expression of assent will be *affirmative*; and conversely, if not.

425 These '*questions of appeal*' (which usually express *perplexity* or some *emotion*) may be asked by auxiliary verbs in English in various ways: the thing to be considered is, 'does the question require an *answer for information*, or *mere assent* (or *sympathy*)?'

a. [Forms of '*questions of appeal*' in English.] (1) With PRES. SUBJ. *What shall I do?* (when asked in perplexity, implying that *nothing satisfactory* can well be done.) *What am I to do?* *What can I do?* *Why should I relate this?* (ANS. *You need not.*) (2) With IMPERF. SUBJ. *What was I to do?* *What should I have done?* *What ought I to have done?*

- (1) (*Eng.*) He *taught* the children of the principal men. 426  
 (*Lat.*) *Principium liberos erudiebat.* (Imperf. expresses a state continued or an action often repeated in a past space of time.)
- (2) (*Eng.*) You *would have* thought. You *would have* believed.  
 (*Lat.*) *Putares.* *Crederes.*
- (3) (*Eng.*) I remember *reading* that (or, *to have read* that).  
 (*Lat.*) I remember *to read* that (*legere* = *memini*).
- (4) (*Eng.*) It *would be* tedious, endless, &c.  
 (*Lat.*) It *is* tedious, endless, &c. (*longum, infinitum, est*).
- (5) (*Eng.*) It *would have been* better.  
 (*Lat.*) It *was* better (*utilius fuit*\*). *So satius, par, idoneum, &c. fuit.*
- (a) *Quod dubitas, ne feceris, What you have doubts about, don't do. Nihil timueris, Fear nothing.*
- (b) *Si quid acciderit novi, facies ut sciam, If any thing new happens, you will let me know (= let me know).  
 Quis neget, &c.? Who can deny . . . ?*
- (c) *Quid faciam? What am I to do? What can I (or shall I) do?  
 Quid facerem? What was I to do? What ought I to have done? What should I have done?*

Vocabulary 59.

<p><i>A banquet; an entertainment, convivium</i> <sup>b</sup>.  <i>If I may say so without offence, pace tuâ dixerim.</i>  <i>Under favour, bonâ tuâ veniâ.</i>  <i>A favour; pardon, venia.</i>  <i>To pardon, spoken of a superior, veniam dare</i> <sup>c</sup>; also, 'to grant a permission.'</p>	<p><i>To ask pardon for a fault, delicti</i> <sup>d</sup> veniam petere; petiv-, petit-.  <i>Look to that yourself, id ipse vidëris: or tu vidëris.</i>  <i>Let fortune look to, or see to, it, fortuna viderit.</i>  <i>I can scarcely believe, vix crediderim</i> *.</p>
--	--

[Preposition Adversum or Adversus.]

Adversus, or adversum, corresponds almost exactly with our AGAINST in all its uses; but has besides the meanings *over-against* (= opposite) and *towards*.

\* But the inf. perf. follows *memini*, &c. when the speaker does not carry himself back, as it were, having himself *seen, heard*, &c. what he describes.

<sup>a</sup> *Erat* or *fuert* must be used, if the *time* requires those tenses: and the *infn. pres.* follows these expressions. See 130.

<sup>b</sup> *Epulæ* is the most general notion, a *meal*, whether frugal or sumptuous, with only the members of the family or with guests, public or private: *convivium* is a meal with *guests*, a dinner-party: *dapes* a *religious* banquet, a banquet after a *sacrifice*; *epulum* a banquet in honour of some person, or on some festive occasion; *comissatio* a *riotous* party, a *drinking bout*. (D.)

<sup>c</sup> The *ignoscens* pardons from his heart, forgives and forgets; the *veniam dans* passes over as a *favour* what he might justly resent or punish. The friend or equal *ignoscit*: the superior or more powerful person *veniam dat*. (D.)

<sup>d</sup> *Döderlein* thinks that *delictum* is not a *sin of omission* as is generally thought, but that it has the same extent of meaning as *peccatum*; both expressing sins against *prudence* as well as those against *morality*; *errors* as well as *sins*.

\* *Vix crediderim* = *vix credam* = *vix credo*. But this *perf. subj.* does not always stand for the *present indic.*, but sometimes for the *perf.* 'Tum vero ego nequidquam Capitulum servaverim' = *servavi*. (K.)

*Exercise 63.*

[Translate, 'I am pardoned.']

- 429 1. Who *can* deny that a banquet is preparing<sup>o</sup>? 2. There is no one but wishes that a banquet should<sup>n</sup> be prepared. 3. You *would have thought* that a banquet was prepared. 4. What was I to do? —the banquet had been long preparing. 5. The latter says that a banquet is preparing: the former denies (it). 6. He *taught* the boys to *play on the lyre*. 7. Do not prepare a banquet. 8. It *would be* tedious (426) to relate all the evils that have happened to us by our *own* fault. 9. Under favour I would say, my brother, *that* opinion of yours is 'very often' (p. 6. 6) prejudicial. 10. Are they too to be pardoned? 11. It cannot be denied that they have *several times* asked pardon for their fault. 12. Let fortune see to this, since we may not use reason and counsel. 13. I remember their *charging* Caius with *immorality*. 14. I can scarcely believe that these things are contrary to *each other*. 15. They published an edict that *no one*<sup>14</sup> should be *capitally* condemned *without being heard*. 16. Justice is piety towards the gods. 17. Would it not have been better, not to *have* concealed those things from your father? 18. They *do* nothing but mock the poor (420, a). 19. There are some who perceive the *very* least things. 20. Do not fear any battle.

---

<sup>o</sup> In English we have no *present* or *imperf. passive*, except in a few verbs that form these tenses with what is *in form* the *present participle* of the *active* voice, but is probably the *participial substantive*, which used to be governed by the preposition 'on,' or 'an,' shortened into 'a.' Thus 'the ark was *a preparing*' (1 Pet. iii. 20). 'Forty and six years was this temple *in building*' (John ii. 20).  
'Eng. Gram. for Class. Schools,' 163, p. 47.

There is no trusting the *mere look* of a form, as the following table will show:—

- |                 |                             |   |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|---|
| (1) He . . .    | <i>is coming</i> . . .      | (pres. act.)                              |
| (2) The house . | <i>is building</i> . . .    | (pres. pass.)                             |
| (3) This . . .  | <i>is asking</i> (too much) | ('is,' with the participial substantive.) |
| (1) He . . .    | <i>is come</i> . . .        | (perf. act.)                              |
| (2) The house . | <i>is built</i> . . .       | (perf. pass.)                             |
| (3) He . . .    | <i>is loved</i> (by all)    | (pres. pass.)                             |

'Eng. Gram. for Class. Schools,' p. 54.

<sup>f</sup> Indic.: pace tuâ dixerim, &c. being only parenthetical insertions.

§ 55. ON THE PRINCIPAL KINDS OF CONDITIONAL PROPOSITIONS.

INTRODUCTORY REMARKS.] In *conditional* (or *hypothetical*) propositions, the 430 clause with 'if' is the *condition* or *conditional clause*; the other, the *consequence* or *consequent clause*.

Sometimes the consequence is expressed in the indicative mood, no doubt 431 being intimated as to the *existence* or *non-existence* of the condition.

('If this is A, that is B.')

Here we have 'possibility or simple supposition, without any expression of *uncertainty*.'

Sometimes, however, though the consequence is expressed in the indicative, 432 *uncertainty* is expressed as to the existence or not of the condition: it being implied however, that this uncertainty will probably be removed.

('If I have any thing, I will give it you;' and I will see whether I have or not.)

Here we have *uncertainty* with the prospect of decision.

Sometimes the consequence is itself expressed in a *conditional* form: and then 433 the condition is merely contemplated as a *conceivable case*, but no hint is given as to its being likely *actually to occur* or *not*.

('If you were to do this, you would greatly oblige me.')

Here we have (according to *Hermann* and *Buttmann*) '*uncertainty* without any such accessory notion as the prospect of decision.'

Lastly, the consequence may express what *would be doing*, or *would have been* 434 *done*, if a condition that is *actually unrealized* had been realized *just now*, or at some *past* time.

'If I had it, I would now give it to you' (but I have it not).

'If I had had it, I would have given it you' (but I had it not).

(FORMS OF CONDITIONAL PROPOSITIONS.)

- (a) Si quid habet, dat<sup>s</sup>, If he has any thing, he gives it. 435  
 (b) Si quid habeat, dabit, If he has [= should have] any thing, he will give it.  
 (c) Si quid haberet, daret<sup>h</sup>, If he should have [or, were to have] any thing, he would give it.

<sup>s</sup> Also si quid habebit, dabit, &c. See note <sup>i</sup> in next page, and 415.

<sup>h</sup> On this, see 445. It is, to say the least, very uncommon to find a proposition of this form, from which the notion of the *possible realization* of the condition is not excluded. See *Zumpt's* opinion, 419, v.

*Kühner* says, 'si hoc dicas' = ἰὼν τοῦτο λέγεις and τί τοῦτο λέγοις: sometimes, however, the last relation is expressed as in Greek, 'si hoc diceretur, vere diceretur.' Vol. ii. p. 546.

The same form of proposition is used in a different way, when the *imp. subj* (= the Greek *optat.*) is used to express something *frequently occurring in past time*.

'Cæsar—Si peteret per amicitiam patris atque suam, non Quidquam proficeret.'

Hor. Sat. i. 3, 4. (See *Heindorf* ad loc.)

- |     |   |  |   |                                 |
|-----|---|--|---|---------------------------------|
| (d) | { | (1) Si quid <i>haberet</i> , <i>daret</i>      | { | <i>If he had any thing, he</i>  |
|     |   |  |   | <i>would give it.</i>           |
|     |   | (2) Si quid <i>habuisset</i> , <i>dedisset</i> |   | <i>If he had had any thing,</i> |
|     |   |  |   | <i>he would have given it.</i>  |

436 Here we see that the forms (c) and (d) (1) coincide. The form (c) means 'if at any time he *were to have* any thing, he would give it:' but such a sentence, though not necessarily intimating the impossibility of this case occurring, of course *does imply* that it *has not* occurred. It thus runs very near to the meaning of (d) (1), which, besides implying that it *has not*, implies that it *will not* occur.

These two cases are not distinguished in Latin: the *context*, or our *previous knowledge*, must determine whether the case is contemplated as *possible* or *not*.

- 437 (a) *Possibility*, or *simple supposition*, without any expression of *uncertainty*: the *indicative* in both clauses.
- (b) *Uncertainty* with the prospect of *decision*: 'si' with the *subjunctive present* (or perfect); the *indicative*, commonly the future<sup>1</sup>, in the consequence.
- (c) *Uncertainty* without any such *accessory notion* as the prospect of *decision*: the *imperfect subjunctive* clauses.
- (d) *Impossibility*, or belief that the thing is *not so*: the *subjunctive* in both clauses, the *imperfect* for *present* time, and a *continuing consequence*: the *pluperfect* for *past* time.

438 But the *consequence* may refer to *present*, the *condition to past* time; or *vice versâ*.

'If I had received a letter (*accepissem*), I would now read it (*recitarem*).'

'If I at this time wanted any thing (*opus esset*), I would have come (*venissem*) myself.'

439 Since, 'I would give it you (now), if I had it (now)' comes to the same thing as 'I would have given it to you, if I had had any,' the *imperfect subjunctive* in the *consequences* may often be translated by the forms '*would have*' (*could* or *should have*), when it is implied that the condition will not be realized. The *imperf. subj.* in the *condition* will then be translated by the *pluperf. indicative*.

440 (d) When the form '*would have*' is in the consequence, the *pluperfect* in the condition must be in the *subjunctive* in Latin.

441 With the *imperfect* and *pluperfect* 'si' nearly always governs the *subjunctive*.

442 When *si* is found with the *indicative* of these tenses, the *fact is assumed*. The most common case of this kind is with *si quis* or *quid*, which is little more than *whatever, whatever*. *Si turbidas res sapienter ferebas* [as you really did], *tranquilliora læte feres*.—*Stomachabatur senex, si quid asperius dixeram*.

<sup>1</sup> The imperative may stand in the consequence. Of course the *perf.* or *future*, both the *simple* and the *periphrastic future*, may stand in either clause, or both: *si illud mihi beneficium tribueter* (or *tributum erit* or *fuerit*), *magno opere gaudebo*. See 415. In the second class, *tributum sit*, or *fuerit*, from *fuerim*.

Vocabulary 60.

<p><i>Happy, beatus</i><sup>k</sup>.  <i>Much less, nēdum</i><sup>l</sup>: generally after a negative: if a verb follows, it must be in the subj.  <i>Not to say, ne dicam; of what might probably be said with truth.</i>  <i>I do not say, non dico.</i>  <i>I will not say, non dicam.</i>                  (Eng.) No painter.                  (Lat.) Nemo pictor.                  (Eng.) This does not at all terrify me.                  (Lat.) This terrifies me nothing.</p>	<p><i>All, omnes: all together, cuncti, uni-versi</i><sup>m</sup>.  <i>Cautious, cautus.</i>  <i>All taken one by one; each of them singly, singuli.</i>  <i>For instance, verbi causā.</i>  <i>To rise, orior, ortus. See p. 5, note 8.</i>  <i>The Dog-star, Canicula.</i></p>
--	--

Exercise 64.

[Obs. 'If he were to,' &c. = 'if he should,' &c.]

1. If a happy life can be lost', it cannot be happy'. 2. He who 444 does not defend a friend, if he can, sins'. 3. If all things are brought about<sup>n</sup> by fate, nothing can admonish us to be more cautious. 4. Peleus, if he were to hear it, would lift up his hands. 5. Peleus, if he heard it (*but he has not*), would lift up his hands. 6. If any one were to do this, he would lay the king under a great obligation. 7. If any man had done this, he would have laid the king under a great obligation. 8. Even Cæsar could not have done this; much less can you (*note* 1). 9. The boy should be admonished, that he may show himself the more cautious (63, b). 10. All the wisest men<sup>o</sup> are aware that the interest of each and of all is the same'. 11. I can scarcely think him equal to all of them taken one by one, much less to all of them together. 12. If you are equal to them all-together, you will easily conquer them all-taken-one-by-one.

<sup>k</sup> *Faustus* and *prosper* are said of things only, not of persons. 'That which is *prosperum* merely satisfies the hopes and wishes of men, like 'wished for,' 'desired:': the *faustum* refers more to the graciousness of the gods: the *fortunatus* is a lucky person: the *beatus* feels himself happy (as he is) and is contented.' (D.) *Felix* expresses both that which is, and that which makes happy (*beatus*, only what is 'happy'); and relates principally 'to the obtaining, possessing, or enjoying, external goods, and supposes a man's own co-operation.' This latter circumstance distinguishes it from *fortunatus*, which also relates more to particular events.

<sup>l</sup> *Nedum* is sometimes followed by *ut*: *nedum ut ulla vis fieret. Lic. iii. 14.*

<sup>m</sup> *Cuncti* (opposed to *dispersi*), 'all actually united;': *universi* (opposed to *singuli* or *unusquisque*), 'all taken together.'

As meaning 'all,' 'the whole,' in the sing., *totus* represents the thing as originally 'a whole:': *omnis, cunctus, universus*, all represent it as originally made up of certain parts, of which the aggregate is taken. (D.)

<sup>n</sup> *Fiunt*.

13. If Fabius, for instance, was born<sup>p</sup> at the rising of the dog-star, he will not die in the sea. 14. He is not equal<sup>o</sup> to them all taken one by one, not to say to them all together. 15. He is equal to them all taken one by one, I do not say to them all together. 16. No painter would say this (*perf. subj.*). 17. Know that I do not fear these things *at all*. 18. There were some<sup>109</sup> who did not fear these things *at all*.

§ 56. CONDITIONAL PROPOSITIONS (*continued*).

445 (a) Such conditional sentences as would in English have *were to* —, *should*, or *would*, in both clauses, often take the verbs of *both clauses* in the *subjunctive present*.

a. The conditional clause is here a *contemplated possibility* (resembling, in this, the third class; *si haberet, daret*); but the thing contemplated is contemplated as occurring *now*, and therefore often agrees with the second class (*si habeam, dabo*), in implying a prospect of decision.

Hence, if a contemplated case is contemplated as *occurring now*, or considered *simply without any reference to time*, the *present subjunctive* should be preferred to the *imperfect*: and when the possibility of its occurring now is to be *strongly intimated*, the present is the only proper form.

(1) Tu si hic sis, aliter sentias.

*If you were here, you would think differently.*

(2) Tu si hic esses, aliter sentireas.

*If you were here (which you neither are nor will be), you would think differently:*

(or) If you *had been* here, you *would have thought* differently.

β. From the ambiguity of the form '*si quid haberet, daret*,' the subj. *pres.* should probably be preferred, whenever it is *not* intended to intimate that the condition is *improbable* or *impossible*. The *pres. subj.* may be used of suppositions *really impossible*, if it is not the speaker's object to intimate this: '*Si esset hodie ab inferis Lycurgus, gaudeat*,' &c. *Liv.* 39, 37.

446 The three conditional tenses of the *subjunctive*, are *scriberem*, *scripsissem*, and *scripturus essem*.

447 '*Scripsissem*' and '*scripturus essem*' are both used to express our '*would have written*.' But '*scripsissem*' intimates that the thing *would certainly have happened*: *scripturus essem*, that it *would probably have happened*, because it was so *intended* or *arranged*.

(b) Thus in: '*he would have slept* (= *he intended to have slept*, and therefore we may suppose *would have slept*) there, if he had gone on,' *he would have slept* should be translated by the *part. in rus* with *esset*<sup>p</sup>.

<sup>o</sup> Impar est.

<sup>p</sup> So also in the third class, '*si quid haberet, daturus esset*' is correct, where

But the *indicative* (*erat, fuit*) is far more common, when the intention is to be *positively expressed*. Hence *scripturus fuit* makes a nearer approach to a positive statement than *scripturus fuisset*. The same remarks hold good of the passive voice: i. e. *scribendum fuit* is more common than *scribendum fuisset*.

(c) The *imperfect* and *pluperfect* of the *indicative* are often used 448 instead of the same tenses of the subjunctive, in the consequent clause. (It is then better to let the *consequent* precede the *conditional* clause.)

(d) The particle *si* is occasionally omitted; the verb of the conditional clause 449 should then begin the sentence.

(a) In quo si tantum eum prudentem *dicam*, minus quam debeam 450 *prædicem*, *In which* if I were *only* to call *him* prudent, I should commend *him* less highly than I ought.

(b) Conclave, ubi *erat mansurus*, si ire perrexisset, *The chamber*, in which he would have lodged, *if* he had continued *his* journey. Si Cn. Pompeius privatus esset hoc tempore, tamen *erat mittendus*, *If Pompey were now a private individual, he would nevertheless be the person who ought to be sent* [or, *if Pompey had now been (439) a private individual, he would nevertheless have been the person to be sent*].

(c) *Perieram*, nisi tu *accurrisses*?, I had perished (= *should have perished*) *if you had not run to my assistance*.

(d) *Dedisses* huic animo par corpus, *fecisset*, quod optabat, Had you given *this* mind a body like itself, *he would have done what he desired* \*.

Vocabulary 61.

But *if*; *if however*, *sin*; *sin autem*.  
But *if not*, *sin minus* †.  
Unless; *if not*, *nisi* †.

Although; *though*; *etsi*; *etiamsi* †—fol- 451  
lowed by *tamen*, *yet*. Sometimes *tamen*  
precedes *etsi*, when the unexpected

*daturus esset* = 'he would be prepared to give.' Krüger: who quotes Tac. H. ii. 77, 'cujus filium adoptaturus essem, si ipse imperarem.'

‡ A conditional clause often refers to a consequence implied: 'Pons Sublicius iter *pene* hostibus dedit, *ni* unus vir fuisset' = (*et dedisset*) *ni* unus vir fuisset.

\* As in English, an *imperative* is often used in a lively manner to express a condition that will be immediately followed by its consequence: e.g. *Tolle hanc conditionem, luctum sustuleris*, Do away with *this* condition, and you will (at once) have done away with our grief.

† Or, *sin secus, sin aliter*. *Sin* = *si nē* ('if not').

‡ 'Your memory will be weakened *nisi* eam exerceas,' implies that *if you exercise* it, it will *not* be lessened. But from *si non* you might not infer this, but only draw the strict conclusion that if you do *not* exercise it, it will be lessened. The *si*, in *si non*, is the conjunction, the *non* belongs to the verb or other word in the proposition.

‡ The compounds of 'si' follow the same rule as *si*: With the *pres.*, *perf.*, and



nature of the event to be described, is to be made more prominent; for *tamen etsi, tametsi*, is found, and the *tamen* is sometimes repeated in the principal clause.—Although may also be translated by *quamquam*<sup>u</sup>, *quamvis*, and *licet*.

Although indeed, *quamquam*, suggested by a former statement: it has no influence on the mood.

(Eng.) Even this is not just unless it is voluntary.

(Lat.) Even this is so (only) just, if it is voluntary.

(*Ita justum est . . . si est voluntarium*<sup>v</sup>: *ita here* = on that condition or supposition.)

☞ 'But' (= *except, unless*) after a negative is *nisi*, or (if it stands before a substantive) the prepos. *præter*.

Unless indeed, *nisi forte*; *nisi vero*. Power, *potestas*, of might with right, and therefore the proper word for conceded power; *potentia*, of actual, inherent power.

The thing is so, *res ita se habet*.

To put himself in their power, *potestatem sui facere*.

To be in our own power, in *nostrâ esse potestate*.

### Exercise 65.

[How is 'that' translated after 'it follows!' (83).]

- 452 1. If you were to ask me what is the nature of the gods, I should perhaps answer nothing (445). 2. If the thing were so, I should rejoice (445). 3. If there be nothing in our own power, let us go away. 4. If they had remained, he would have put himself in their power. 5. If I may carry all my property with me, I will depart. 6. If this is not true, it follows that it is false. 7. I fear this is not true. 8. He had perished, if he had put himself in their power. 9. We must cultivate eloquence, though some make a perverse use of it. 10. Nothing would be in our own power, if the thing were so. 11. The Stoics say that no man is divine, but the wise man. 12. Who can deny (424) that the most hidden snares are always the most difficult to avoid? 13. I love my enemy, more than you envy your

*fut.* they take the *indicative* unless the thing is to be asserted *contingently* and *doubtfully*; with the *imperf.* and *pluperf.* they generally take the *subj.*; though here too the *indicative* comes in, when they introduce, not a *supposition*, but a *fact*. '*Tametsi a duce deserebantur*,' Cæsar. '*Si*,' like our '*if*,' is sometimes used for '*whether*;' '*Tentata res est, si primo impetu capi Ardea posset*.'

<sup>u</sup> *Quamquam* (*quam*, '*how*,' strengthened by doubling) is '*however much*,' but expresses '*however much a thing really exists*,' or *can*, or *must* exist. It therefore takes the *indic.* when the thing is not to be represented as doubtful. *Quamvis* (or *quantumvis*) is '*however much a thing may be conceived possible*,' and therefore takes the *subj.* *Licet* is no particle, but an impersonal verb, and may occur in any tense. '*Licet recte agas, tamen*' &c. '*Act as right as you please*, yet &c. '*Detrahat . . . fortuna licebit*.'—*Quamvis* = '*although*' (as in *Nep. quamvis carebat nomine*; with *indic.*) belongs, generally speaking, to a later age.

<sup>v</sup> So, '*Patres decreverunt ut, quum populus regem jussisset, id sic ratum esset si Patres auctores fierent*.' *Liv.* i. 17.

friend. 14. Caius is more brave than prudent<sup>w</sup>. 15. I don't know whether<sup>z</sup> any thing better than friendship' has been given to man by the immortal gods. 16. Though these things are contrary to each other, we must nevertheless use them. 17. Who will deny (424), that these things are of importance to us? 18. Though the thing were so, yet this *could not be said without impiety*. 19. *I almost think* that these things are not in our own power. 20. If this be true, I shall rejoice; but if not, I must bear it with *resignation*. 21. This itself is *not just unless* it is voluntary.—22. If you had not run to our assistance, we must have shed our blood for our country.

§ 57. CONDITIONAL PROPOSITIONS IN DEPENDENT SENTENCES.

- (a) *Possibility* without any expression of *uncertainty*. 453

Si quid *habet*, *dat*.  
*Dicit se*, si quid *habeat*, *dare*.  
*Dixit se*, { si quid *haberet*, *dare*.  
 { si quid *habeat*, *dare*. (See 468, and examples.)

- (b) *Uncertainty* with the prospect of *decision*.

Si quid *habeam*, *dabo*.  
*Dicit se*, si quid *habeat*, *daturum*<sup>x</sup>.  
*Dixit se*, { si quid *haberet*, *daturum*.  
 { si quid *habeat*, *daturum*. (See 468.)

- (c) *Uncertainty* without any such accessory notion.

Si quid *haberet*, *daret*.  
*Dixit se*, si quid *haberet*, *daturum esse*.

(Or *daturum fore*, if the independent proposition would be *daturus essem*. See 447.)

<sup>w</sup> Grotefend distinguishes between three forms of comparison, thus:—

*Caius fortior est, quam prudentior* = *Caius is, indeed, both brave and prudent; but yet more brave than prudent*.

*Caius magis fortis est, quam prudens* = *Caius is just as brave, as he is not prudent*.

*Caius fortis est, quam prudens* = *Caius is brave, but not at all prudent* (where *potius* may be supplied). The two last forms belong to late writers, especially Tacitus.

<sup>x</sup> OBS. The *conditional* forms of the infinitive are *scripturum esse* (*pres.*); *scripturum fuisse* (*perf.*); *scripturum fore* (*fut.*).

Of these *scripturum esse* is also a mere *future infinitive*; the two others are *only conditional forms*.



apparently no difference of meaning ; but not the *imperfect* for the *present*². (*Krüger*.)

For the *fut. perf.* in the *condition*, the *perf. subjunctive* is used 456 after a *present* or *future* tense, the *pluperf.* or *perfect subj.* after a *past* tense. *Si id fecerint (fut. perf.)*, longe iis fraternum nomen populi Romani *aberit*. *Dicit*, si id *fecerint*, longe iis fraternum nomen populi Romani *abfuturum*. *Dixit*, si id *fecissent* (or *fecerint*), longe iis fraternum nomen populi Romani *abfuturum*.

Oss. 1. Since the *condition* always has its verb in the *subjunctive* mood when it is a *dependent* sentence, and this *subjunctive* may be in any tense (since *habeo* becomes *habeam*; *habebat*, *haberet*; *habui*, *habuerim*; *habueram*, *habuissem*; *habuero*, *habuerim* or *habuissem*), it follows that the *form of the condition* will not itself enable us to refer it to its proper class. We must therefore look principally to the *form of the infinitive*, though even this, as the examples above show, will not *always* enable us to decide the point.

Oss. 2. So in those forms of the *fut. perf.* and *perf. subj.* that are *identical*, the one with the other, we must have recourse to the verb of the *consequence*, to assist us in determining the tense. Thus in: *si opulentum fortunatumque defenderis*, in uno illo aut in liberis *manet* gratia, the *present manet* shows that it is the *perf. subj.*; but in, *quod si convenerit*, tum demum *decebit*, ingredi in sermonem, the *fut. decebit* proves that *convenerit* is the *fut. perf.* (K.)

*Vocabulary 62.*

<i>Remain</i> , remānēre, mans-.	<i>To draw up his army in three lines</i> , 457 <i>triplicem aciem instruere.</i> <i>To engage</i> , configere, flix-, flict-. <i>To perform</i> what one has promised, <i>servare</i> , observare, or <i>efficere.</i> <i>Either—or</i> , aut <sup>a</sup> —aut; vel—vel; sive —sive. <i>Or</i> , aut; vel; or the <i>enclitic</i> ve.
<i>To confer benefits upon</i> , conferre, tūl-, lāt.—in, with <i>acc.</i>	
<i>To be intimate with</i> , familiariter uti; is-.	
<i>To draw up an army</i> , instruere aciem; strux-, struct-.	

² *Grotefend* observes, that *Cæsar* generally retains the *subj. pres.* or *perf.* (after a *past* tense) when those tenses would stand in direct narration: but that *Cic.* and *Liv.* generally turn them into the *imperf.* or *pluperf.* See 418.

³ ‘*Aut*’ expresses a *difference* in the things: ‘*vel*’ a difference in the *expression*. (Z.) *Vel* is the imperative from *velle*, as *fer* from *ferre*: its proper meaning therefore is, ‘*if you please*’: so that ‘*A vel B*’ was originally ‘*A or, if you like, B*’; that is, ‘*A or B: one or the other, no matter which.*’ Hence, its meaning ‘*even*’: *vel maximus*, ‘the very greatest, if you please.’ ‘*Aut*’ is used in the case of *opposite* notions, when if one is, the other is *not*.

⁴ ‘*Vel*’ should be used when the notions are not *opposite* in themselves; especially when only *some* of the possible suppositions are mentioned. It very often evidently retains its original meaning, of expressing *indifference* as to which notion is taken; and should always be used when such *indifference* is to be expressed. Thus, ‘The nobles can *either corrupt or correct* the morals of a state,’ *vel* *corrumpere*, *vel* *corrigere*, for they can do *which they please*. It sometimes=*both—and*. ‘He was his equal, *vel* *moribus vel fortunâ.*’

*Ve* (abridged from *vel*) commonly unites single words, not propositions: it is often appended to *si*, *ne* (*sive* = *seu*; *neve* = *neve*).

*Sive—sive*; *seu—seu* = ‘*either—or*,’ ‘*whether—or*,’ when it is to be left *doubtful* which of two statements is correct, or which of two terms is applicable

At' when the thing was done not *in* but *near*, should be translated by *apud*, or *ad* with *acc.*

The battle *apud* Salamina. 'Apud' is found in later writers even for 'in.')

*Exercise 66.*

458 [How is *can deny* to be translated in a 'rhetorical question' or 'question of appeal?' (425.)]

1. He *said*, that if a happy life could be lost, it could *not* be happy.
2. He has long appeared to me somewhat disturbed<sup>97</sup>.
3. Who can deny, that some are borne one way, *some another?*
4. He answered that Peleus, if he had heard it, would have lifted up his hands.
5. He answered that he could have<sup>47</sup> no friendship with these, if they remained in Gaul.
6. It is certain, that if any one had done this, he would have *laid the king under a great obligation*.
7. It is certain that, if any one does this, he will lay the king under a great obligation.
8. If any one does this<sup>98</sup>, he will have deserved well of the state.
9. I fear *that nobody* will be permitted to be neutral.
10. I fear that he has *not* concealed from you the discourse of T. Ampius.
11. (As to) what is best to be done (*sup.*) do you' see to that (428).
12. I will strive to prove myself grateful (*memor*) for the benefits, *of which* you have conferred *very many*<sup>91</sup> upon me.
13. They *say*, that the rule of expediency is *not* the same *as* that of honour<sup>12</sup>.
14. Having drawn up his army in three lines, he engaged with Mardonius.
15. <sup>9</sup>He drew up his army, and engaged with the Gauls at Geneva.
16. There were some<sup>109</sup> who lifted up their hands.—
17. If he has promised (415) any thing, he will perform it.
18. He answered, that if he had promised any thing, he would perform it.

§ 58. ON OBLIQUE, OR INDIRECT, NARRATION.

459 When a person has to report a speech, he may do this in two ways. He may either put into the speaker's mouth the exact words that he really used; or he may only state the *substance* of what he said under a change of form.

(a) In the first way of narrating (which is called 'direct narration'), the speech is reported in the first person. 'Caesar said: *I will come.*' 'You said: *I will come.*' 'I said: *I will come.*'

(b) In the second way of narrating (which is called *indirect* or *oblique* narration: '*oratio obliqua*'), we use in English a subordinate sentence introduced by '*that*' (which however is sometimes *omitted*). 'Caesar said, *that he* would come.' 'You said, *that you* would come.' 'I said, *that I* would come.'

460 (a) In *oblique narration*, the principal verb or verbs will, in Latin, be of the infinitive mood.

---

(the second being an *alias* of the first). Crombie observes that *sive—sive* should generally be used when '*either* (or *whether*)—or' may be turned into '*be it—or be it.*'

- (b) All the subordinate clauses that express the *original speaker's words* or *opinions* will have their verbs in the subjunctive mood.

461 Hence conjunctions and adverbs that go with the indicative in *direct* narration, go with the subjunctive in indirect or *oblique* narration <sup>b</sup>.

(Thus in the example (453, a), 'Si quid habet, dat,' becomes, when reported, 'Dicebant Caium, si quid haberet, dare.')

- (c) When a speech is reported in *oblique narration*, (1) the verb or participle on which the infinitive depends, is often omitted: (2) questions for an *answer* are asked in the *subjunctive*; *rhetorical* questions, or questions of *appeal*, generally\* in the *infinitive* (with *interrogative pronouns* and *adverbs*): (3) the *imperative* in *direct* becomes the *subjunctive* in *indirect* narration.

(d) The subjunctive being thus employed to express the *speech* or *sentiment*, not 461 of the speaker or writer, but of the person *about whom* he is speaking or writing, naturally came to be used in constructions where the sentiments of another were *less formally* reported. Thus in the fable: 'The vulture invited the little birds to a party,' 'quod illis daturus erat' would mean that he really *was* going to give them the party: but 'quod illis daturus esset' would only mean that *he said* he *was* going to give them a party. So with the verbs of *accusing*, the charge stands with *quod* in the *subjunctive*, because the *accusers asserted* that the crime had been committed: the *indicative* would make the historian or speaker assert the truth of the charge.

[Direct.]

462

- (a) (b) Quantum possum (or potero), te ac tua vestigia sequar,  
As far as I can, I will follow you and your footsteps.

[Oblique.]

Clamavit se, quantum posset, eum atque ejus vestigia secuturum, He cried out that he, as far as he could, would follow him and his footsteps.

- (c) (1) Legatos ad Cæsarem mittunt: ' sese paratos esse portas aperire,' &c. They send ambassadors to Cæsar: (saying) that they are ready to open the gates, &c.  
(2) Interrogabat: ' cur paucis centurionibus paucioribus tri-

<sup>b</sup> OBS. 462 As the subjunctive has no future, the *future* and *future perfect* become respectively the *pres.* and *perfect* (see 456) of the *subjunct.* Senties—quum ages: sensurum esse, quum agas.—Faciemus, quum imperaveris: facturos esse, quæ imperaverit (from imperaverim).

If the speech is narrated in *past* time (is introduced, that is, by a *past* tense) the *fut.* and *fut. perf.* will become the *imperf.* and *pluperf.* in the oblique narration, though the *pres.* and *perf.* may remain by 455.

\* Not quite always: thus Cæs. B. G. 5, 29, postremo quis hoc sibi persuaderet? &c.

bunis . . . *obedirent*<sup>c</sup>? *Quando ausuros (esse) exposcere remedia, nisi* &c.? *He asked, 'why they obeyed a few centurions and still fewer tribunes? When (said he) will you dare to demand redress, if'* &c.

(3) (Hirri necessarii fidem Pompeii implorarunt;) *præstaret, quod proficiscenti recepisset, Make good (said they) what you promised him when he was setting out.*

(d) *Socrates accusatus est, quod corrumperet juventutem, Socrates was accused of corrupting the young men.*

### Vocabulary 63.

[The Preposition Apud governing acc.]

- 463 APUD, (1) WITH = *in the house of; in the mind, or estimation of; amongst:* Cyrus *in Xenophon, apud Xenophonem.*  
 (2) *In the presence of:* (3) IN = *in an author's writings:* (4) AT, of place. See 457. *To speak in the presence of the people, lōqui apud populum.*  
 He was *with me, apud me.* *Yesterday, heri.*  
*To have great influence with, multum valēre apud.* *To-morrow, cras.*

### Exercise 67.

- 464 1. Must we not all die? 2. He cried out, 'that he was ready to shed his blood for his country: must we \* not all die (he asked)? should not an honourable death be preferred to a disgraceful life?'—3. Almost all (of them) visited Balbus; 'Keep (said they) your word<sup>d</sup>: finish the business which you undertook to finish.'—4. 'What is this<sup>e</sup>,' said he, 'O Tribunes? are you going to overthrow the state under the guidance of Appius Herdonius?'—5. P. Valerius came to the Tribunes, crying out, 'What is this? are you going to overthrow the state under the guidance of App. Herdonius?'—6. He cried out, 'that he called the Quirites to arms: that he would dare against the tribunes what the founder of his family had dared against the kings.'—7. What was I to do? all were crying out, that it was all over with the army. 8. The Roman people had not<sup>47</sup> the same fortune at home *that* (they had) in the field. 9. My (friend) Balbus has more influence with me than *any* other person. 10. Socrates in Plato *says* that the soul is *not* mortal.

<sup>c</sup> As 'questions for answer' may be of a very *objurgatory* character, it is often indifferent whether the question be put in the *infn.* or the *subjunct.* Thus in *Liv.* vii. 15. '*Ubi illi clamores sint arma poscentium?*' &c. '*ubi illos clamores esse . . .*' might have stood equally well.

\* 'We,' 'you,' must be turned into 'they.'

<sup>d</sup> Compare (c) (3).

<sup>e</sup> *Quid hoc rei est!*—This sentence is to be in *direct* narration.

§ 59. OBLIQUE NARRATION (*continued*). MOOD IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES. DEPENDENCE ON AN INFINITIVE.

(a) In the *oratio obliqua*, even when dependent on a *past tense*, 465 the *present* (and *perfect*) *subj.* are used when the clause expresses a *general truth*, independent of the judgment of the speaker, and when the *reporter of the speech* wishes to make the sentiment *his own*<sup>f</sup>.

(b) Remarks that are really the *reporter's* (i. e. were *not made* by 466 the speaker) are, of course, in the *indicative*. The indicative is also used by the *Historians*, when the writer wishes to intimate that what *is said* is *really so*, and not merely *so stated* by the speaker.

(c) The subordinate clauses inserted in propositions whose verbs 467 are in the *infin.* or *subjunctive*, must have their verbs in the *subjunctive*, when they form a part of the whole meaning of the proposition<sup>g</sup>.

If such a clause only limits or describes a *particular term* of the proposition, without *fairly making a part of it*, the verb will be in the *indicative*.

(d) In sentences dependent on an *infinitive*, the *pres.* or *perf.* 468 *subj.* are found, where the general rule requires the *imperf.* or *pluperf.*; but *not vice versâ*.

In other words, the *pres.* and *perf. subj.* may stand (instead of the *imperf.* or *pluperf.*) after the *perf. infinitive*; and also after the *pres.* or *fut. infinitive* when they depend on a *past tense*.

- (a) Cicero dicebat: tria esse omnino genera quæ in discepta- 469  
tionem cadere possint: quid fiat, factum, futurumve sit,  
Cicero used to say that there were only three kinds of ques-  
tions that could fall into controversy: what was doing, what  
had been done, and what would happen.
- (b) Themistocles certiozem eum fecit, id agi, ut pons, quem ille  
in Hellesponto fecerat, dissolveretur, Themistocles sent him  
word, that it was intended to break down the bridge which he  
had made over the Hellespont.
- (c) Indignum videbatur populum Romanum ab iisdem Etruscis  
obsideri, quorum sæpe exercitus fuderit, It seemed an indig-  
nity that the Roman people should be besieged by those very  
Etruscans, whose armies they had often routed.

<sup>f</sup> "Potest quis aliorum sententiam vel ita referre, ut tota ex eorum etiamnum pendeat mente, vel etiam tanquam *tritam* proponere atque usu confirmatam, quamque ipse jam fecerit suam. Prior si locum habet ratio, imperfectum conjunctivi poni solet: si posterior *præsens*." Wagner, ap. Krüger.

<sup>g</sup> If, that is, they form an essential part of the leading proposition, being included in the *object*, the *purpose*, or the *circumstances supposed*. (Z.)



Certum est hominum causâ factum esse mundum, quæque in eo *sint*<sup>h</sup> omnia, *It is certain, that the world and every thing in it was made for man.*

(d) With *infin. prez.* or *fut.*

(1) *Dixit* (he said); *dicebat*; *dixerat*; *dicturus erat*.

se	{	intelligere	{	quid ageret (or agat) hostis <sup>l</sup> .
		intellecturum esse		quid egresset (or egerit) hostis.
				quid acturus esset (or acturus sit) hostis.

(2) And (after any tense of *dico*, &c.)

se intellexisse	{	quid ageret (or agat) hostis.
		quid egresset (or egerit) hostis.
		quid acturus esset (acturus sit) hostis.

### Vocabulary 64.

[Prepositions *Erga*, *Inter*, *Ob*, *Per*.]

470

**ERGA**, acc.: TOWARDS (of favorable dispositions<sup>k</sup>).

**INTER**<sup>l</sup>, acc.: BETWEEN: AMONG: in the midst of, during.

*On the journey (inter viam).* They love me and each other (et nos et inter se amant).

**OB**, acc.: on account of. *Ob oculos, before my eyes.*

**PER**, acc. THROUGH (of place, time, and means). *By* (of the secondary agent<sup>m</sup> by whom we do any thing; and in adjurations, in which it is separated from its noun by pronouns—'per ego te,' &c.). *By the leave of* (digladientur per me licet: for anything I care).

*Per se* = by him, &c., alone (ipse per se), for its own sake: naturally: of itself, &c.

*Per* in *permagnus, pergratus*, &c. is often separated from the adjective: 'per mihi gratum feceris.'

471 (a) (*Eng.*) To make a bridge over a river (See Ex. 469 (b)).

(*Lat.*) To make a bridge in a river.

(b) (*Eng.*) The town in question.

(*Lat.*) The town, *de quo agitur*.

### Exercise 68.

472 [Translate the clauses marked thus (+) both as the *speaker's*, and as the *narrator's*.]

1. Catilina informs (them) that he had sent forward Manlius to

<sup>h</sup> 'Tantum rerum ubertatem natura largita est, ut ea, quæ gignuntur, donata consulto nobis videantur.' Here *ea quæ gignuntur* are the actual productions of nature. (Z.)

<sup>l</sup> *Krüger*: who observes, that the use of the *present*, &c. may often be explained by the purpose of the writer to intimate that what is said, *still* and *generally holds good*; and that sometimes there may be what *Hermann* calls a '*mutatio incertarum sententiarum in certas*:' but that in many other passages no reason can be discovered for the employment of the *pres.* and *perf.* rather than the *imperf.* and *pluperf.*

<sup>k</sup> Rarely of hostile dispositions. (Z.)

<sup>l</sup> *Inter* sometimes stands between two substantives; 'Fœsulæ inter Arretiumque.'

<sup>m</sup> For instance, to send a letter 'by a slave' (*per servum*).

the great body of men<sup>n</sup> † whom he had prepared to take arms<sup>72</sup>. 2. They warn them to depart from all the islands † which are between Italy (*Italia*) and Africa. 3. He had contracted to build<sup>73</sup> a bridge over the river<sup>o</sup> Danube (*Ister, tri*, p. 7, 9, *a*). 4. He answered, that custom, † which is a second nature, *was on our side*. 5. Let them go away for any thing I care. 6. He answered that he feared the waves, † which were *such as* he had never seen before. 7. He answered that you, † such is your temperance<sup>p</sup>, were already well. 8. He said that he was the first who<sup>s</sup> accomplished that journey. 9. They cry out, 'Why are these (questions) asked? (460, *c*) who is so powerful as to be able to perform all he wishes?' (68, *d*.)

- (a) The *acc.* and *infin.* with *nē* in the oblique narration resembles, 473 but must be distinguished from, its use to express emotion in direct narration<sup>q</sup>.  
 (a) *Adeone hominem infelicem esse quemquam, ut ego sum!*  
*That any man living should be so unfortunate as I am!*

*Exercise 69.*

[In what mood are *questions of appeal* asked in oblique narration? (460, *c*.)] 474

1. That you should be able (*inf. pres.*) to bear this! 2. That you should say this! 3. He said that we ought not to learn many things, but much. 4. They cried out, 'Could any man bear this? Would she never see them without calling them betrayers of their country (88, *c*)? Let her learn (they said) to govern her tongue.' —5. I *fear*, that *nobody* will *prefer a capital charge against him*. 6. They say that Caius has been accused of bribery; which (36, *b*) I shall not easily be induced to believe<sup>r</sup>. 7. He *says*, that he has *not* received the letters which I sent him (32, *c*). 8. Who will deny, that it is the duty of a Christian to keep his word? 9. Who will

<sup>n</sup> Ad eam multitudinem.

<sup>o</sup> 'Rivus,' *brook*; 'fluvius,' *river*; 'amis,' *a broad deep river*. 'Flumen' (properly the '*stream*;' flu-imen) is also used as a general term for '*river*' (being used here of the *Danube*); especially when there is reference to its *stream*.

<sup>p</sup> In a sentence of this kind, consider whether the *reporter* of the answer should be represented as *making it his own*: if so, the *subj. present* should be used by 465 (*a*).

<sup>q</sup> For which *ut* with the *subj.* is also found: *Tene ut ulla res frangat? Tibi ego ut adverser?*

<sup>r</sup> OBS. *Credo*, which takes a *dat.* of the *person* believed, takes an *acc.* of the *thing* believed: and though '*I am believed*' is '*mihī creditur*,' it must be '*ego credor*' (*tu crederis*, &c.) when an *infin.* immediately follows (*I am believed to have done this*).

deny, that it is wise<sup>99</sup> to have death always before one's eyes? 10. They replied, that they sent the letter *by* a slave. 11. They answer, that the town in question is two hundred (Roman) miles from Rome. 12. I had perished, *if* you had *not* succoured me.— 13. They all cried out, 'why did he thus delay? let him perform what he had promised.'

### § 60. 'QUI' WITH SUBJUNCTIVE.

- 475 The verb of a relative clause is in the *Indicative*, when what is asserted in it, is stated as a property *actually belonging* to a *particular (really existing) object*.  
 476 But whenever the relative clause does not describe an *individual object*, but only refers it (or *them*) to a *particular class* by a mark *common to all the class*, *qui* is followed by the subjunctive. When, for instance, for '*who*,' '*which*,' we might substitute '*of such a kind as to*,' '*such that*,' &c. *qui* governs the subjunctive.

(a) *Qui* with the indicative may, indeed, refer an *object* to a class, but the *conceived* object is then *described as* one that really exists. The relative clause with its antecedent is then no *mere conception*, but a conception *supposed to be realized*. Thus: *nullâ re conciliare facilius benevolentiam multitudinis possunt ii, qui reipublicæ præsumt, quam abstinentiâ et continentia (Cic.)*. Here *ii qui reipublicæ præsumt* are indeed '*any* who belong to the class of rulers,' but they are *spoken of* as those *particular persons* who are *really* at the head of their respective states.

#### Vocabulary 65.

- 477 [Phrases after which the clause with *qui* is generally *indefinite*, and therefore has its verb in the subjunctive.]

*Some men; or, there are some who* (sunt qui). *There are not wanting men who* (non desunt, qui).

[NEGATIVES and VIRTUALLY NEGATIVES.]

*Who is there?* (quis est!) *How few there are* (quotusquisque est! used interrogatively and in the singular: i. e. how many does each man who belongs to the class make! Quotus est! being 'how many does he make?'). *So nemo est; nihil est; an quisquam ullus? &c.*

[REPERIO, INVENIO, HABEO.]

*There are found persons who* (reperiuntur, inveniuntur, qui\*). *You may find* (reperias, invenias, qui &c.).

\* OBS. With *sum, reperio, habeo, &c.* *qui* with the indicative is found, when it expresses *particular* objects in the most definite way. This is naturally oftener the case when *qui* relates to the *subject*, which is mostly a *particular object* (or *objects*), than when it relates to the *predicate*, which is generally *some class* in which the subject is contained. *Tum primum reperta sunt, quæ per tot annos rempublicam exedere*: not 'there were found evils which preyed on' &c. but 'the evils which have *actually* preyed on the state for so many years, were then found for the first time.'

[Nihil est, quod &c. nihil habeo, quod &c.]

*We have reason to rejoice* (est quod gaudeamus, = *there is something of such a kind that we should rejoice* on account of it. 'Quod' as an acc. neut. pronoun (195, f) going with gaudeo). *What is there that you can complain of?* (quid est, quod queri possit!) *We have no reason to desire* — (non est, quod desideremus —). *You have no reason to hurry* (nihil est, quod festines).

(a) (Eng.) I have nothing to accuse old age of. 478  
(Lat.) I have nothing which I may accuse old age (quod incusem senectutem).

(b) (Eng.) A pen to write with.  
(Lat.) A pen with which one may write.

(c) (Eng.) Men who abound in silver, in gold, (and) in estates.  
(Lat.) Men who abound in silver, who in gold, who in estates.

(d) (Eng.) Men who abound neither in silver, nor gold, nor estates.  
(Lat.) Men who do not abound in silver, not in gold, not in estates.

Vocabulary 66.

To drive away, abigere, ēg-, act-.

Stick, bacillum †.

Bird, avis<sup>u</sup>.

Put; lay down or aside, pōnere<sup>v</sup>, pōsu-, pōsūt-.

To cross over, trajicere, jēc-, ject-.

To allow it to happen, committere, ut 479  
with subj.

To be on the point of, in eo esse, ut with  
subj.; the esse to be impersonal.

Jewel, gemma.

Unburied, inhumatus.

Exercise 70.

1. Diogenes ordered himself to be cast forth unburied. Then<sup>w</sup> 480 his friends said: 'To the birds and beasts?' 'By no means,' said he, 'but put<sup>x</sup> a stick by me, to drive them away with (478).'  
2. There are some who think, that Caius is pretending. 3. There were some who thought, that Caius was pretending. 4. There are not wanting persons, who deny that the rule of expediency is the same as that of honour. 5. There are some who think, that Balbus has deserved well of us. 6. There are found some, who say, that we should not cultivate virtue. 7. It is incredible how weary I am of life. 8. We must cross over that sea which (48) you call ocean. 9. There are some who think, that the best thing we have (53) will be lost. 10. They cry out, that we shall lose the best thing we have. 11. We have no reason to hurry. 12. I have nothing to

† A diminutive of baculum.

<sup>u</sup> Volucres are all 'winged creatures,' insects included. Avis is the general name for 'bird:' 'ales' is the word in poetry and the language of the augurs for the larger birds, especially the eagle. In augury, alites were the birds whose flight, ovesines the birds whose song or cry, was prophetic. (D.)

<sup>v</sup> Ponere aliquid, 'to lay down' a thing; 'to get it out of our hands;' 'to get rid of it.' Locare and collocare are 'to put a thing in its right place:' 'to place' advisedly for some purpose.

<sup>w</sup> Then { = at that time, tum.  
= after that, inde, deinde.  
= therefore, igitur, itaque.

<sup>x</sup> Ponitote. The forms of the imperative in to, tote, nto, are used in solemn commands and prohibitions, such as laws, wills, &c.

accuse you of (478). 13. You have reason to rejoice, that you have *concealed* these things *from* your father. 14. You will scarcely find any one to believe this. 15. I will not *allow it to happen*, that I should seem to have been wanting to myself. 16. He was on the point of being killed. 17. Had you rather be like one<sup>y</sup> (212, x) of these persons who abound in gold, in silver, in jewels, or (like) C. Fabricius, who had none (*nihil*) of those things? 18. How few there are, who have death always before their eyes!

§ 61. 'QUI' WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE (*continued*).

481 *Qui* takes the subjunctive, when it introduces the *ground* of the assertion in the antecedent clause.

(a) Here there is some difficulty in determining whether *qui* is used *definitely* or not. '*He was laughed at by all the rest, who did not acknowledge these faults to belong to Socrates;*' this seems definite enough, but it is in the Latin, '*qui non agnoscerent.*'

(β) When therefore for '*who*' may be substituted '*for he*' (*she, it, &c.*<sup>z</sup>) the verb should be the subjunctive.

482 For *qui* alone, *utpōte qui*, *quippe qui*<sup>a</sup>, *ut qui* are also used, *generally* with the subjunctive.

483 *Qui* takes the *subjunctive*, when it has the force of *ut* with a *personal* or *possessive* pronoun<sup>b</sup>.

It has this force after (1) *dignus, indignus, idoneus, &c.*

(2) *tam, talis, ejusmodi, is (such), &c.*

(3) comparatives with *quam*.

(4) *is sum*<sup>c</sup> (= *talis sum*), '*I a man to.*'

(5) *quis sum?*

(6) when it expresses a *purpose*.

(a) When *qui* = *ut is*, and introduces a *consequence*, the *perf. subj.* may be used for the *imperfect* by 418. Zeno nullo modo *is erat*, *qui, ut* Theophrastus, *nervos virtutis inciderit*. Cic. Acad. i. 10, 35. [al. *incideret*.]

484 *Qui* governs the subjunctive, when we may substitute for it, '*although,*' '*since,*' '*because,*' '*seeing that,*' &c. with personal pronoun.

<sup>y</sup> ~~is~~ '*One*' often means '*some one*' (*aliquis*), or '*a certain one*' (*quidam*).

<sup>z</sup> This of course will not apply to the use of *qui* to introduce a new sentence, where we use '*for he,*' &c.

<sup>a</sup> *Utpote qui*, *quippe qui* = '*inasmuch as they;*' '*for they.*' Grotefend remarks that *utpote*, *quippe* may generally be translated by '*namely,*' '*that is.*' Our '*as being*' will often give the force of them still better: they often stand before *attributives* only. '(Democrito) *quippe homini erudio,*' &c.

<sup>b</sup> Thus *qui* = *ut ego, ut tu, ut ille; ut nos, ut vos, ut illi*; through all their cases. So, *cujus* = *ut meus, tuus, &c.*: *quorum* = *ut noster, vester, &c.*

<sup>c</sup> But '*ut*' is sometimes used after '*is es*' &c. '*Neque enim is es, Catilina, ut te . . . ratio a furore revocarit.*' Cic. Cat. i. 9, 22. *Te* is here emphatic.

(a) *Qui* takes the subjunctive after *unus* and *solus*, signifying 485  
'alone,' 'only.'

(b) *Qui*, in narrative, is usually followed in *Livy* by the *subj.* of the *imperfect* and *pluperfect*, to express a *repeated action* taking place in *past time*: but in the writers of the golden age, the *indicative* is here the *regular mood*, the subjunctive being rarely found<sup>d</sup>. The verb of the principal sentence is then usually the *Imperf. Indic.*

The relative adverbs (*ubi, qua, &c.*) govern the subjunctive of these tenses in the same way; and as far as they can be substituted for the relative, they follow the rules above given.

The kind of sentences in which the relative may be thus intro- 486  
duced in Latin, will be best learnt by examples.

(a) (*Eng.*) He was despised by them, *for they* saw through him.

(*Lat.*) { He was despised by them, *who* saw through him (*subj.*).  
He was despised by them, *as-being who* (note<sup>a</sup>) saw through him (*subj.*).

(b) (*Eng.*) He deserves (*or, does not deserve*) to be loved.

(*Lat.*) He is worthy (*or, unworthy*) { *who should be loved*°.  
whom you should love.

(c) (*Eng.*) He is not a *proper person to be received*.

(*Lat.*) He is not a proper person { *who should be received*.  
*whom you should receive*.

(d) (*Eng.*) None are so good, *as never* to sin.

(*Lat.*) None are so good *who* never sin (*subj.*).

(e) (*Eng.*) None are so great, *as to be* independent.

(*Lat.*) None are so great, *who are* independent (*subj.*).

(f) (*Eng.*) Of such a kind (*or, such*) *that* we can neglect duties for their sake.

(*Lat.*) Of such a kind, for the sake of *which* we can neglect duties.

(g) (*Eng.*) *Too short to be* the whole life of man.

(*Lat.*) Shorter than *which can be*<sup>f</sup> the whole life of man.

(h) (*Eng.*) { Benefits greater than I can require.

{ Benefits *too great to be* required.

(*Lat.*) Benefits greater than *which*<sup>g</sup> I can require.

(i) (*Eng.*) { I am not a *man to believe* this.

{ I am not so *foolish, simple, &c.* as to believe this.

{ I am not *one who believe*<sup>h</sup> this.

(*Lat.*) I am not he (*is*) who would believe (*qui putem*).

<sup>d</sup> 'Nec quisquam Pyrrhum, *qua tulisset* impetum, sustinere valuit.' 'Semper habiti sunt fortissimi, *qui summam imperii potirentur.*' (Z.) 'Quemoungue lictor jussu consulis *prehendisset*, tribunus mitti jubebat.' (*Liv.*)

<sup>e</sup> Dignus (*or indignus*), qui ametur.

<sup>f</sup> Quam quæ *sit, or possit esse*. See Difference of Idiom 94.

<sup>g</sup> Quam quibus gratiam referre possim.

<sup>h</sup> OBS. The verb after *qui* takes the *person of ego, tu, &c.* not of '*is,*' or *man, person.*

<sup>i</sup> I am not *one* who much or oft *delight*

To season my fireside with personal talk,' &c.—*Wordsworth.*

- (j) (*Eng.*) Who am I, *that my* writings should be honoured thus ?  
 (*Lat.*) Who am I, *whose* writings should be honoured thus ?
- (k) (*Eng.*) They sent ambassadors, to sue for peace.  
 (*Lat.*) They sent ambassadors, *who should sue* for peace.
- (l) (*Eng.*) He deserves praise (or blame) for having done this.  
 (*Lat.*) He deserves praise (or blame) *who did* this (*subj.*).
- (m) (*Eng.*) Wretched man that I<sup>1</sup> am, who thought &c.  
 (*Lat.*) O me miserable, who thought &c. (*qui* with *subj.*).

*Exercise 71.*

[Translate 'I am not one who think.' 486, i.]

- 487 1. We must take care to use such (*is*) a liberality as (*qui*) may be of service to our friends, (and) hurt nobody. 2. There is no doubt, that the Gauls are too brave to be conquered (*g*) in one battle. 3. There are too many to be counted. 4. Those eternal fires, which (48) we call stars, are too many to be numbered. 5. He is a proper person to be received (*c*) into your friendship. 6. Nothing is so valuable<sup>t</sup>, *that* we should barter *for it* our faith and our liberty. 7. No one can be so great, *as* (483, (2)) never to require the services of his friends. 8. The benefits, *of* which<sup>u</sup> you have conferred upon me very many, are greater than I can repay (*h*). 9. I am not one who think that this world and every thing that is in it, was made by chance. 10. There are some who believe, that this most beautiful world and all that is in it, was made by *some* chance or *other*. 11. Who am I, that all men should *consult my interest* (*j*)? 12. Who will deny, that this life is *too short to be* the whole life of man? 13. You are the only person (484, *a*) on whom the safety of the state depends. 14. <sup>p</sup> If Cato had died, Cicero would have been the only person on whom the safety of the state depended. 15. I am not *so simple* (486, *i*) as to deny this.

§ 62. QUUM WITH THE INDICATIVE.

- 488 Since *quum* with the *indicative*<sup>1</sup> is far less common than with the subjunctive, it is important to get a clear notion when it should take the indicative.

---

<sup>i</sup> 'O me miserum!' or 'me miserum!' The interjections *O*, *heu*, *proh*! take the acc.; *hei* and *væ* the *dative*; *en* and *ecce* the *nom.* or the *acc.* (the latter chiefly in Comedy. Z.) The *acc.* of *personal* pronouns may stand in the *acc.* without the *interjection*, and even other words are so used.

<sup>k</sup> Tanti, . . . quo vendamus = ut eo vendamus.

<sup>1</sup> When *quum*, *antequam*, *præquam*, &c. take the *indicative*, either (1) the

(a) *Quum* takes the *indicative* when it simply marks the *time* (= *eo tempore*, *quo*, *at the time*, *that* or *when*) without carrying with it any notion of a *cause* or *occasion*.

'*When*' marks the time in this definite way, and is to be translated by *quum* with the *indicative*, when '*then*' might be substituted for it.

'It was night *when* he left the room,' = 'it was night: *then* he left the room.'

(b) *Quum* takes the *indicative* when, though it *does* introduce a *cause* or *occasion* of what is stated in the principal sentence, it nevertheless describes *the time* in a very marked manner, referring to *tum*, *nunc*, &c., or some *noun of time* (e. g. *eo tempore*) expressed or understood in the principal clause.

(c) *Quum* takes the *indicative*, when what is said in the principal clause is not only *contemporaneous* with the action expressed in the *quum* clause, but is actually *included* in it.

When a '*when*' clause stands in this kind of close relation to its principal clause, *the principal substantive* under the government of '*in*' may generally be substituted for it.

'*When* you censure them, you censure me.'

'*In censuring* them, you censure me.'

(d) There are too less common meanings in which *quum* goes with the *indicative*:

(1) When it means '*since*' or '*after*' of time<sup>m</sup>.

(2) When it is equivalent to *quod*, after *gaudeo*, *gratulor*, &c.

The meanings in which '*quum*' always takes the *subjunctive*, are '*since*' of 489 *causa* (= *seeing that*, *as*)<sup>\*</sup>, *although*, *whereas*. In the sense of '*when*' it usually takes the *subjunctive*, when the statement introduced by '*when*' is *also* the *cause* or *occasion* of what is asserted in the principal clause.

Zumpt, in his latest edition, gives the following rule as the pupil's sufficient guide. "*Quum* may *always* be joined with the *imperfect* and *pluperfect subjunctive*<sup>†</sup>; the other tenses are in the *indicative* with *quum temporale*, and in the *subjunctive* with *quum causale*" (579, end of note). It is certain that with the *imperf.* and *pluperf.* *quum* sometimes takes the *subjunctive*, though the notion of a *cause*, or even of an *occasion*, is hardly, if at all, perceptible. ('*Quum Agesilaus reverteretur . . . decessit.*' *Corn. Nep.* 1. 8. 6.) But Zumpt's rule appears too unqualified; the notion of *time* may be so *simple* and *definite*, that, though the

occurrence is connected with a *state that presents itself vividly to the speaker's recollection*, or with a fixed and definitely marked *point of time*: or (2) it falls without preparation or notice into the middle of another action (which is suspended or broken off by it), and thus is naturally described in an unconnected and abrupt manner. *Hartung*, *Partikellehre*, ii. 335.

<sup>m</sup> Ex *eo tempore quo*. Obs. That the *pres.* is used. See 490 (d).

\* Not quite always, if the '*since*' assumes a *very definite, certain fact*: *tu quum* (= *quoniam*, '*since*') *eo tempore mecum esse non potuisti . . . cave*, &c. See Part ii. 849.

† On *quum* with the *indic.* of *imperf.* and *pluperf.*, see Part ii. 848.



verb must be in the *imperfect* or *pluperfect*, the indicative mood must necessarily be employed. See the examples with *forebat* and *amiserant* under 490, (a).

- 490 (a) Jam ver appetebat, *quum* Hannibal ex hibernis movit, *The spring was already drawing on, when Hannibal moved from his winter quarters.*

[The *quum* may have any tense of the indicative: nunc, *quum* scribo; tum, *quum* Sicilia forebat opibus, &c.; *quum* quæpiam cohors ex orbe exceaserat . . . hostes refugiebant [with the *pluperf.* a repeated action is mostly denoted (the verb of the principal clause being, as here, in the *imperf.*); but not always, as Zumpt appears to assert; scimus tum, *quum* in Asiâ magnas res permulti amisierant, Romæ, solutione impeditâ, fidem concidisse. (Cic. Leg. Manil. 7, 19.)] hoc tunc sentiat, *quum* animam aget: *quum* de causâ dixero, de utroque dixero.—For the mood after *quum* when thus used in the narration of repeated actions, the rule 485, b, holds good.]

- (b) Ager *quum* multos annos quievit, uberiores efferre fructus solet, *A field, when it has lain fallow many years, generally produces more abundant crops.*
- (c) *Quum* in portum dico, in urbem dico, When I say into the port, I say into the city. (In saying into the port, I say, &c.)

Præclare facis, *quum* eorum memoriam tenes, *You do well in retaining the recollection of them.*

- (d) *Nondum* centum et decem anni sunt *quum* de pecuniis repetundis a L. Pisone lata lex est, *It is not yet a hundred and ten years since the law about extortion was carried by L. Piso. Gratulor tibi quum tantum vales apud Dolabellam, I congratulate you on your influence with Dolabella.*

- 491 (a) (Eng.) In attacking one, you attack all.  
(Lat.) When you attack one, you attack all (*quum* with *indio*.)
- (b) (Eng.) It is many years since he was first in my debt.<sup>a</sup>  
(Lat.) There are many years, when he is in my debt.
- (c) (Eng.) I congratulate you on your influence with Caius.  
(Lat.) I congratulate you, when you avail so much with (*apud*) Caius.
- (d) (Eng.) I do not like to be abused.  
(Lat.) I am not abused willingly (*libenter*).

#### Vocabulary 67.

- 492 This being so; this being the case, quæ | which a judgement is formed: quoniam  
quum ita sint. | = quum, jam is used when the ground  
Since, quum, to denote the ground on | is an acknowledged fact<sup>o</sup>.

<sup>a</sup> Multi sunt anni, *quum* ille in ære meo est.

<sup>o</sup> *Quando* is sometimes used in this sense; and also *quum*. 'Itaque, quando vestræ cautiones infirmæ sunt, Græculam tibi misi cautionem.' C. Fam. vii. 18. 'Tu *quum* instituisti, . . . scribe ad me.' C. Fam. vii. 32.

*Ut* has sometimes the meaning of 'though;' 'ut desint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas.'

*Not that—but, non quod—sed : non quod* P with subj.

*To be spoken ill of, male audire, to hear ill.*

*Because, quia, quod : with indic., except where the subjunct. is required for some other reason.—Quia introduces a strict cause of the effect: quod the conceived cause or ground of an action.*

*I don't at all doubt, non dubito* q.

*How insignificant, quam nullus.*

*To congratulate, gratulari.*

*To take, sumere; capere, io* r.

*To take hold of,prehendere,prehend-,prehens-.*

*To do well, præclare facere.*

¶ The subject of congratulation stands in the acc. or in the abl. with *de* or *in*; or in the *indio.* with *quod*, for which *quum* is sometimes used. See 491 (c).

### Exercise 72.

[With what mood may *interrogatives* be used in *oblique* questions of appeal? (460, c.)]

1. This being the case, I am unwilling to leave the city. 2. 493 Cæsar, when he had conquered the Gauls (= *having conquered* the Gauls), returned to Rome. 3. We know, how insignificant the strength of men is. 4. Who, when he sees this (= *seeing, or on seeing this*), would not make merry (*perf. subj.*) with you? 5. Phocion was constantly poor, though he might have been very rich. 6. Is it not several years, since Caius was first in your debt? 7. Is there any man, who can be compared with Balbus? 8. You do well in loving the boy (491, a). 9. When I assert the one, I deny the other. 10. Many persons are found, who praise others, that they may themselves be praised by them. 11. If you had conquered the Gauls, I should have congratulated you on your victory. 12. He says, that if I had conquered the Gauls, he should have congratulated me on my victory. 13. I congratulate you on your having recovered (*that you have recovered*). 14. Does any man *like* to be ill spoken of? 15. I will hold my tongue, not that I believe the man, but because it *makes no difference* to me. 16. They cried out, 'Why did he advise this? might they depart a *finger's* breadth from the rule of honour?' 17. They asked, 'Was not Caius nearer Rome than Labienus?' (Question for *information*.) 18. They answer, that we ought to *consult the interests* of those with whom *we have to live*<sup>27</sup>.

P For *non quod*, we often find *non eo* or *ideo quod*; but also *non quo*; all with *subj.* 'Not as if not' is 'non quin.'

q 'Nullus dubito' belongs to the language of *common conversation*, not to books.

r *Sumimus quo utamur; capimus quod habeamus;prehendimus quod tenemus.* (D.) *Sumere* (to take of my own *free will* and *choice*) is generally spoken of something that we *may appropriate*: *capere* (*seize upon*) often denotes the taking what does not belong to us. (H.)

## Vocabulary 68.

494

[Conjunctions that go with *subjunct.* only.]

*As if, quasi* = *quam si*, relating to manner; *tanquam* = *tam quam*, relating to degree; 'just as if.'

*Would that, utinam.*

*Oh that! o si!*

*Provided only, dummodo; for which*

*dum, modo* \* are used *separatim*.

'Not' after these words is 'nē.'

*It is nearly the same thing as if, perinde fere est ac si.*

*As if forsooth, quasi vero.*

*Perhaps, forsitan; often with perf. subj.*

495

☞ With these words the general rule for the sequence of tenses (40) is to be observed. The English would mislead us.

*Pugnat, quasi contendat, He fights as if he contended, or were contending, &c.*

*Pugnavit, quasi contenderet, He fought as if he had been contending, &c.*

496

With *utinam* the *pres.* and *perf.* are used, if the thing wished is not to be *represented* (whatever it may be) as *impossible to be realized*. The *imperf.* and *pluperf.* express wishes that are (in the speaker's opinion) *impossible, or unlikely, to be realized*. 'Not' after *utinam* is *regularly nē*, but very often *non*.

## Exercise 73.

497

(Obs. In the principal clause, the *ita* or *sic*\*, to which *quasi* or *tanquam* refers, is often expressed.)

1. They saluted Caius', (just) as if he had been consul'. 2. Many, *not to say* all, saluted Caius, as if he had been consul. 3. Would that you were consul! 4. Would that I had been engaged in that battle! 5. Would that I had been able to avoid suspicion! 6. Provided your word be kept, *I don't care a straw* for all the rest. 7. Provided you do not break your word, *I don't care this* for all the rest. 8. Would that the letter had not been written! 9. Live with men, as if the immortal gods saw you. (Insert 'sic' in the principal clause.) 10. Speak with your friends, as if all men heard you. 11. All men are calling upon me, as if forsooth it were my *business* to assist all men. 12. Would that Varro himself would apply vigorously to my cause! 13. Perhaps some one may say, that these things are too small *to be seen* with the naked eye (*pl.*). 14. How few are there, who apply-vigorously to another man's cause!

\* *Also velut si, velut ac si (and sometimes sicut; poetically ceu).* After *tanquam*, *si* is often expressed and may always be understood.

\* *Mōdō lit. an abl. = 'by measure.'*—Prof. Key.

† *Sic* relates more to something *preceding* and actually *given*: *ita* to something *following* and *supposed*. (R. and H.)

## § 63. ANTEQUAM AND PRIUSQUAM.

(a) When the principal verb is in the *present* tense, the verb in 498 the clause with *antequam* or *priusquam* may be in the *pres. indicative* or *subjunctive*.

(b) When the principal verb is in the *future*, the dependent verb 499 may be in the *future perfect*, or the *present subjunctive*; sometimes also it is found in the *present indicative*.

(c) When the principal verb is in a *past tense*, the dependent verb 500 is either in the *perfect indicative* or in the *imperfect subjunctive*:—in the *perfect indicative*, if there is *no closer connexion* between the two occurrences than *precedence in point of time*, what is stated in the subordinate clause being stated as an *actual occurrence*:—in the *imperfect* (or, if necessary, the *pluperfect*) *subjunctive*, when there is a closer connexion between the two occurrences than that of *mere precedence in point of time*.

And, generally, *whenever* there is a *closer connexion* between the 501 two clauses than that of *mere priority* (whenever, for instance, it is stated or implied to be *necessary, proper*, or *designed* with a view to some *purpose*<sup>u</sup>, that the one action or event should precede the other); and whenever the two are contemplated as forming a *connected sequence*, the subjunctive should be used.

Obs. When the stress is on the *before, ante* or *prius* stands in the principal 502 clause; either *early in it* (which is their most emphatic position), or just before the *quam*, but not forming one word with it. When they are thus *emphatic*, the verb being in past time, the *perf. indicative* is commonly used (rather than the *imp. subj.*): especially when a *negative* accompanies them: *non ante, neo ante, non prius*.

- (a) Ante rorat quam pluit, *It drops before it rains.* 503  
 Tempestas minatur antequam surgat, *A tempest threatens before it gets up.*
- (b) Antequam aliquo loco consedero, longas a me literas non expectabis, *Till I settle somewhere, you will not expect long letters from me.*

<sup>u</sup> In the following passage Livy uses the *pres.* where we should rather have expected the *subj.* 'Sed ante quam opprimūt lux, majoraque hostium agmina obsepiunt iter . . . erumpamus' (xxii. 50). So too in Virgil: 'Sed mihi vel tellus, optem, prius ima dehiscat, | Ante, pudor, quam te violo,' &c. *Æn.* iv. 25. In *Nep.* iii. 2, the *imp. subj.* is used where there seems to be only the simple relation of *precedence in point of time*. 'Aristides interfuit pugnae navali apud Salamina, quae facta est prius quam ille poenā (exsili) liberaretur.'

- { Antequam de republicâ dicam, exponam vobis breviser, &c.  
 { Priusquam respondeo . . . dicam, &c. (Phil. ii. 3.)  
 { Priusquam conor . . . . . proponam, &c. (iii. de Orat. 25.)

(c) Hæc omnia ante facta sunt, quam Verres Italiam attigit, *All these things were done before Verres reached Italy.*

Ducentis annis ante quam Romam caperent in Italiam Galli transcenderunt, *The Gauls crossed over into Italy two hundred years before they took Rome.*

- 504 (1) (Eng.) A mortal body must necessarily die.  
 (Lat.) It is necessary, that a mortal body should die (corpus mortale interire necesse est; or intereat necesse est; the subj. being governed by ut omitted).  
 (2) (Eng.) There is no living pleasantly.  
 (Lat.) It cannot be lived pleasantly (jucunde vivi non potest).

### Vocabulary 69.

[Præter, Secundum.]

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>505 Præter, beside; beyond, above (of degree); contrary to; besides; to say nothing of, except, but.<br/>         Contrary to expectation, præter expectationem.<br/>         Contrary to your custom, præter consuetudinem tuam.</p> | <p>Secundum (from sequi), 'following.'<br/>         Along; after (of time); after, next to; according to; in favour of (with verbs of judging, &amp;c.).<br/>         He made a decree in your favour, secundum te decrevit.</p> |
|--|--|

### Exercise 74.

[How are questions of *appeal* to be translated in oblique narration ?]

- 506 1. I will not leave the city, before I have had an interview with Caius (b). 2. Before I set out, I had an interview with Balbus (c). 3. He answered that, before he set out, he had an interview with Cæsar. 4. There is no living pleasantly, unless you live (*impers. pass.*) according to nature. 5. Under the guidance of nature there is no going wrong. 6. Contrary to expectation, the Prætor has made a decree in favour of Caius. 7. They exclaim, 'Are not hidden dangers always the most difficult to avoid?' 8. Let us attack the enemy, before the Gauls can come to their assistance. 9. Next to my brother, Caius has conferred the most benefits upon me. 10. Who can deny, that the Prætor has made a decree in your favour? 11. This being the case, I have no doubt that the Prætor will make a decree in your favour. 12. This being the case, the world must necessarily be governed by some wise mind. 13. Virtue must necessarily hate vice. 14. I am not so foolish as to deny (486, †) that virtue and vice are contrary to each other. 15. If I had not believed Caius, I should never have put myself in their power. 16. Who is there who denies this ?

§ 64. DUM, DONEC, QUOAD, &c.

(a) *Dum, donec, quoad* (= *until, till*) take the *indicative*, when 507 they merely *mark the time* up to which the action or state is to be continued.

(b) *Dum, donec, quoad* (= *until, till*) take the *subjunctive*, when 508 that up to which the action or state is to be continued, is to be represented, not as a *fact*, but only as what *may possibly* occur; especially when it is itself *the object pursued*.

(c) *Dum, whilst*, takes a *present indicative* even when the prin- 509 cipal verb is in a *past tense*.

This arose from an endeavour to represent duration in a vivid manner. A past tense is occasionally found, e.g. *Cic. ad Att. i. 16.* ('qui *dum veritus est*, non vidit.') *Nep. Hann. ii.* ('quæ divina res *dum consciebatur*, quæsit,' &c.)

*Dum, donec, quamdiu, quoad* <sup>u</sup> (= *as long as*) take the *indicative*. 510

(a) Epaminondas ferrum in corpore retinuit, *quoad renuntiatum* 511 est vicisse Bæotios, *Epaminondas retained the spear in his body, till it was reported to him that the Bæotians had conquered.*

(b) Differant, *donec defervesca*t ira, *Let them put off* (the purpose of taking revenge) *till their anger cools.*

(c) *Dum Romani ea parant . . . jam Saguntum oppugnabatur, Whilst the Romans were making these preparations, Saguntum was already besieged.*

Vocabulary 70.

<p><i>After, postquam; sometimes posteaquam</i> (with <i>indic. except in oratione obliquâ</i>). <i>Before, antequam.</i></p>	<p><i>As soon as, ut primum; quum primum; 512</i> <i>simul ac or atque; with indic.</i> <i>When = as soon as, ubi; ut; with indic.</i></p>
---	--

(Adverbs of place with *gen.*)

<p><i>Where in the world are you? ubi terrarum es?</i> <i>Where in the world are we? ubinam gentium sumus?</i> <i>To such a height of insolence, eo insolentia.</i> <i>To what a degree of madness, quo amen- titia.</i> <i>As far as I can, quoad ejus facere pos-</i></p>	<p><i>sum: where the gen. ejus relates to the preceding proposition.</i> <i>As far as can be done; as far as possible, quoad ejus fieri potest.</i> <i>To meet (is translated by the adv. obviam with the dat. Obviam from ob, via).</i> <i>To march against the enemy, obviam ire hostibus.</i> <i>Nearer, propius with dat. or acc. See 211. So proxime.</i></p>
---	--

<sup>u</sup> In the sense of '*whilst*,' '*as long as*,' *donec* always denotes a space of time carried on to such a *termination*: *dum* denotes this, but more with reference to the *space itself*, than to its *termination*. *Quoad* marks the continuance of the time *quite up to* the point mentioned: it relates to a *demonstrative* expressed or understood in the principal clause.

When the statement introduced by '*whilst*' is the *cause* or *occasion* of what follows, *dum* should be used.

(Adverbs of quantity with gen.)

<p><i>Enough</i>, sat or satis<sup>v</sup>, of what is really enough; affātim, of what a given person thinks or feels enough. Affātim = ad fatim, 'to satiety'; fatis, an old</p>	<p>subst. from the same root as fatisco, fatigo, and fastidium. D. Abundantly, abunde: abundance of timber, abunde materiæ.</p>
---	---

513 (Eng.) In addition to this, he was blind.

(Lat.) There was added to this, that he was blind (huc accedebat, ut cæcus esset.

With a pres. tense, accedit \*).

514 ~~527~~ With the adverbs meaning 'as soon as,' the English *pluperfect* should be translated by the *perfect*. In this sense, postquam, 'after,' is usually followed by the *perfect* indicative.—(See note<sup>2</sup>, page 89.) When the *pluperf.* is used, the succeeding action is generally not represented as following the other immediately: e.g. P. Africanus, posteaquam bis consul et censor fuerat, L. Cottam in iudicium vocavit (Cic. Div. in Cæc. 21): this however is not always the case: e.g. Nep. Lysand. 4 (end): postquam de suis rebus dixerat, librum tradidit. When continued states or repeated actions are described, the principal verb being in the *imperfect*, the *imp.* or *pluperf.* is used. 'Simulac se remiserat . . . reperiebatur.' Nep. Alcib. 1. (Z.)

## Exercise 75.

[How are questions of *appeal* to be translated in direct narration? 427, c.]

- 515 1. As long as he was in the city, I opposed his designs. 2. Men, whilst they teach, learn. 3. Who can deny that men learn whilst they teach? 4. As soon as the business is finished<sup>98</sup>, I shall wait upon Caius. 5. As soon as the business was finished *satisfactorily*, he waited upon Caius. 6. Wait till Caius returns<sup>99</sup>. 7. Let me know, where in the world you are. 8. Men have now arrived (*impers. pass.*) at such a height of madness, that<sup>p</sup> whilst all men consult their own interests, no man provides for the interests of his country. 9. It is the part of a wise man, as long as he lives, to prefer virtue to all things. 10. In addition to this, he was lame of one leg. 11. How few there are who provide-for-the-interests of their country! 12. I am not the man to deny, that we ought to provide for the interests of our country. 13. He persuaded the Athenians to march against the enemy. 14. Wait at Rome, till you recover. 15. The business is too difficult to be finished by any<sup>100</sup> body. 16. It is not every body who can finish such<sup>101</sup> a business in a few days. 17. We learn many things, whilst we are playing. 18. Have we (then) need of some Greek master to teach us<sup>102</sup> to play upon the lyre? 19. Let us neither ask what is disgraceful, nor do it<sup>p</sup> when we are asked. 20. He answered, that they ought to march against the enemy.

<sup>v</sup> Sat before polysyllables, satis before disyllables. (Boumgarten Crusius ad Sueton.)

\* Also accedit, quod (= adds or additur quod), when a previously existing fact is simply added to a statement: accedit, quod mirifice ingeniiis evocantibus delectatur.

<sup>w</sup> Show the ambiguity of this sentence by translating it in two ways.

## § 65. QUOD.

'*That*' is expressed by *quod*, when it introduces the *ground* of a former *statement*, or the *explanation* of a *term* in a former proposition; especially when it refers to a *demonstrative* pronoun or adverb expressed or implied.

Such pronouns and adverbs are *id, hoc, illud; eo, ideo, idcirco, propterea, interea, ita, tam, sic, &c.*

Verbs of the affections (*rejoice, grieve, wonder, &c.*) are followed by *quod*, or by the *accusative* with the infinitive<sup>z</sup>.

*Quod* takes the *indicative*, except when it introduces the *ground of another person's judgement or conduct*; when it takes the *subjunctive* (by 461).

Of course it must be followed by the subjunctive in *oblique narration*; and it must be remembered that when an *acc.* with *infn.* follows a verb of *saying, &c.* the narration is *oblique*.

The *ground* of an accusation is, of course, in the subjunctive (by 519 461); so also the reason for which *another person praises or blames* any body.

*Quod* with a verb is often the proper way of translating the *participial substantive* under the government of a preposition.

(1) (*Eng.*) He accused him *of having betrayed* the king.

(*Lat.*) He accused him, *that he had betrayed* the king (*quod* with *subj.*).

(2) (*Eng.*) *His having spared* the conquered, is a great thing.

(*Lat.*) *That he spared* the conquered, is a great thing:

(or) *That* (or, *this*) that he spared the conquered, is a great thing<sup>y</sup>.

(3) (*Eng.*) He *praised* (or *blamed*) him, *for having done this*.

(*Lat.*) He *praised* (or *blamed*) him, *that he had done this*.

(*Quod* with *subj.*: the *indicative* would intimate that the narrator believed him to *have actually done it*.)

(4) (*Eng.*) Many persons admire poems *without understanding* them.

(*Lat.*) Many persons admire poems, *nor understand* them.

(*neque intelligunt.*)

(5) (*Eng.*) You cannot be ruined *without ruining* others.

(*Lat.*) You cannot be ruined *so as not to ruin* others.

(*ut non* <sup>z</sup> with *subj.*)

---

<sup>z</sup> *Quod*, introducing the statement as a *fact*, is naturally better suited to the *past* than to the present. '*Gaudeo quod scripsisti*' is better than '*te scripsisse.*' (Z.)

With verbs that express an *emotion* or *feeling* (*gaudeo, doleo, miror*), the *acc.* with *infn.* is the more common: with those that express the *manifestation* of an emotion or feeling (*laudo, reprehendo, accuso, misereor, gratias ago, gratulor, concolor*), *quod* is preferred. (Z., 8th ed.)

<sup>y</sup> *Magnum est hoc, quod victor victis pepercit.*

<sup>z</sup> Or '*quin*' if the sentence is of a negative character.



## Vocabulary 71.

<p>521 <i>To be pained; grieves for, dolere</i><sup>a</sup>; with acc., or abl. <i>with de.</i>  <i>Grieves; grieves for, mœrere; with acc. or abl.</i>  <i>To mourn; bewail, lûgere.</i></p>	<p><i>To be glad, lætari.</i>  <i>To rejoice, gaudere</i><sup>b</sup>, gâvisus sum.  <i>Exceedingly, vehementer.</i>  <i>To recruit oneself, se reficere.</i></p>
---	---

[The preposition *De.*]

<p><i>De, concerning, about; down from; from</i> (Cicero has, <i>audire de aliquo</i>: so <i>smere, conducere de aliquo</i>): <i>of, with partitives: by or according to, of advice, de consilio meo.</i>  <i>With words of time: in the middle of the night, mediâ de nocte.</i></p>	<p><i>By night, de nocte.</i>  <i>Late at night, multâ de nocte.</i>  <i>On purpose, de industriâ.</i>  <i>To know a man by face, de facie nosse.</i>  <i>Unexpectedly, de improviso.</i></p>
---	---

## Exercise 76.

[In sentences dependent on an *infm.*, what tenses are sometimes found instead of the *imperf.* and *pluperf.* subj. † 469, d.]

- 522 1. Know that I do not know the man even by face. 2. I am exceedingly glad, that you have finished the business to your satisfaction. 3. I rejoice, that you have *obtained a triumph for a victory over the Gauls.* 4. I shall wait at Rome, till I recruit myself. 5. He answered, that he was going to remain at Rome till he had recruited himself. 6. I will not leave Rome, before I have recruited myself. 7. Caius praises the greatest poets *without understanding* them. 8. I had rather be a good man *without seeming* (one), than seem one *without being* (so) [Translate with *ut*]. 9. Would you prefer being wise *without seeming* (so), or seeming wise *without being so*? 10. I did not fear, that any one would grieve for the death of abandoned citizens. 11. No one ever grieved more for the death of his only son, than he grieved for that of his father. 12. Why should I' now bewail the life of men? 13. This being the case, *what reason have we*<sup>100</sup> for bewailing the death of

<sup>a</sup> *Dolere* is to *feel pain or sorrow*; *mœrere* (or *mœrere*) is to *show it by outward signs that are involuntary, arising from an irresistible feeling* (and thus *mœrere* and *mœror* rise above *dolere* and *dolor*): *lugere* is to *show it by conventional signs; to mourn.* (D.)

<sup>b</sup> *Gaudere* is to *feel joy*; *lætari* is to *show it by joyful looks, &c.* D.; who thinks Cicero mistaken when he makes *lætari* express an *exulting, triumphant joy, gaudere* a more temperate delight. But *could* Cicero be mistaken on *such* a point, involving no principle of etymology, but only a correct perception of the relative force of two words in common use? At all events, according to *Döderlein's* own explanation, *lætari*, expressing the *manifestation of joy in consequence of an irresistible feeling*, might be expected to rise above *gaudere*, just as *mœrere* above *dolere*.

abandoned citizens? 14. *How few are there*, who would bewail the death of Caius? 15. They<sup>p</sup> set upon the enemy unexpectedly, and put them to flight. 16. He did it in such a manner (*ita*), that it seemed to be done on purpose.

§ 66. THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

The Roman months were of the same number of days as the 523 English months, but were differently divided.

The first day of the month was called the *Kalends* (Kalendæ): 524 the *Nones* (Nonæ) fell on the *fifth* or *seventh*: the *Ides* (Idus, uum, f.) were always eight days after the *Nones*, that is, on the *thirteenth* or *fifteenth*.

In *March, July, October, May,*

525

The *nones* were on the *seventh* day.

(And therefore the *Ides* on the *fifteenth*.)

Days between the *Kalends* and the *Nones* were reckoned by their 526 distance from the *Nones*: those between the *Nones* and the *Ides* by their distance from the *Ides*: those after the *Ides* by their distance from the *Kalends* of the following month.

Hence a day after the *fifteenth* of *May* would be such a day before the *Kalends* of *June*.

Suppose we take the *third* of *March*: this is a day before the *Nones* of 527 *March*, which happens on the *seventh*. Now  $7-3=4$ : but the Romans reckoned *both days in*, so that they would call the *third* of *March* *not the fourth*, but the *fifth* day before the *Nones*.

To suit this Roman way of reckoning, we must subtract the given 528 day from the *number of the day* on which the *Nones* or *Ides* fall *increased by one*. If the day be one before the *Kalends*, we must subtract from the *last day* of the month *increased by two*. If the remainder be *two*, the day will be *pridie*; because the day the Romans would call the *second day before*, was '*the day before*,' as we speak.

Thus take the 3rd, 9th, 23rd of *June*:

(1) In *June* the *Nones* are on the *fifth*: therefore three must be subtracted 529 from  $(5 + 1 =) six$ : and the remainder being 3, the day is '*the third day before the Nones of June*.'

(2) In *June* the *Nones* being on the *fifth*, the *Ides* are on the *thirteenth*, and the subtraction must be from *fourteen*. Hence subtract 9 from 14; the remainder being 5, the day is the *fifth* day before the *Ides* of *June*.

(3) Since *June* has *thirty* days, we must subtract from *thirty-two*.

Hence subtract 23 from 32; the remainder being 9, the day is the *ninth day before the kalends of June*.

☞ (The adjective forms are used with the months<sup>c</sup>, and *Idus* is *fem.*)

530 To express *when?*

'On the third before the Kalends of March' is by rule '*die tertio ante Kalendas Martias*,' which was shortened by the omission of *die* and *ante* into '*tertio Kalendas Martias*,' or *iii. Kal. Mart.*

But another form is used (almost exclusively) by *Cicero* and *Livy*: this form is '*ante diem tertium Kalendas Martias*,' shortened into '*a. d. iii. Kal. Mart.*' a form which cannot be explained *grammatically*.

This *ante-diem* came to be treated as an indeclinable substantive, and the prepositions *ad*, *in*, *ex*, were prefixed to it, as to other substantives of time.

531 [*When? on what day?*]

Natus est Augustus *ix. Kalendas Octobres*, Augustus was born on the twenty-third of September (32—9 = 23).

Claudius natus est, *Kalendis Augustis*, Claudius was born on the first of August.

Claudius obiit (or excessit) *iii. Idus Octobres*, Claudius died on the thirteenth of October (16—3 = 13).

Meministine me *ante diem* (a. d.) *xii. Kalendas Novembres* dicere in Senatu? Do you remember that I spoke in the Senate on the 21st of October? (33—12 = 21.)

[Against or by such a day: for such a day.]

Consul comitia *in ante diem tertium Nonas Sextiles* (= Augustus<sup>d</sup>) edixit, The Consul fixed the elections by an edict for the third of August (6—3 = 3).

In *ante dies octavum et septimum Kalendas Octobres* comitiis dicta dies, The time of the elections is fixed for the twenty-fourth and twenty-fifth of September (32—8 = 24).

Capuam venire jussi sumus *ad Nonas Februarias*, We are ordered to come to Capua by the fifth of February.

Vocabulary 72.

532 *Elections, Comitia, orum*; properly, 'the assembling of the people,' for the purpose of electing the Consuls, &c. &c.

To my election, *ad mea comitia*; i.e. to the meeting at which I am to be elected or rejected.

To suffer, *sinere\**, *sin-*; *pati*, *ior*, *pass-*.

<sup>c</sup> These forms are, *Januarius, Februarius, Martius, Aprilis, Maius, Junius, Quintilis* (or *Julius*), *Sextilis* (or *Augustus*), *Septem-, Octo-, Novem-, Decem-*bris.

<sup>d</sup> The months of July and August were called *Quintilis, Sextilis*, respectively (= the *fifth* and *sixth* month, reckoning from *March*, the old beginning of the year), till those names were exchanged for *Julius* and *Augustus* in honour of the two first Cæsars.

\* *Sinere* is properly 'to let go,' 'not to stop;' *pati* is, 'not to prohibit:' *sinere*

*To lose flesh, corpus amittere.*  
*To stay in a place, commorari.*  
*Compel, cōgere, cōēg-, coact-.*

*The day before the Ides, pridie Idus ;*  
*or pridie Iduum.*  
*To fix by edict, edicere with acc.*  
*It is worth while, operæ pretium est.*

- (a) (*Eng.*) *Instead of reading, he is at play.* 533  
 (*Lat.*) He is at play, *whereas he ought to read* (quum debeat).
- (b) (*Eng.*) *Instead of growing rich, he is growing poor.*  
 (*Lat.*) He is growing poor, *whereas he might grow rich* (quum posset).
- (c) (*Eng.*) *Far from thinking this, I hold &c.* 534  
 (*Lat.*) *It is so far off that I should think this, that I hold &c.* (tantum abest ut—ut<sup>o</sup> &c.)

*Exercise 77.*

1. Tiberius died on the sixteenth of March. 2. Nero was born 535 on the fifteenth of December. 3. Caius was born on the fifteenth of October. 4. Balbus died on the twelfth of August. 5. Vitellius was born on the 24th of September ; or, as some say, on the seventh of September. 6. The Consul has fixed (by edict) the elections for the 21st of July. 7. I believe that the elections will be fixed for the ninth of April. 8. *Say* that I shall *not* be angry with him, if he does not come<sup>ss</sup> to my election. 9. I am compelled to stay here till I recruit myself ; for I have lost both flesh and strength. 10. There are some who think that the elections will be fixed for the ninth and tenth of July. 11. Instead of being with me, he is at his own house. 12. Instead of being very rich (as he might have been), he is very poor. 13. Instead of applying vigorously to the affair, he is gone into the country. 14. I am so far from praising, that I can scarcely restrain myself from calling you a betrayer of your country. 15. I am so far from believing *any* body (*no matter who he may be*), that I scarcely believe you. 16. I was so far from being ill spoken of, that all men praised me. 17. There were some who laughed.

§ 67. CONNEXION OF PROPOSITIONS BY THE RELATIVE.  
 IMPERATIVE FORMS.

Any *relative* pronoun or adverb may be used for the corresponding 536 *demonstrative* with the conjunction 'and' (and sometimes *but, for, therefore, &c.*).

has for its *immediate object* the person acting, *pati* the action itself: *sistere* is commonly, though not exclusively, followed by *ut* with the subj.; *pati* by the acc. with *infin.* (D.)

<sup>o</sup> Tantum abest ut nostra miremur, ut . . . nobis ipse non satisfaciat Demosthenes. Sometimes the second *ut* is omitted, the clause having *vir* or *etiam*: 'tantum abfuit ut inflammaret nostros animos; somnum vix tenebamus.' (Cic. Brut. 80.)

- 537 When in English such a clause as 'they say,' 'as—says,' &c. is inserted parenthetically in a relative sentence, the verb of this clause should generally be made the principal verb of the relative clause in Latin, the other verb being put in the infinitive.
- 538 When in English the relative pronoun is separated from its verb by another clause, which contains a demonstrative pronoun, the relative should be expressed in *that clause* in Latin, and the demonstrative be expressed or understood in the other.
- 539 The imperative may be expressed by several circumlocutions:
- (1) The imperat. of *command* by *cura ut* (take care to), *fac ut* (or *fac* only) with *subj.*
  - (2) The imperat. of *prohibition* by *cave* with *subj.* (governed by *ut* omitted), or *noli* with *infin<sup>t</sup>*.
- 540 (a) (*Eng.*) Two and two make four: *and if this is granted, &c.*  
(*Lat.*) Two and two make four: *if which is granted, &c.*
- (b) (*Eng.*) Caius, *who, they say*, was killed at Lugdunum.  
(*Lat.*) Caius, *whom they report to have been killed &c.*
- (c) (*Eng.*) Crassus, *who*, as Lucilius tells us, never laughed but once.  
(*Lat.*) Crassus, *whom Lucilius reports to have never laughed* but once.
- (d) (*Eng.*) Narratives, *by which*, when we read *them*, we are affected.  
(*Lat.*) Narratives, *which*, when we read, we are affected.
- (e) (*Eng.*) Success, with *which*, if it should fall to our lot, we should be dissatisfied.  
(*Lat.*) Success, if *whichs* should fall to our lot, we should be dissatisfied.
- (f) (*Eng.*) I did this; *and if you had not thwarted me, &c.*  
(*Lat.*) I did this; *whom if you had not thwarted, &c.*
- 541 ~~539~~ 'Will' and 'would,' 'will not,' and 'would not' are often principal verbs, to be translated by *velle* and *nolle* respectively.  
They are to be translated when for  
*will*, *would*, we may substitute  
*is* (are, &c.) *willing*, *was*, (were, &c.) *willing*.

## Vocabulary 73.

- 542 [Phrases with e, ex; præ, pro, in.]
- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p><i>To have a pain in my feet</i>, ex pedibus laborare, or dolere.</p> <p><i>To cook with water</i>, ex aquâ coquere; cox-, coct-.</p> <p><i>From a wall</i>, ex muro.</p> <p><i>Opposite; over against</i>, e, not ex regione*.</p> | <p><i>To be tired with a journey</i>, e viâ languere.</p> <p><i>To live according to nature</i>, e naturâ vivere.</p> <p><i>From the heart</i>, ex animo, in sinceritâ.</p> <p><i>It is for my interest</i>, e re meâ est<sup>h</sup>.</p> <p><i>To place on a table</i>, in mensâ.</p> |
|--|---|

<sup>f</sup> *Cura ut* quam primum venias. *Fac* animo forti, magnoque sis.

*Cave* putes, or *noli* putare.

Such forms in English are, 'take care to,' 'be sure you,' 'mind you,' &c.

<sup>g</sup> In Latin, the relative must stand before *si*.

\* Another noun *will*, of course, follow *regione*, in the *gen*.

<sup>h</sup> So, e republicâ est.

*For* = owing to, especially of *obstacles*,  
*præ*, with abl.

*In comparison with him*, *præ illo*.

*Pro virili parte*, according to one's  
 duty or power as an individual (*not*  
 'with all one's might'); as far as an  
 individual can.

*Pro re natâ* (according to the thing  
 that has arisen) = according to cir-  
*cumstances*.

*Pro eo ac mereor*, according to my  
*deserts*.

*Safe, salvus; incolumis*¹.

### Exercise 78.

1. *I for my part* wished this: *and* if Pompey had not envied me, 543  
 the republic would now be safe. 2. Philosophy teaches, that the  
 world moves: *and* if *this* be true, we almost must necessarily move.  
 3. Who can deny, that this is for my interest? 4. The gods will  
 requite me according to my deserts. 5. Is it not certain, that the  
 gods will requite you according to your deserts? 6. I am sorry, that  
 you have a pain in your head. 7. If you had done this, I should  
 have praised you from my heart. 8. You will not be able to see the  
 sun for the multitude of our javelins. 9. Caius, being tired of his  
 journey, was killed by his slave. 10. They answered, that they *would*  
 receive us. 11. Did he not answer, that he would not receive us?  
 12. *Do not think*, that the soul is mortal. 13. Take care to finish  
 the business to my satisfaction. 14. Do not think, that every man  
 can command himself. 15. Be sure to come to my assistance as  
 soon as possible. 16. Who will deny, that these things are for the  
 interest of the republic? 17. I cannot speak for sorrow. 18. Be  
 sure not to impute this to me as a fault. 19. Be sure not to hurry.  
 20. Be sure not to believe, that it is necessary to make haste; *for*, if  
 you believe *this*, it is all over with us. 21. The moon is eclipsed,  
 when it is opposite to the sun. 22. May I not determine what  
 should be done according to circumstances? 23. It is the part of  
 a good citizen to defend the republic as far as an individual can.  
 24. Benefits, *for which*, if you confer *them* upon me, I will prove  
 myself grateful (*memor*). 25. You may eat the food<sup>p</sup> which is placed  
 on the table. 26. He says, that he will not eat the cheese<sup>p</sup> which  
 is placed on the table. 27. I shall do what appears<sup>ps</sup> best to be  
 done according to circumstances. 28. There were some, who could  
 not speak for sorrow.

¹ A person is *tutus* when he is in safety; *securus* when he *believes* himself to be so, and is *without care* (*se-curus*) or *anxiety* on the subject.

Hence 'Ne sit *securus*, qui non est *tutus* ab hoste.'

Of *salvus*, *sospes*, *incolumis*,—*salvus* says the least (as it properly relates to *existence*); *sospes* more, as it points to the protection of a higher power; *incolumis*, the most of all, as it excludes not only *annihilation*, but even the supposition of any *injury* or *attack*. (D.)

## § 68. ON THE ROMAN WAY OF RECKONING MONEY.

544 The Romans reckoned their money by *sesterces*: and by *nummus*, when it means a *coin*, *sestertius* is always meant.

d. q.

545 A *sestertius* (= 1 3¼) was not quite equal to *twopence* of our money.

A *sestertium* = a *thousand sestertii*: it was the name of a *sum*, not of a *coin*.

546 *Sestertii* and *sestertia* are used quite regularly with numeral adjectives: but *sestertium* in the singular is used in a very peculiar way with numeral adverbs.

547 ~~547~~ With numeral adverbs *sestertium* means so many 'hundred thousand *sesterces*.'

Hence *Sestertium semel*\* = 'a hundred thousand *sesterces*.'

*Sestertium decies* = *ten* 'hundred thousand *sesterces*' = a million *sesterces*.

*Sestertium vicies* = *20* 'hundred thousand *sesterces*' = two million *sesterces*.  
&c. &c.

Obs. With numeral adverbs *below* 'ten times,' so many *hundred thousand sesterces* are meant.

With numeral adverbs *above* and *multiples* of 'ten times,' throw away the cipher from the *units*' place, and you have the number of '*millions of sesterces*.'

Thus, if '*sestertium sexcentis*' were the sum; throwing away 0 from the *units*' place of 600, we have '*60 millions of sesterces*' for the sum.

With intermediate numerals, the sum is easily obtained by these rules:

*Sestertium ter vicies* = '*2 million, 3 hundred thousand sesterces*.'

548 In this construction *sestertium* is declined:

*Sestertium vicies*, two million *sesterces*.

*Sestertii vicies*, of two million *sesterces*, &c.

549 In turning the number of *sesterces* into Latin, remember that to the *numeral* before '*millions*' I must add a cipher in the *units*' place (in other words, multiply it by 10) to get the *numeral adverb*, that is to go with *sestertium*. Thus in '*2 million sesterces*,' by adding a cipher in the *units*' place to 2, I get 20, and *vicies* is the adverb required.

£ s. d.

\* A *sestertium* = 8 0 5¼

*Sestertium semel* = 807 5 10

*Sestertium decies, centies, millies, &c.* (that is, the multiples of *semel* by 10) are got approximately by this rule:

RULE: For every cipher in the proposed multiple add to the *right* hand of 807 one figure taken (successively) from the *left* hand of the series 291666 continued *ad infinitum*.

Thus to get *sestertium millies*, since 1000 has 3 ciphers, I must add 3 figures (291) taken from the left hand of the given series to the right hand of 807.

Hence *millies sestertium* = £807291 in whole numbers.

- (a) *Sex millibus œdes conduit, He hired a house for six thousand (sesterces).*
- (b) *Sex sestertia persolvit, He paid six thousand sesterces.*
- (c) *In sestertio vicies (splendide se gerens), On a fortune of two million sesterces.*

Vocabulary 74.

<p><i>Inheritance, hæreditas.</i>  <i>To keep up a certain state, splendide se gerere; gess-, gest-.</i>  <i>A freedman, libertinus; but if spoken of in reference to his master, libertus.</i>  <i>Thus Brutus's libertus is one of the class libertini.</i></p>	<p><i>Descended from, oriundus:—'nati Carthagine, sed oriundi ab Syracusis; born at Carthage, but of Syracusan extraction,' or 'descended from a family that had formerly lived at Syracuse.'</i>  <i>Meanly, sordide.</i></p>	<p>551</p>
---	--	------------

Exercise 79.

1. He kept up a certain state with a fortune of three million sesterces. 2. With a fortune of two millions of sesterces he kept up more state than Caius, who had received 10 millions from his father. 3. Caius, the freedman of Brutus, left more than <sup>k</sup>15 thousand sesterces. 4. That you, with a fortune of 10 millions, should live so meanly! 5. Caius, who was of Syracusan extraction, sent Brutus two hundred thousand sesterces as a present. 6. On the 23rd of November, Balbus sent me as a present twenty thousand sesterces. 7. He gave them three thousand sesterces a-piece. 8. From this inheritance Atticus received about ten million sesterces.

§ 69. ON THE DIVISION OF THE AS: THE METHOD OF RECKONING FRACTIONS, INTEREST, &c.

553

As				
Dextans	( $\frac{10}{12}$ =)	$\frac{5}{6}$	} of an As.	
Dodrans <sup>1</sup>	( $\frac{9}{12}$ =)	$\frac{3}{4}$		
Bes (bessis)	( $\frac{8}{12}$ =)	$\frac{2}{3}$		
Septunx		$\frac{7}{12}$		
Semis (semissis)	( $\frac{6}{12}$ =)	$\frac{1}{2}$		
Quincunx		$\frac{5}{12}$		
Triens	( $\frac{4}{12}$ =)	$\frac{1}{3}$		
Quadrans	( $\frac{3}{12}$ =)	$\frac{1}{4}$		
Sextans	( $\frac{2}{12}$ =)	$\frac{1}{6}$		
Uncia		$\frac{1}{12}$		

<sup>k</sup> With *amplius, plus, minus, &c.* quam is often omitted; the noun standing in the case it would have stood in, if *quam* had been expressed. Sometimes however the *ablat.* follows these adverbs.

<sup>1</sup> Dodrans = de-quadrans.



554 These words were used to express the *fractions* set down opposite to their names.

555 The same division was used in reckoning the interest of money, which was due *monthly*. *Asses usuræ* = one *As* per month for the use of a *hundred*. This was called *centesimæ usuræ*, because in 100 months a sum equal to the whole principal would have been paid.

Asses or centesimæ usuræ = 12 per cent.	
Deounces	11
Dextantes	10
Dodrantes	9
Besses	8
Septunces	7
Semisses	6
Quincunces	5
Trientes	4
Quadrantes	3
Sextantes	2
Unciæ	1
<i>Binæ centesimæ</i> = 24 per cent., and so on.	

- 556 (a) *Statura ejus quinque pedum et dodrantis fuit, His height was five feet and three-fourths (five feet nine).*  
 (Eum) hæredem fecit *ex dodrante, He left him heir to three-fourths of his estate.*
- (b) *Assibus usuris grandem pecuniam collocavit, He invested a large sum of money at 12 per cent.*

*Exercise 80.*

557 1. Caius, the freedman of Balbus, has been made heir to one half of his estate. 2. He has left one Caius, of Carthaginian extraction, the heir to seven-twelfths of his estate; from which inheritance he will receive, I think, about six hundred thousand sesterces. 3. The freedman of Brutus, who died at Rome on the third of August, has left nearly fifteen million sesterces; and it is thought that Caius has been left heir to half *his* estate. 4. He is said to have lodged a large sum of money in the hands of<sup>m</sup> Balbus at 9 per cent.

---

<sup>m</sup> *Apud* aliquem collocare.

TABLE  
OF  
DIFFERENCES OF IDIOM,  
&c.

---

ENGLISH.	LATIN.
1. You and I, } Balbus and I, }	{ I and you, { I and Balbus.
2. Says that he has <i>not</i> <sup>a</sup> sinned. Says that he has <i>never</i> &c.	Denies ( <i>negat</i> ) that he has sinned. Denies that he has <i>ever</i> &c.
3. He promises to <i>come</i> .  He hopes to <i>live</i> .  He undertakes or engages to <i>do it</i> .  He pretends to be <i>mad</i> (16).	He promises that he <i>will come</i> ( <i>acc.</i> with <i>inf.</i> — <i>se venturum</i> ). He hopes that he <i>shall live</i> ( <i>acc.</i> with <i>inf.</i> ). He undertakes to <i>you</i> ( <i>me</i> , &c.) that he <i>will do it</i> ( <i>acc.</i> with <i>inf.</i> ). He pretends that he is <i>mad</i> ( <i>acc.</i> with <i>inf.</i> : <i>pron.</i> expressed,— <i>se furere</i> ).
4. To have a prosperous voyage.	To sail from (= <i>according to</i> ) one's thought or intention ( <i>ex sententiâ navigare</i> ). <i>Ex sententiâ</i> .
5. To my, his, &c. satisfaction : satisfactorily ; successfully.	
6. To fight <i>on horseback</i> .	To fight from ( <i>ex</i> ) a horse <sup>b</sup> .
6*. It is a <i>breach</i> of duty.	It is <i>against</i> ( <i>contra</i> ) duty.
7. He sends the most faithful slave he has.	He sends the slave, <i>whom</i> he has the most faithful.
8. He was <i>the first</i> to do this. } (Or) He was <i>the first who did this</i> . } So, He was the only one <i>who did it</i> .	He the first (person) did this (55). He <i>alone</i> did it ( <i>solus fecit</i> ).

<sup>a</sup> Obs. 'Says not' should not be translated by *nego*, unless it is in answer to an *actual* or *virtual question*, or an implied opposition to the *affirmation* of others, to some opinion which others *do*, or *probably may*, hold. When the 'not' is closely connected with the following verb, it should be translated by *non*.

<sup>b</sup> *Ex equis*, if more persons than one are spoken of.

ENGLISH	LATIN.
9. <i>Such</i> is your temperance, Or, <i>With your usual</i> temperance.	{ <i>Which</i> is your temperance. <i>Of which</i> temperance you are. <i>For</i> (= in proportion to) your temperance (56).
10. <i>As far as</i> I know	<i>Which</i> I may know ( <i>quod sciam</i> ).
11. It's all over with . . .	It is done concerning ( <i>actum est de</i> ) . . .
12. { To <i>make</i> the same boast. To <i>make</i> the same promise. To <i>make</i> many promises. To <i>utter</i> many falsehoods.	To boast the same thing (59). To promise the same thing (59). To promise To lie } many things.
13. To take by storm.	To <i>fight</i> a place out by force ( <i>per vim expugnare</i> ).
14. That nothing . . . That nobody . . . That never . . . That <i>no</i> weapon . . . [This is only when 'that' introduces a <i>purpose</i> .]	Lest any thing ( <i>ne quid</i> ). Lest any body ( <i>ne quis</i> ). Lest ever ( <i>ne unquam</i> ). Lest any weapon ( <i>ne quod telum</i> ).
15. No food is so heavy <i>as not</i> to be digested, &c. He is <i>so</i> foolish <i>as</i> to think, &c.	No food is so heavy <i>but</i> ( <i>quin</i> ) it may be digested, &c. So foolish <i>that</i> he thinks ( <i>ut</i> ), 66, d.
16. She <i>never</i> saw him <i>without</i> calling him, &c.	She never saw him, <i>but</i> ( <i>quin</i> ) she called him, &c.
17. He could scarcely be restrained <i>from</i> throwing, &c.	He could scarcely be restrained <i>but that</i> ( <i>quin</i> ) he should throw (88).
18. I left nothing undone to appease him. I cannot but &c.	I left undone ( <i>prætermisi</i> ) nothing, <i>that</i> I should <i>not</i> ( <i>quin</i> ) appease him. I cannot do (anything) <i>but that</i> ( <i>facere non possum quin</i> ) &c.
19. I will not object to <i>your doing it</i> .	I will not object <i>but that</i> ( <i>non recusabo quin</i> or <i>quominus</i> ) you should do it.
20. It cannot be that the soul is not immortal (89).	It cannot be ( <i>fieri</i> ) <i>but that</i> ( <i>quin</i> ) the soul is immortal.
21. { Nothing prevents him from doing it. So, nothing deters him from doing it.	Nothing prevents ( <i>obstat</i> ) <i>by which</i> he should <i>the less</i> do it ( <i>quominus faciat</i> ). Nothing deters him <i>by which</i> he should <i>the less</i> do it (99).
22. It was <i>owing to you that</i> I did not succeed.	It stood through you <i>by which</i> I should the less succeed ( <i>per te stetit quominus</i> &c. 99).
23. By sea and land.	By land and sea.
24. { To be within a very little of . . . Or, But a little more and . . . . Not to be far from	To be a very little distant <i>but that</i> . . . [minimum abesse ( <i>impers.</i> ) <i>quin</i> .] { <i>Haud multum</i> <i>Haud procul</i> } abesse.
25. I almost think <sup>c</sup> , I don't know whether } &c. I am not sure <i>that any</i> . I don't know whether (or <i>that</i> ) } <i>any . . .</i>	<i>Haud scio an</i> ; <i>nescio an</i> &c. I don't know or <i>no</i> . . . (116).

<sup>c</sup> *Haud scio an, nescio an, dubito an*, may be followed by the negatives, *nemo, nihil, nullus, nunquam*, or by the forms that follow negatives, *quisquam, quicquam, ullus, unquam*. *Haud scio an nemo* approaches nearer to a denial than *haud scio an quisquam*. (G.)—But Cicero and his contemporaries never omit the negative. *Matthäi, Haud, &c.*

- | ENGLISH.  | LATIN.   |
|---|--|
| I don't know whether (or <i>that</i> )<br><i>any</i> † <i>body</i> .  | I don't know <i>or nobody</i> . . . (116).   |
| ☞ If it is ' <i>any</i> author,' &c.<br><i>nemo scriptor</i> ( <i>poeta</i> , &c.) is<br>more common than <i>nullus</i><br><i>scriptor</i> .  |  |
| 26. To take away any one's life.  | To snatch away life to (= <i>from</i> ) any<br>one ( <i>vitam alicui eripere</i> . 132).   |
| 27. The city of Rome, the island of<br>Cyprus.<br>He did this <i>as</i> (or <i>when</i> ) Consul.   | The city Rome; the island Cyprus.<br>He Consul (= being Consul) did this.  |
| 28. { I may go.<br>I am permitted to go.<br>I ought to do it.<br>I ought to have done it.   | { To me it-is-permitted ( <i>licet</i> ) to go<br>(124).<br>It behoveth me ( <i>oportet</i> me) to do it.<br>It behoveth me ( <i>oportuit</i> ) to do it (126).  |
| 29. I am at leisure to read.  | There-is-leisure ( <i>vacat</i> ) to me to read<br>(154).  |
| 30. I have <i>need</i> of food.   | { (1) There is to me a business with<br>food ( <i>prep.</i> omitted).<br>(2) Food is a business to me.   |
| There is need of { making haste.<br>deliberation.<br>prompt execution.  | There is { (the matter) <i>being hastened</i> .<br>need of { (the matter) <i>being consulted</i> .<br>( <i>Opus est</i> ) { (the matter) <i>promptly done</i> .<br>(177.)  |
| 31. How many are there of you ?<br>How many are there of us ?<br>Three hundred of us are come.  | How many are ye ? ( <i>quot estis</i> ?)<br>How many are we ? ( <i>quot sumus</i> ?)<br>We (being) three hundred are come.<br>( <i>Trecenti venimus</i> .)   |
| Of whom there are { few.<br>very many.  | Who are { few.<br>very many.   |
| Very many of which . . .  | Which very many ( <i>quæ plurima</i> ).  |
| 32. <i>Some</i> mock, <i>others</i> approve.  | <i>Others</i> mock; <i>others</i> approve ( <i>alii—alii</i> ).  |
| 33. <i>One</i> was a Greek; <i>the other</i> a<br>Roman.  | <i>The other</i> was a Greek; <i>the other</i> a Ro-<br>man ( <i>alter—alter</i> ).  |
| 34. Such a lover of truth.  | So ( <i>adeo</i> ) loving of &c.   |
| 35. To take in good part.   | <i>Boni consilere</i> ‡. (See 185*.)   |
| 36. He was condemned in his <i>ab-</i><br><i>sence</i> .  | He <i>being absent</i> was condemned.  |
| 37. To prefer a capital charge against<br>Caius.<br>To bring an action against a man<br>for bribery.<br>To prefer a charge of immorality<br>against Caius.<br>To <i>inform</i> a man of a plan. | To make Caius an accused-person ( <i>reus</i> )<br>of a capital matter (187).<br>To make a man an accused-person of<br>bribery ( <i>gen.</i> ); or, about bribery ( <i>de</i> ).<br>To make Caius an accused-person ( <i>reus</i> )<br>about morals ( <i>de moribus</i> : 187).<br>To make a man <i>surer</i> of a plan ( <i>certio-</i><br><i>rem facere</i> ). |
| 38. Without any danger . . .  | Without ( <i>expers</i> , <i>adj.</i> ) <i>all</i> danger . . .  |
| 39. It is <i>characteristic</i> of . . .  | It is ( <i>a mark</i> ) of . . .   |
| It is <i>incumbent</i> on . . .   | It is ( <i>the duty</i> ) of . . .   |
| It is for . . .   | It is ( <i>the character, privilege, &amp;c.</i> ) of . . .  |
| It <i>demand</i> s, or <i>requires</i> , firmness.  | It is ( <i>a thing</i> ) of (= for) firmness.  |
| It <i>shows</i> or <i>betrays</i>   | It is ( <i>a mark</i> ) of weakness.   |
| It is a <i>proof</i> or <i>mark</i> of } weakness.  |  |

† After '*I almost think*,' '*I am inclined to think*,' when these phrases are translated by *haud scio an* or *nescio an*, the negative will be omitted or inserted in the Latin exactly as in the English.

‡ *Æqui boni facere: in bonam partem accipere.*

ENGLISH.	LATIN.
Any man may do it.	It is any man's ( <i>task</i> ) to do it.
It is not every man who can, &c.	It is not every man's ( <i>task</i> ) to do it ( <i>non cuiusvis est</i> ), &c.
It is wise.	It is ( <i>the conduct</i> ) of a wise man.
40. To reduce to subjection.	<del>¶</del> Words in brackets to be omitted.
To bring under his dominion. } 41. To be <i>capitally</i> condemned. } To be acquitted of a capital charge.	To make of his own dominion ( <i>suæ di- tionis facere</i> ). To be condemned <i>of the head</i> . To be acquitted <i>of the head</i> .
42. Common to me and you.	Common to me <i>with you</i> .
43. To compare things together.	To compare things amongst (or between) <i>themselves</i> ( <i>inter se</i> ), 221 (c).
44. To threaten a man with death.	To threaten death to a man (222).
45. To prefer death to slavery.	To reckon slavery after death ( <i>servitum morti posthabere</i> , 227). [or, as in Eng., with <i>anteponere</i> .]
46. To surround the city with a wall.	To give-round ( <i>circumdare</i> ) a wall to the city [or as in Eng.].
To besprinkle a man with praises.	To besprinkle ( <i>aspergere</i> ) praises to the man [or as in Eng.].
To put on a garment.	To clothe ( <i>induere</i> ) myself with a gar- ment; or to put-on ( <i>induere</i> ) a gar- ment to myself.
To take the enemy's camp, baggage, &c.	To strip ( <i>exuere</i> ) the enemy of their camp, baggage, &c. ( <i>abl.</i> ) 233.
To obstruct (or cut off) the enemy's flight.	To shut up ( <i>intercludere</i> ) flight to the enemy (233).
To cut off the supplies of the Gauls.	To shut up ( <i>intercludere</i> ) the Gauls from their supplies ( <i>abl. commeatu</i> ), 233.
47. I have (or possess) a book.	There is a book to me.
I have (or possess) two books.	There are two books to me (238).
48. To come } To send } to the assistance of To set out } Cæsar.	To come } To send } to Cæsar for an assist- To set out } ance ( <i>dat.</i> ). ( <i>Auxilio venire, mittere, proficisci</i> .)
49. To give as a present.	To give for a present ( <i>dono dare</i> )
To impute as a fault.	To give it } for a fault ( <i>dat.</i> ). To turn it } ( <i>Culpæ, or vitio dare, or vertere</i> .)
50. To be a reproach, or disgraceful.	To be for a reproach ( <i>opprobrio esse</i> ).
To be very advantageous.	To be for a great advantage ( <i>magnæ utilitati esse</i> ).
To be odious; hateful.	To be for a hatred ( <i>odio esse</i> ). ( <i>So impedimento, honori, &amp;c. esse</i> .)
Obs. 'How' before the adj. must be 'quantus' in agreement with subst.	Quanto odio est! ( <i>how odious it is!</i> )
[51. To throw himself at Cæsar's feet.]	[ <i>Se Cæsari ad pedes projicere</i> ; or lite- rally.] See p. 69, note l. <i>Diebat.</i>
52. Caius would say . . . Caius used to say . . .	
53. I fear that he will come. I fear that he will not come.	I fear lest he come ( <i>ne veniat</i> ). I fear that he come ( <i>ut veniat</i> *).

\* Or, ne non veniat.

ENGLISH.	LATIN.
54. The war <i>against</i> Pyrrhus. Connexion <i>with</i> Pompey. Rest <i>from</i> labours. Wrongs <i>done to</i> Caius.	The war <i>of</i> Pyrrhus Connexion <i>of</i> Pompey Rest <i>of</i> labours Wrongs <i>of</i> Caius
55. He did it <i>that</i> he might the more easily escape.	He did this, <i>by which</i> ( <i>quo</i> ) he might more easily escape.
56. To make Cæsar retire.	To make that Cæsar should retire ( <i>facere</i> , or <i>efficere ut</i> &c.).
57. It is <i>becoming to</i> (or <i>in</i> ) an orator to be angry, &c. <i>So, it is unbecoming to</i> (or <i>in</i> ) an orator . . .	It <i>becomes an orator to</i> be angry, &c. ( <i>oratorem deest.</i> ) ( <i>Oratorem dedecet . . .</i> ) 259.
58. This victory <i>cost</i> them many wounds.	This victory <i>stood</i> <sup>d</sup> to them at many wounds ( <i>abl.</i> ) 266. [Compare the Eng. 'this <i>stood me in</i> a large sum.']
59. Hardly any body.	Almost nobody ( <i>nemo fere</i> ), 249.
60. Make a bad, &c. use of, &c.	<i>Use badly</i> (273).
61. He deserves to be loved.	He is a deserving person who should be loved ( <i>dignus est qui ametur</i> ), 276.
62. To inflict punishment on a man.	To affect a man with punishment (276) ( <i>aliquem pœnâ afficere</i> ).
63. To gain a triumph for a victory over the Gauls.	To triumph concerning ( <i>de</i> ) the Gauls.
64. A blessing on } your Good luck, or success to } valour. Go on in your valour !	Be thou increased in valour ( <i>macte virtute esto: voc. for nom. 280.</i> ) ( <i>Plur. macti esse!</i> )
65. You are envied, spared, favoured, answered, &c.	<i>It is envied</i> (spared, favoured, answered, &c.) <i>to you</i> (290).
66. I don't know when the letter will be written.	I don't know when <i>it will be</i> ( <i>quando futurum sit</i> ) that ( <i>ut</i> ) the letter be written (290).
67. <i>It seems, is said</i> , &c. that Caius has retired.	<i>Caius seems, is said</i> , &c. to have retired (nearly always).
68. <i>We have walked</i> , come, &c.	<i>It has been walked</i> , come, &c. (that is, <i>by us</i> ; <i>ambulatum, ventum, est</i> ). [This is only an <i>occasional</i> and <i>possible</i> construction.]
69. To have reigned above six years.	To be reigning his seventh year.
70. Before the Consulship of Caius.	<i>Before Caius Consul</i> ( <i>ante Caium consulem</i> ).
71. He went to a school at <i>Naples</i> .	He went to Naples to ( <i>prep.</i> ) a school.
72. We should all praise virtue.	Virtue is <i>to-be-praised</i> by all ( <i>laudanda</i> ).
A time to <i>play</i> .	A time of playing.
Fit to <i>carry</i> burdens.	Fit for burdens <i>to be carried</i> ( <i>oneribus gestandis idoneus</i> ).
He is born (or inclined) <i>to act</i> .	He is born (or inclined) for acting ( <i>ad agendum</i> ).
Prepared to <i>take up arms</i> .	Prepared for ( <i>ad</i> ) <i>arms-to-be-taken-up</i> .
73. Whilst they are drinking, playing, &c.	During drinking, playing, &c. ( <i>inter bibendum, ludendum, &amp;c.</i> )
To be able to pay.	To be for paying ( <i>solvendo esse</i> ).
To be equal to bearing the burden.	To be for bearing the burden ( <i>oneri ferendo esse</i> ).

<sup>d</sup> This notion is probably that of a debt *standing against a man* in his creditor's books.

ENGLISH.	LATIN.
<i>To tend to the preservation of liberty.</i>	To be of liberty <i>to-be-preserved</i> ( <i>conservanda libertatis esse</i> ).
74. I <i>have to do</i> another page. I will <i>have it done</i> .	Another page is <i>to-be-done</i> . I will cause it- <i>to-be-done</i> ( <i>curabo faciendum</i> ).
75. He gave them the country <i>to dwell in</i> .	He gave them the country <i>to be dwelt in</i> ( <i>habitandam</i> ), 364.
76. I go <i>to consult</i> Apollo.	I go <i>intending-to consult</i> ( <i>consulturus</i> ) Apollo (354).
77. Balbus <i>having left</i> Lavinium, &c.	{ Balbus, Lavinium being left, &c. { Balbus, when he had left Lavinium, &c. ( <i>Relicto Lavinio; or quum reliquisset Lavinium: 363, a.</i> )
78. From the <i>foundation</i> of Rome. From the <i>destruction</i> of Jerusalem. The honour of <i>having saved</i> the king (of the king's <i>preservation</i> ).	From <i>Rome founded</i> ( <i>a Româ conditâ</i> ). From <i>Jerusalem destroyed</i> (363). The honour of the <i>saved king</i> ( <i>servati regis decus</i> ).
79. He does it <i>without robbing others</i> . He goes away <i>without your perceiving it</i> . They condemn him <i>without hearing him</i> .	He does it, <i>not robbing others</i> . He goes away, <i>you not perceiving it</i> ( <i>te non sentiente</i> ).
80. I have completed the work.  I see plainly through his design.	They condemn him <i>unheard</i> ( <i>inauditum</i> ). I have the work completed ( <i>opus absolutum habeo</i> ), 364. I have his design <i>seen through</i> ( <i>perspectum habeo</i> ), 364.
81. I heard him <i>sing</i> . I saw him <i>walk</i> .	I heard him <i>singing</i> . I saw him <i>walking</i> (361).
82. <i>That only</i> . And that too. By a good man <i>it is true</i> , but an unlearned one.	That <i>at length</i> ( <i>is demum</i> ). <i>Et is, isque, idemque</i> . By a good man <i>that indeed</i> , but an unlearned one ( <i>a bono illo quidem viro, sed—, or sed tamen, 383</i> ).
Literature, <i>and that too</i> of no common kind.	Literature, <i>nor that of a-common-kind</i> ( <i>neo eas vulgares</i> ).
83. A slave <i>of mine</i> .	'My slave;' or 'a certain one out of ( <i>quidam ex</i> ) my slaves.'
84. He took away all <i>my care</i> .	He took away <i>from me</i> ( <i>mihî</i> ) all care.
85. That famous Medea.	That Medea ( <i>Medea illa</i> ).
86. Those whom we love we <i>also wish</i> happy.	Those whom we love, <i>the same</i> ( <i>eodem</i> ) we wish happy.
87. Something or other <i>obscure</i> .  Some chance or other.  Somewhat disturbed.	I know not what of <i>obscure</i> ( <i>nescio quid obscuri</i> ). <i>I know not what chance</i> ( <i>nescio quis casus</i> ). Disturbed <i>I know not what</i> ( <i>nescio quid conturbatus</i> ).
88. Henry, Charles, <i>and</i> John.	{ Henry, Charles, John. { Henry, <i>and</i> Charles, <i>and</i> John.
89. <i>Every</i> opinion that &c. <i>Every</i> man <i>who</i> .	<i>Whatever</i> opinion ( <i>quæcumque opinio</i> ). <i>Whoever</i> ( <i>quisquis</i> ). (More commonly than in English, as we seldom use 'whoever,' when the notion of 'every' is <i>emphatic</i> .)
90. <i>One</i> Balbus. 91. <i>One</i> runs <i>one way</i> , <i>another another</i> . Different men run different ways. }	A certain ( <i>quidam</i> ) Balbus.  <i>Another man runs another way</i> .

ENGLISH.	LATIN.
Some run one way, others another.	<i>Other men run another way</i> (or other ways). [ <i>alius—alius</i> (or some <i>adv.</i> derived from <i>alius</i> ).]
92. The best men always &c. <i>Hidden snares are always &amp;c.</i>	<i>Each best man &amp;c.</i> ( <i>optimus quisque</i> ). <i>Each hidden snare &amp;c.</i> (but <i>quisque</i> may be used in the <i>plur.</i> when a <i>subst.</i> is expressed in this construction: <i>ocultissima quæque insidias</i> .)
All the wisest men.	Each wisest man ( <i>doctissimus quisque</i> ).
93. These are hard to avoid. There is difficulty in avoiding these. He has the greatest difficulty in suspecting.	These are avoided with difficulty ( <i>difficile</i> ). ( <i>Difficilius, difficillime</i> , when required.) He suspects with the greatest difficulty ( <i>difficillime</i> ).
94. He is too proud to steal.	He is prouder than that he ( <i>quam ut or quam qui</i> with subj.) should steal.
95. I armed the greatest forces I could.	I armed forces (as great) as the greatest I could ( <i>quam maximas potui copias</i> ).
96. As great a difference as there can possibly be. The greatest possible difference.	A difference as-great-as the greatest can be ( <i>quanta maxima potest esse</i> ).
97. I have been long desiring. They had long been preparing.	I am a long time already desiring ( <i>jampridem cupio</i> ). They were a long time already preparing (413).
98. When I take my journey, I will come. When I have performed this, I will come. When he is come, he will tell us. When you shall wish to play, remember to play fair. As you sow, so will you reap. I will do it, if I can.	When I shall take my journey, I will come. When I shall have performed this, I will come. When he shall have come, he will tell us. When you shall wish to play, remember to play fair. As you shall sow, so will you reap. I will do it, if I shall be able.
99. They do nothing but laugh.	They nothing else than laugh ( <i>nihil aliud quam rident</i> ).
100. What shall I do ? What am I to do ? What can I do ? Why should I relate ? What was I to do ? What should I have done ? What ought I to have done ?	Quid faciam ? Cur hæc narrem ? Quid facerem ? (425.)
101. You would have thought. You would have believed. You would have said. You would have seen.	Putares. Crederes. Diceres. Videres.
102. I remember to have read.	Memini me legere.
103. It would have been better.	It was better ( <i>utilius or satius fuit</i> °).
104. No painter.	(Often) <i>nemo pictor</i> °.

° So, *satis, par, rectum, justum, idoneum, optimum, consentaneum, melius, æquius, rectius, satius erat—fuit—fuerat*.

\* Stürenburg says that Cicero has (for no author, painter, citizen, &c.) N. *nemo* or *nullus* scriptor. G. *nullius* scriptoris. D. *nemini* (once only *nulli*) scriptori. ACC. *neminem* or *nullum* scriptorem. ABL. *nullo* scriptore.



ENGLISH.	LATIN.
This does <i>not at all</i> terrify me.	This terrifies me nothing ( <i>nihil me terret</i> ).
105. Even this is <i>not</i> just, <i>unless</i> it be voluntary.	Even this is <i>so</i> just, if it is voluntary ( <i>ita justum . . . si est &amp;c.</i> ).
106. He was more prudent than <i>brave</i> .	He was more prudent than <i>braver</i> ( <i>prudenter quam fortior</i> ), 452, w.
107. To make a bridge <i>over</i> a river. The thing <i>in question</i> .	To make a bridge <i>in</i> a river. The thing <i>de quo agitur</i> .
108. I have nothing to accuse old age of.	I have nothing <i>which</i> I may accuse old age ( <i>nihil habeo quod incusam senectutem</i> ), 478.
I have found <i>scarcely any thing</i> to censure.	I have found <i>scarcely any thing, which</i> I may censure.
Men who abound in silver, in gold, in estates.	Men who abound in silver, <i>who</i> in gold, <i>who</i> in estates.
Men who abound neither in silver, nor in gold, <i>nor</i> in estates.	Men who do <i>not</i> abound in silver, <i>not</i> in gold, <i>not</i> in estates (478).
A pen <i>to write with</i> .	A pen, <i>with which</i> one may write (478).
109. [Constructions with the relative.]	
(1) Some persons think: <i>or</i> , there are some who think, &c.	There are some who think ( <i>subj.</i> : <i>Sunt qui putent, &amp;c.</i> ).
(2) You have no <i>reason</i> ( <i>cause, occasion, need, &amp;c.</i> ) to hurry.	There is nothing (on account of) which you should hurry ( <i>nihil est quod festinas</i> ). ( <i>or</i> ) There is not (any thing, for) which you should hurry ( <i>non est quod, &amp;c.</i> ).
(3) He was despised by them, <i>for they saw</i> through him.	He was despised by them, <i>who saw</i> through him ( <i>qui</i> with <i>subj.</i> ).
(4) He deserves to be loved.	He is a worthy person who should be loved. ( <i>Dignus est, qui ametur; or, quem ames. So, indignus est, qui ametur; or, quem ames.</i> )
(5) He is not a proper person to be received.	He is not a proper person <i>who should be received</i> ( <i>or, whom</i> you should receive).
(6) None are <i>so</i> good <i>as</i> never to sin.	No one is <i>so</i> good <i>who</i> never sins ( <i>subj.</i> ).
(7) Of <i>such</i> a kind <i>that</i> we can neglect duties for their sake.	Of <i>such</i> a kind <i>for the sake of which</i> we can neglect duties.
(8) <i>Too short</i> to be the whole life of man.	Shorter than <i>which can be</i> ( <i>quam que sit or possit esse</i> ) the whole life of man.
(9) I am not <i>a man</i> ( <i>or, am not so foolish, simple, credulous, &amp;c.</i> ) as to believe this.	I am not <i>that</i> (person) <i>who</i> can believe ( <i>is qui credam</i> ).
(10) Who am I <i>that my writings</i> should be honoured thus?	Who am I <i>whose writings</i> should be honoured thus?
(11) They sent ambassadors <i>to sue</i> for peace.	They sent ambassadors <i>who should sue</i> for peace ( <i>qui pacem peterent</i> ).
(12) He deserves praise (blame, &c.) <i>for having</i> done this.	He deserves praise, &c. <i>who did</i> this ( <i>subj.</i> ).
(13) Wretched man that I am, who thought, &c.	O me miserable, <i>who thought, &amp;c.</i> ( <i>qui</i> with <i>subj.</i> ).
(14) How few there are who &c.	<i>Quotusquisque est qui . . . ?</i> (with <i>subj.</i> )
110. Incensuring them you censure me.	<i>When</i> you censure them, you censure me ( <i>quum</i> with <i>indio.</i> ).
111. It is many years since he was first in my debt.	There are many years <i>when</i> he is in my debt ( <i>quum</i> in <i>meo sare est</i> ).

- | ENGLISH.  | -LATIN.   |
|---|---|
| I congratulate you on your influence with Caius.                  | I congratulate you, <i>when</i> you avail so much with Caius ( <i>quum</i> , generally <i>quod</i> , tantum valet apud Caium).  |
| I don't like to be abused.  | I am not abused <i>willingly</i> ( <i>libenter</i> , 461).  |
| 112. A mortal body must necessarily perish.                       | It is necessary that a mortal body should perish.<br>[Mortale corpus interire (or intereat) necesse est.]                       |
| <i>There is no living pleasantly.</i>                             | <i>It cannot be lived pleasantly</i> (504).   |
| 113. In addition to <i>this</i> he is blind.                      | <i>Hither is added</i> , that he is blind (huc acced-it, ebat, &c. ut §, 513).  |
| 114. He accused him of <i>having betrayed</i> the king.           | He accused him <i>that</i> (quod) <i>he had betrayed</i> the king ( <i>subj.</i> ).   |
| His <i>having spared</i> the conquered, is a great thing.         | It (or ' <i>this</i> ,' ' <i>that</i> ') is a great thing, <i>that</i> (quod) <i>he spared</i> the conquered ( <i>indio.</i> ). |
| He praised (or blamed) him for <i>having done</i> this.           | He praised (or blamed) him <i>that</i> (quod) <i>he had done</i> this ( <i>subj.</i> ), 520.                                    |
| 115. Many persons admire poems <i>without understanding</i> them. | Many persons admire poems, <i>nor understand</i> them (520).  |
| You cannot be ruined <i>without</i> ruining others.               | You cannot be ruined <i>so</i> as not to ruin others ( <i>ut non</i> with <i>subj.</i> ), 521.                                  |
| 116. <i>Instead of reading</i> , he is at play.                   | He is at play, <i>whereas</i> he <i>ought</i> to be reading ( <i>quum debeat</i> ).   |
| <i>Instead of growing rich</i> (as he might) he is growing poor.  | He is growing poor, <i>whereas</i> he <i>might</i> grow rich ( <i>quum posset</i> ).  |
| <i>Far from thinking this</i> , I hold, &c.                       | It is so far off, that I should think this, that, &c.<br>(Tantum abest ut—ut.) 533.   |
| 117. <i>And</i> (but &c.) if <i>this</i> is granted.              | If <i>which</i> is granted.   |
| <i>Who, they say, was killed.</i>                                 | <i>Whom</i> they report to have been killed.  |
| Who, as B. says, was killed.                                      | <i>Whom</i> B. reports to have been killed.   |
| <i>By which</i> , when we read <i>them</i> , we are affected.     | <i>Which</i> , when we read, we are affected.   |
| Do not think.   | { <i>Beware of thinking, cave putes.</i><br>{ <i>Be unwilling to think, noli putare.</i>  |
| Take care to do it.   | Cura ut facias.   |
| <i>Be sure to be</i> ; or, <i>mind</i> you are.                   | <i>Fao ut sis</i> ; or <i>fao sis</i> .   |
| 118. To make it <i>one's</i> object to.                           | Id agere ut &c. (i. e. 'to be doing that thing' <i>and</i> no other).   |
| 119. To march into the territory of the Belgæ.                    | To march <i>into the Belgæ</i> (in Belgas).   |

† This *necesse* is an *old adj.* used in the *neut. gender* only.

§ More commonly *quod*.

## QUESTIONS ON THE CAUTIONS.

1. WHEN must *him, her, them, (he, she, they,)* be translated by *sui?* and *his, her, its, theirs,* by *suis?* (When the pronoun and the nom. of the verb stand for the same person. 12.)
2. When is the *perf.* in a sentence with '*that*' to be translated by the *present infinitive?* (When the action or state expressed by the *perf.* is not to be described as *over* before the time referred to by the principal verb. 13.)
3. When must '*should*' be translated by the *present infinitive?* (When it does not express duty or a future event<sup>a</sup>. 13.)
4. When are *would, should,* signs of the *future?* (After past tenses. 16.)
5. When should '*thing*' be expressed? (When the masc. and the neut. of the adjective are of the same form. 21.)
6. Where is *omn* placed with the ablatives of the personal pronouns? (After, and as one word with, them. 25.)
7. When a preposition follows a verb, how may you help your judgement in determining whether the *preposition* gives a *transitive sense to the verb,* and is *probably* to be translated by the *inseparable preposition* of a *compound verb?* (By trying whether the preposition clings to the verb in the passive voice. 32.)
8. Is '*for*' before a noun and the *infin.* to be translated? (No.) What is the construction? (Accus. with *infin.* 38.)
9. What are '*as*' and '*but*' often equivalent to? (Relatives. 45. and 43 (a).) Explain '*as*' in '*I, as you know,*' &c. [*I, a fact which you know,—id quod.*]
10. How is '*such*' often used in English? (To express *sic.*) How is it then to be translated? (By *tantus.* 45.)
11. When '*that*' stands for a substantive that has been expressed in a former clause, is it to be translated into Latin? (No. 47, note.)
12. What tense is '*I am come*'? (*Perf. definite of the active voice.*)—what, '*I was come*'? (*Pluperf. of act.*) What verbs form the *perf. active* with '*am*'? (*Intrans. verbs of motion.* 57, note.) What tense is '*the house is built*'? [429, e.]
13. When a verb *seems* to govern two accusatives, by what *preposition* is one of them often governed? (By '*to.*' 60.)
14. When must '*that—not*' be translated by *ut non* instead of *nē?* and '*that nobody,*' '*that nothing,*' &c. by *ut nemo, ut nihil,* respectively? (When '*that*' introduces a consequence, not a purpose: whenever, therefore, a '*so*' or '*such*' goes before it. 77.)
15. How must the English *fut.* be translated after verbs of *fearing*? (By the *pres. subj.* 96.)
16. When are '*who*' and '*which*' dependent interrogatives? (After words of *asking, knowing, doubting, telling,* &c. 112.)

---

<sup>a</sup> To judge of this, try whether you can turn the verb with '*should*' into the participial substantive. "It is strange that you *should* say so." What is strange? Your *saying* so.

17. Does 'may' ever stand for *can*? 'might' for *could*? (Yes. 131.)  
Obs. Not in *negative* sentences. "He said they *might* have found it (= *could* have):" but we cannot say: "he says they *might* not have found it" in this sense.
18. When is the *perf. infin.* to be translated by the *pres. infin.*? (After *might, could, ought, &c.*, when the action is not to be described as *over* before the time referred to. 131.)
19. When are 'of you,' 'of us,' &c. not to be translated after numerals, superlatives, &c. † (When *all* are spoken of. 175.)
20. Is an English *substantive* ever used *adjectively*? (Yes.) Where does it then stand † (Before a substantive.) How must it be translated † (Generally by an *adj.*; sometimes by *ex, de* with a *subst.* 234.)
21. For what does 'what' sometimes stand † (For *how*, or *how-great*.) When must 'what' be translated by 'quam'? (When it stands for 'how')—when by 'quantus'? (When it stands for *how-great*. 242.)
22. When are 'for' and 'as' to be untranslated † (When the noun that follows can be placed in *apposition* to another noun in the sentence. 255.)
23. When must 'one,' 'two,' &c. be translated by *distributive* numerals † (When they stand for 'one a-piece,' &c. 267.)
24. What is the substitute for a *future subjunctive* in the passive verb † (*futurum sit, esset, &c.* ut . . . with the proper tense of the verb.) What must we take care not to use for it † (The part. in *dus*, with *sim, essem, &c.* 287.) What is the only *future subjunctive* in the active voice † [The participle in *rus* with *sim, essem, &c.*]
25. What is 'that' often used for after an expression of *time* † (For *on which*: the *abl.* of relat. 308.)
26. Is that which is *in form* the *present participle act.* in *ing*, always a *participle* † (No.) What else may it be † (The participial substantive.) When is it always the *participial substantive* † (When it *governs*, or is *governed*, instead of merely agreeing.) To what parts of the Latin verb does the *participial substantive* correspond † (The *Infn.* and *Gerund.*) Can the *participial substantive* ever be translated into Latin by a participle † and if so, by what participle † (Yes, by the *participle in dus*: but the *part. in dus* must not *govern* the substantive, but *agree* with it, both being put into the case that corresponds to the *preposition governing the participial substantive*. 330.)
27. Into what construction must 'have' before an *infinitive* be turned for translation into Latin † Into the form 'is, or are, to be —.'  
(I *have to do* three more pages = Three more pages *are to be done* by me. 336.)
28. What does 'is to be done' generally mean † (Necessity, fitness, or intention.) Does 'is to be done' always mean *necessity, fitness, or intention*<sup>b</sup>? (No. 336.)
29. What does 'is to be,' &c. mean, when it does not signify *necessity, fitness, or intention* † [*Ans.* Possibility.]
30. When must a *present partic.* active be translated by a *perfect participle*, or its substitute *quum* with the *perf.* or *pluperf. subjunctive*? (When the action expressed by it must be over, before that expressed by the verb begins. 353.)
31. By what participle of a *deponent* verb is the *pres. participle* often translated † (By the *perf. partic.* 365.)
32. How is 'but' (= *except, unless*) to be translated after a negative † (By *nis, or prater.* 451.)

---

b This *is* what *is to be done* by all who wish to please the king. (*Necessity.*)  
This *is to be done* to-morrow. (*Intention.*)  
This *is to be done*, if you set about it in the right way. (*Possibility.*)

33. When is 'at a town' not to be translated by the *gen.* or *ablat.*? When the action was not done *in* but *near* the town or place: e. g. 'a battle at Mantinea.' How is 'at' to be then translated? [By *apud* or *ad.*]
34. What does 'one' often stand for? [*Some one*, *aliquis*; or a *certain one*, *quidam.*]
35. When an English word is followed by a preposition, what should you always remember? (To consider whether the Latin verb to be used is followed by a preposition or by a case: and then by what preposition or what case.)
36. From *nemo* let me never see } Use *nullius* for the *gen.*: *nullo* for *abl.*  
*Neminis* or *nemine* }
37. When are *will*, *would*, to be translated by *velle*, &c.? [When for *will*, *would* we may substitute respectively *is* or *was willing* to do so and so; *consented* to do so and so.] How is *will not*, *would not* then translated? [By *nolle.*]
38. Before the *infin. pass.* the perfects of *capio* and *desino* are *coepit* est, *desitus* est.
39. Take care not to translate the *indicative* of the pluperfect after 'if' by the Latin pluperf. *indicative*. [*If he had come*, *si venisset*, &c.]
40. When 'any' is to be translated by *quis* do not use *quis*, *quid*, but *qui*, *quod*, when the 'any' has a substantive with it. Thus not, *si quis scriptor*, but *si qui scriptor*: not *si quid telum*, but *si quod telum*.
41. *The enemy* is mostly *hostes*, plur., but not always; a *camp* is *castra*, pl.; a *letter* (= epistle), *literæ*, pl.; strength, *vires*, pl.
42. When a substantive with 'the' is followed by a relative clause, translate 'the' by *is*, *ea*, *id*.
43. When an *adverb* is to be translated by a substantive, use the *abl.*, since that is the case which denotes *manner*.
44. Remember that in *inchoatives* [i. e. verbs ending in *-escere*] our *present* is mostly translated by the *perfect*, because the verb means not *doing* the thing, but 'beginning to do it.' Thus *noscere* = 'to become acquainted with,' *novi*, *I know*; so *consuevi*; so also *cepi*, *memini*, &c.
45. When an *English passive* is to be translated by an *intransitive verb*, take care not to give it a passive voice. Thus 'to be grieved' must be *dolere* (not *doleri*); 'to be depressed,' *jacere* (not *jaceri*).

## QUESTIONS ON THE SYNTAX.

**IN** what respects does a verb agree with its nominative case ? an adjective with its substantive ? What verbs take a substantive or adjective after them in the nominative ?

[*Ans.* Verbs of *becoming, being, seeming,*

With passive verbs of *making, calling, deeming.*]

**IN** what case does the thing *by which* stand ? In what case does the *agent*, or person *by whom* stand ? When should the pronoun that is the nom. to the verb be expressed ? [Is the pron. expressed or not, when *one action* is opposed to another done by the *same person* ; as in '*I warned, not punished you,*' note \*.]

§ 1. When two or more nom. cases sing. come together, in which *number* should the verb be put ? in what *person* ?

[With *et—et, quum—tum*, in which number is the verb generally put, when both the nominatives are *sing.* and of the same person ? (*a*). Which of the Latin words for '*and*' joins notions that are represented as being of *equal importance* ? Which gives *more importance* to the *added* or *second* notion ? What is the office of *que* ? (*note d*.)]

§ 2. What case does the infin. take before it ? What Eng. *conjunction* is sometimes to be untranslated ? When '*that*' is to be untranslated, in what case do you put the *nom.*, and in what *mood* the verb ?

Mention some verbs, &c. that are followed by *acc.* with *infin.*

(1) Verbs *sentiendi et declarandi* :

Of feeling, wishing, knowing, } with which acc. with infin. stands as  
Believing, saying, trowing, } the *object*.

(2) Nearly all *impersonal forms* \* (with which acc. with infin. stands as the *subject*), except

The following verbs and phrases used impersonally, which are followed by *ut*.

Contingit, evenit, and accidit,  
With restat, reliquum est, and fit,  
So usu venit, sequitur,  
Proximum est, relinquitur :  
Add longe abest, tantum abest,  
With prope est, and superest.  
Accedit—you may think it odd—  
Is followed both by *ut* and *quod* †.

To these may be added *mos est, consuetudo est, extremum est, jus est, convēnit, and sometimes necesse est, opus est, licet, and other phrases* <sup>b</sup>.

Do any verbs of the class *sentiendi* admit of any other construction ?

[Yes, those that express *emotion* are often followed by *quod* : those that express *wishing*, especially *opto* by *ut*.]

\* That is, where in English we use '*it*' as the representative of the true nominative.

† According to Herzog, *accedit quod* always implies a *judgement* of the narrator's, *accedit ut* introduces simply an *historical fact* : *accedit quod* being nearly = *præterea* : *accedit ut*, to *præterea fieri solet* or *factum est* (*ut* &c.).

<sup>b</sup> For which see Part II. 818, 819.

- § 3. How is the English *infin. present* usually translated in Latin after *promise, hope, undertake, or engage*?
- § 4. When an adjective belongs to more than one substantive or pronoun, with which should it agree in *gender*? and in which number should it stand, even when the substantives, &c. are all *sing.*? When the substantives are things that *have not life*, in what *gender* is the *adj.* generally put? What substantives are seldom to be translated? Translate ALL MY *property*; MUCH, VERY MUCH; LITTLE, VERY LITTLE; THE PAST.
- § 5. What are respectively the *demonstratives* or *antecedent pronouns* to *qui, qualis, quantus, quot*?
- Is the relative ever governed in *case* by a word that is not in its own clause? [No.]
- [Must *quantus* and *qualis* agree with the *same substantive*, expressed or understood, as the *tantus, talis* in the other clause? (Obs. 2.)]
- In what respects does the relative agree with its antecedent? [*Ans.* in *gender, number, and person.*] When the antecedent is expressed in the *relative*, and omitted in the *principal* clause, where is the relative clause often placed? what *pronoun* often represents it in the principal clause?
- What is the relative '*what*' equivalent to? [*Ans.* '*That which:*' often to '*those things which.*']
- When the *relat.* agrees with some case of a *subst.* expressed in its own, but not in the principal clause, what must be done? [*Ans.* Some case of that *subst.* must be supplied in the principal clause.]
- § 6. For what does an *infin.* sometimes stand? When an *adj.* or *rel.* is to agree with an *infin.* mood or *sentence*, in what *gender* must it be put? When the *rel.* has a sentence for its antecedent, what do we often find instead of the *rel.* only?
- [*Id quod, or qua res: id or res* being in apposition to the sentence.]
- § 7. What is the great rule for the sequence of tenses? (40.) Is the *perf.* with '*have*' considered a *past* tense? [No.] Is the *fut. perf.* a *subj.* tense? [No.] How should '*but,*' or a *relative* with '*not,*' generally be translated after *nobody, nothing, &c.*?<sup>d</sup>
- § 8. In such a sentence as '*Thebes, which is a town,*' &c. should '*which*' agree with '*Thebes*' or with '*town*'? When does '*which*' in such a sentence, generally agree with its proper antecedent?
- § 9. When the antecedent has a *superlative* with it, in which clause does the *superlative* generally stand? HE WAS THE FIRST PERSON WHO DID IT.
- § 10. How is '*that*' to be translated when it is followed by '*may*' or '*might*'? what does it then express? [A *purpose.*] How is '*that*' expressing a *purpose*, to be translated, when it is followed by '*not*' or any *negative* word?
- § 11. How is '*that*' to be translated after '*so,*' '*such*'? what does it then express? [A *consequence.*] How is '*that*' to be translated when the sentence has a comparative in it? What is *quo* equivalent to, and what is its force with the comparative? [*Quo* is equivalent to *ut eo:* with the comparative, '*that by this;*' '*that the.*'] Does *quo* ever stand for '*that*' when there is no comparative in the sentence? [Yes; it is then equivalent to '*that*'

<sup>c</sup> But when '*man*' is coupled with an epithet of *praise*, it should generally be translated (by *vir*); especially if it is an *apposition*.

<sup>d</sup> *Quin* cannot stand for *cujus non, cui non*; but either these forms must be used or the demonstrative expressed (*cujus ille vitia non videat: or, quin ille ejus vitia videat*). In the *nom.* or *acc.* *qui non* may be used, and *should be* when the *non* belongs especially to the verb. *Quin* is compounded of the old *abl. qui* and *ne, not*. It does not therefore itself contain the pronoun: but the *nom.* or *acc.* of the demonstrative is understood. (See example in 88.)

<sup>e</sup> "In funeribus Atheniensium sublata erat celebritas virorum ac mulierum, quo lamentatio minueretur." (Cic.)

- by this means.] How is 'not' to be translated before the *imperative* or *subj.* used imperatively? How is 'as' before the *infin.* and after 'so,' 'such', to be translated?
- § 12. What does the Latin *infin.* never express? When the Eng. inf. expresses a *purpose*, how must it be translated? After what verbs is the *infin.* to be translated by *ut* with the subjunctive?
- § 13. Give the forms for *that nobody*; *that nothing*; *that no*; *that never*. When must *that nobody*; *that nothing*, &c. be translated by *ut nemo*; *ut nihil*, &c.?
- § 14. How must 'as not to . . .' &c. after a negative be translated? After what verbs, when used *negatively*, must *quin* be used? Is *non dubito* ever followed by acc. with *infin.*? [Nearly always, when *dubitare* means to *hesitate*; when it means to *doubt*, the acc. with *infin.* hardly ever follows it in Cicero, but does in Corn. Nepos.]
- § 15. By what conjunction are verbs of *hindering* often followed? [By *quominus*, which is equivalent to *ut eo minus*.] Are verbs of *hindering* followed by any other conjunctions? [Yes; they may be followed by *nē*, when the *purpose of preventing* is to be strongly marked: by *quin* after a negative sentence: and sometimes by acc. with *infin.*<sup>k</sup>] How must 'that not' be translated after verbs of *fearing*? how must 'that' be translated after verbs of *fearing*?
- § 16. Which interrogative particle asks simply for information? [Nē.] Which expects the answer 'yes?' [Nonne.] Which the answer 'no?' [Num.]

<sup>f</sup> *Quin* must be used, if it is, 'as not to . . .' &c. after a *negative* sentence. (See example 88.)

<sup>g</sup> Except in poetry.

<sup>h</sup> The various ways of expressing a *purpose* are given in the following table:—

Eo ut ludos spectem,	}	<i>I am going to see the games.</i>
Eo { ludorum spectandorum } causâ,		
Eo { ludos spectandi }		
Eo ludos spectaturus,		
Eo ad ludos spectandos,		
Eo ludos spectatum ( <i>sup.</i> ),		

<sup>i</sup> The general rule for the use of *ut*, is that it may be used:

- (1) To express every *request*; *command* (except after *jubeo*); *advice*; *effect*; *decrees*.
- (2) To introduce the conditions of an *agreement* or *treaty*.
- (3) It is used after all *intensive* words, such as 'such,' 'so' (*tantus, talis, tot, ita, adeo, sic*).
- (4) All *purposes* may be expressed by *ut*. (Crombie.)

Obs. *Moneo* and *persuadeo* will not be followed by *ut* (but by acc. and *infin.*) when the person is not warned or persuaded to do something, but merely that something is so.

<sup>j</sup> One example in Cic. is: *Gratos tibi optatosque esse, qui de me rumores afferunt, non dubito* (*Fam.* 16, 21, 2). This is probably the *only* example.

<sup>k</sup> "Nostros navibus egredi prohibebant." (Cæs.) Zumpt says, that the inf. sometimes follows *impedire, deterrere; recusare; and frequently prohibere*.—The inf. is then very often of the *passive* form, i. e. passive or deponent. The *quin* marks, not the *purpose*, but the *result*; i. e. that the action was really *not prevented*. Thus after *prohibeo*, to express that I offered no resistance or made no objection to a person's going, I must say, *non prohibui ne (or quominus) proficisceretur*; but not *quin proficisceretur*, which would mean that I really stopped him. (K.)

<sup>l</sup> But *nē* appears sometimes to be used as equivalent to *nonne*. 'Estne hoc illi dicto atque facto Fimbriano simillimum?' (Cic. pro Sext. Rosc. Am. 33.) *Non* is also used for *nonne*, in questions where indignation, impatience, &c. is to be expressed.



- § 17. When are questions *dependent*? [When they follow and *depend* on such verbs as *ask, doubt, know, examine, try*: *it is doubtful, uncertain*<sup>m</sup>, &c.]  
In what mood does the verb stand in a dependent question? In what mood must the verb be put in sentences that stand as the *acc.* to a preceding verb?
- § 19. How must '*whether*' be translated in double questions? how '*or*'? If '*whether*' is untranslated, how may '*or*' be translated? Does an *ever* stand before a single question? [Yes: it then implies, with something of impatience, that the answer must be 'no.'] By what must '*or*' not be translated in double questions?
- § 20. Go through *I may go, &c. I might have gone, &c. I can do it; I could have done it; I ought to do it; I ought to have done it.* Translate, *I ought to do it, omitting ut.* I MAY BE DECEIVED. How is the *perf. infin.* generally to be translated after *might, could, ought*?
- § 21. How is the case of a substantive in *apposition* determined? When *urbs* or *oppidum* stands in apposition to the *name of a town*, does the verb agree with *urbs, oppidum*, or with the name of the town?
- § 22. HE WISHES TO BE THE FIRST. HE SAYS THAT HE IS READY.
- § 23. THEY MAY BE HAPPY. WE MAY BE NEUTRAL.
- § 24. When may a *substantive* and *preposition* generally be translated by the *gen.*? [*Ans.* When the *propos.* joins it to another substantive.] How MUCH PLEASURE; MUCH GOOD; SOME TIME.
- § 25. What do you mean by a *partitive* adj.? What case follows *partitive* adjectives? With what does the *partitive* adj. generally agree in gender? In what *gender* does a *superlative* (or *solus*) stand when it governs a *genit.* and also refers to another *subst.*? In what case does a substantive of *description* stand when it has an *adjective agreeing with it*? By what case is *opus est* followed? What other construction is there with *opus est*? THERE IS NO NEED. WHAT NEED IS THERE! THE TOP OF THE MOUNTAIN. THE MIDDLE OF THE WAY. THE REST OF THE WORK. THE WHOLE OF GREECE.
- § 26. What case do adjectives that signify *desire, &c.* govern? What case do participles *used adjectively* and verbals in *as* govern?
- § 28. What substantives are omitted after *to be*? IT IS CICERO'S PART. IT IS YOUR PART. What case do verbs of *accusing, &c.* take of the *charge*? What case do *satago, &c.* govern? What case do verbs of *remembering and forgetting* govern? In what case may a *neut. pron.* stand with *accusare, admonere, &c.*?
- § 29. With *interest* and *refert* in what case is the person *to whom* it is of importance put? [In the *genitive* when the person is expressed by a *substantive*: in the *abl. fem.* when a *possessive pronoun* is used.] How is the *degree of importance* expressed? how is the *thing that is of importance* expressed? what case of the *person feeling* do *pudet, &c.* take? what case of what *causes* the feeling?
- § 30. What adjectives govern the *dat.*? Mention some adjectives that are followed by *ad.* What cases may follow *propior, proximus*? When should *similis* take the *gen.*? (w., and 211, 3.)
- § 31. In what case do you put the person, *to, for, or against whom* the action is done, or the feeling entertained? Mention the classes of verbs that take the *dat.* [Verba comparandi; dandi et reddendi; promittendi ac solvendi; imperandi et nuntiandi; fidendi; minandi et irascendi; obsequendi et repugnandi, regunt dativum: quibus addas,  
*Invideo, nubo, favoreque, indulgeo, paroo,  
Gratulor, auxilior, studeo, medeorque, roroque.*]

<sup>m</sup> Obs. If you have any doubt whether *who, which, what*, is a *rel.* or an *interrog.*, ask a question with the clause, and see whether the sentence before you readily and obviously *answers* it. 'I don't know *who* did it.' '*Who* did it?' 'I don't know *who* did it.' Therefore '*who*' is here an *interrogative*.

Do any of these take the *acc.* also? By what prepositions may verbs of *comparing* be followed? [By *cum* or *ad.*] How is 'together' to be translated after *compare*?

[ 'Together' may translated be,  
After *compare*, by 'inter se.']

What verbs of *advantage* and *disadvantage* govern the *acc.*? HE THREATENS ME WITH DEATH.

[He threatens me with death should be,  
In Latin, threatens death to me.]

Of verbs of *commanding*, which govern the *acc.* only? which the *dat.* or *acc.*?

§ 32. What case do *sum* and its compounds govern? What exception is there? Mention the compound verbs that generally govern the *dat.*

[Most of those compounded with  
Præ, con, sub,  
Ad, in, inter, ob:

Many of those compounded with  
Ab, post, ante, de,  
Re, pro, super, e.]

§ 33. HE SURROUNDS THE CITY WITH A WALL. HE PRESENTS ME WITH A GARLAND<sup>n</sup>.

§ 34. What verbs govern two datives? What case often follows *sum* where *we* should put the nom.? How is 'have' often translated? MY NAME IS CAIUS (239). I HAVE A COW. I HAVE SIX COWS.

§ 35. Do neuter verbs ever take the *acc.*? Explain *sitire honores*.

§ 36. What verbs take two accusatives? Do all the verbs that have any of these meanings take two accusatives? What transitive verbs take two accusatives, one in a sort of *apposition* to the other?

§ 37. What does the *abl.* express? In what case is the *price* put? What adjectives stand in the *abl.* to express the price, *pretio* being understood? What adjectives *always* express price in the *gen.*? What substantives stand in the *gen.* after verbs of *valuing*? What should be used instead of *multi* and *majoris*?

§ 38. What case do verbs of *abounding*, &c., govern? What case may *egeo* and *indigeo* govern? What case do verbs of *freeing from*, &c. take? What is their more general construction in prose? What case do *fungor*, &c. govern<sup>o</sup>? In what case is the *manner*, *cause*, &c. put?

§ 39. How is a *voc.* sometimes used in poetry? What case sometimes stands in *apposition* to the *voc.*?

§ 40. In what case is the *agent* expressed after the pass. verb, when *a*, *ab*, is not used? After what part of the verb is this the regular construction? What verbs cannot be used *personally* in the pass. voice? Go through *I am believed*<sup>p</sup>. Mention some verbs that have a *pass. construction* (286). What is the substitute for a *fut. inf. pass.*, when the verb has no supine to form it with *iri*? I HOPE HE WILL RECOVER (use *fore ut*).

§ 41. What verbs can govern an *acc.* in the *pass.*? Can a *pass. verb* or participle take an *acc.* of the *part affected*? WE HAVE WALKED ENOUGH (trans. by the *pass.*). Which is the more common in Lat. 'Caius videtur, dicitur, &c., esse,' or 'videtur, dicitur, &c. Caium esse'?

<sup>n</sup> Mihi coronam, or me coronâ donat.

<sup>o</sup> In the phrase 'potiri rerum' (to become a ruling power) the *gen.* only is found.

P I am believed,  
thou art believed,  
he is believed,  
we are believed,  
you are believed,  
they are believed,

mibi creditur.  
tibi creditur.  
illi creditur.  
nobis creditur.  
vobis creditur.  
illis creditur.

- § 42. How is a noun of *time* put in answer to *when*? in answer to *for how long*? How do you express the time *in* or *within which*? How do you express time in answer to *how long before* or *after*? How are *ante*, *post*, used in this construction? How do you express a point or space of *future time* for which any arrangement is now made? How do you express the *exact time by* or *against* which a thing is to be done? How is 'ago' translated? and what is the *position* of the word by which you translate it? THREE YEARS AGO. THREE YEARS OLD. ABOVE TWENTY YEARS OLD\* (307, f). THREE YEARS AFTER HE HAD RETURNED (310 (a)).
- § 43. In what case is the town *at which* a thing is done, to be put? In what case is the name of a town to be put in answer to *whither*? in answer to *whence*? To *what* proper names do these rules apply? In what case do *urbs* and *oppidum* stand in apposition to the name of a town in the *gen.* (315)? How is *local space* expressed?
- § 44. Decline 'grieving' <sup>q</sup> throughout. OF WRITING A LETTER. I AM TO BE LOVED. Go through I MUST WRITE. Go through *epistola scribenda*. When must the *part. in dus* not be used in agreement with its substantive (332)? WE MUST SPARE OUR ENEMIES. AT HOME. FROM HOME. HOME (after a verb of motion). INTO THE COUNTRY. FROM THE COUNTRY. IN THE COUNTRY. ON THE GROUND.
- § 45. What kind of sentences may be translated by participles (344)? In what case do a noun (or pronoun) and participle stand when the *noun* or *pronoun* is not governed by any other word? What is this called?
- § 46. HE GAVE THEM THE COUNTRY TO DWELL IN. What does the *part. in rus* often express? What does the *part. in dus* often express? Express 'to have a thing made,' in the sense of *causing* it to be made. [Faciendum curare.]
- § 47. What participle is wanting in all but deponents and neuter-passives? HAVING LEFT HIS BROTHER. [Relicto fratre, or quum reliquisset fratrem.]
- § 48. MY OWN FAULT. THEIR OWN FAULT (373, a). When *-self*, *-selves* are to be translated by *ipse* and a personal pronoun, in what case may *ipse* stand? [In the *nom.* or in the case of *sui*, according to the meaning †.] When may *him*, *his*, *her*, *its*, *theirs*, in a dependent sentence, be translated by *sui* or *suis*, even when they denote the *nom.* not of their *own*, but of the principal sentence? By what pronoun must *him*, *her*, &c. be translated when *sui* or *suis* would be understood to mean the *nom.* of its own verb? Does *suis* ever relate to the *accusative*? With what *pron.* is this very common? Which *gen. pl.* (*um* or *i*) is used after *paratives* (372)?

- 
- \* 1. Major or minor (decem) annis. (*Liv.*)  
 2. \_\_\_\_\_ (decem) annorum. (*Liv.*)  
 3. \_\_\_\_\_ (decem) annis natu. (*Cic.*)  
 4. \_\_\_\_\_ (decem) annis natus. (*Nep.*)  
 5. \_\_\_\_\_ (decem) annos natus. (*Nep.*)  
 6. \_\_\_\_\_ quam (decem) annos natus. (*Liv.*)

q N.	<i>grieving,</i>	<i>dolere.</i>
G.	<i>of grieving,</i>	<i>dolendi.</i>
D.	<i>to grieving,</i>	<i>dolendo.</i>
Acc.	<i>grieving,</i>	<i>dolere.</i>
Abl.	<i>by grieving,</i>	<i>dolendo.</i>

The *acc.* is *dolendum* only when governed by a preposition. 'Se peccati insimulant quod *dolere* intermiserint' (have intermitted *grieving*).

† 'He wounded himself,' se *ipse* vulneravit (= *ipse*, non *alius*, se vulneravit): se *ipsum* vulneravit (= se, non *alium*, vulneravit.) Hence *ipse* is to be in the *nom.* or in the *oblique case*, according as the notion to which it is opposed, or with which it is contrasted, is in the *nom.* or in an *oblique case*.

- § 49. What is the difference between 'is qui pugnat,' and 'hic or ille qui pugnat' (376, g)? Which of these three pronouns is to be used when *he, him, &c.* is without emphasis, simply describing a person or thing *before mentioned* or *about to be described* by a rel. clause? By what case only of 'is' can *his, her, their,* be translated? [*Ans.* By the *gen.*] Of two things already mentioned, what pron. means *the latter*? what *the former*? Which pron. means *that of yours*? *MEDEA ILLA.* Distinguish between *hic, iste, ille,* referring to different objects.
- § 50. When is 'any' to be translated by *quisquam* or *ullus*? when by *quis*? when by *quivis, quilibet*? when by *aliquis, quispiam*? Does *quisquam* ever follow *si*\* [note w]? By what pronoun may 'a' sometimes be translated?
- § 51. What *prefix* do interrogatives often take? what *affix*? Give the derivation of *eo- in eoque, &c.* How should 'always' with two superlatives be translated?
- § 52. When are the pronouns *that, those,* not to be translated? [*Ans.* When they stand in the *second* member of a comparative sentence for a substantive expressed in the first.] When *quam* is omitted, in what case is the following *subst.* put? What case goes with comparatives and superlatives to express the measure of *excess* or *defect*? How are the Eng. 'the—the' (= *by how much—by so much*) to be translated?
- § 53. Is the present ever followed by the *imperf. subj.*? When? When is the Eng. *pres.* generally translated by the Lat. *future*? By what tense is the *perf. definite* often translated? [*Ans.* By the *future perfect.*] How are assertions *softened* in Latin? What subjunctives are very frequently used in this way? What conjunction is often omitted after *velim, &c.*? I HAVE LONG DESIRED (410, a).
- § 54. Is the *perf. subj.* ever used as an *imperat.*? What other tense is sometimes used as an *imperat.*? By what tense are 'rhetorical questions' or 'questions of appeal' to be translated? IF HE HAS ANY THING, HE GIVES IT. [Si quid habet, dat.\*] IF I HAVE ANY THING, I WILL GIVE IT. [Si quid habeam, dabo.] IF HE SHOULD HAVE ANY THING, HE WOULD GIVE IT. [Si quid haberet, daret: *but much more commonly, si quid habeat, det.*] IF HE HAD ANY THING, HE WOULD GIVE IT. [Si quid habuisset, dedisset.] How is 'possibility without any expression of uncertainty' translated? How is 'uncertainty with the prospect of decision' translated? How is 'uncertainty without any such accessory notion' translated? How is 'impossibility, or belief that the thing is *not so,*' translated? May the consequence and the condition refer, the one to *past,* the other to *present* time? When the consequence has 'would have,' how must you translate the *pluperf. indic.* in the conditional clause? With what tenses may *si* take the *indic.*? With what tenses does *si* always govern the subjunctive?
- § 56. In conditional sentences are the verbs of both clauses ever in the *subj. pres.*? [Yes.] When should *si quid habeat, det,* be preferred to *si quid haberet, daret*? [*Si quid habeat det,* should be always preferred to *si quid haberet, daret,* unless it is to be intimated that the supposition *will not be realized.*] What are the conditional forms of the *subj.*? When should *scripturus essem* be used for 'should have written'? What tenses of the *indic.* are used for the *subj.* in conditional sentences? Is *si* ever omitted? where should the verb of the sentence then stand? What are the conjunctions for 'although'? [*Etsi, tametsi, quamquam* with *indic.*; *licet* with *subj.*]

\* The note on § 50, referred to at p. 110, x, is, from its length, placed in the Appendix.

† Either the *condition* or the *consequence,* or *both,* may refer to a *past,* or *future* time.

‡ When these conjunctions take the *subj.,* the sentence is generally in the *oblique oratio,* taken in its widest sense. See § 58. This, however, does not hold good of the later writers. Billroth.

- What is *quamvis*, and what mood does it govern in Cicero ! [*However much, however*; with subj.] What is *etiamsi*, and what mood does it govern ! [*Even if; even though*; with *indic.* or *subj.*] Do any other conjunctions express 'though?' [Yes; sometimes *quum, ut*, with *subj.*]
- § 57. In a dependent conditional sentence, the verb of the consequent clause will be in the *infin.*: what infinitives will take the place (respectively) of *dat?* of *dabit?* *daret?* *dedisset?* *daturus esset?*
- § 58. Explain the meaning of *oblique narration*. In oblique narration, in what mood will the principal verbs stand ! [In the *infin.*] In what mood will the verbs of the *subordinate clauses* stand, provided they express the words and opinions, not of the *narrator*, but of the *speaker* ! [In the *subj.*] In oblique narration what is often omitted ! [The verb or partic. on which the infinitives depend.] In what mood are *questions for answer* asked ! [The *subj.*] In what mood are *rhetorical questions* or *questions of appeal* asked ! [In the *infin.*] When questions are thus asked in the *infin.*, may *interrogatives* be used with the *infin.*? [Yes.] In what mood is the *charge* expressed with *quod* ?
- § 59. When may the *pres.* and *perf.* subjunct. be used in oblique narration, even when dependent on a *past* tense ! In what mood will remarks stand that are the *reporter's*, not the *speaker's*? In what mood do the verbs of subordinate clauses stand, when the principal verb of the proposition is in *infin.* or *subj.*? With what limitation is this rule to be applied ! When may the *pres.* and *perf. subj.* be used, although the general rule would require the *imp.* or *pluperf.*? May the *imp.* or *pluperf.* be ever used, when the general rule would require the *pres.* or *perf.*? How are the *acc.* and *infin.* used with *ne* in direct narration (473) !
- § 60. Mention some words, phrases, &c. with which *qui* takes the subj. [*Ans.* After *sum*, in 'sunt qui,' 'erant qui,' &c., and after *negative* and *interrogative* sentences, *nemo, nihil* &c. *est: quis est? an quisquam, est? quotus-que est?* &c. Also after *advent, qui: non desunt, qui*; *non desunt, qui*, &c., and similar phrases with *reperio, invenio* (to find).]
- § 61. What mood does *qui* govern, when it introduces the *ground* of an assertion ! What mood does *qui* take after *quippe, utpote?* *always* or *generally*? [482: compare Appendix, 19.] What mood does *qui* take, when it is equivalent to *ut* with a *personal* or *possessive* pronoun ! Mention some phrases with which *qui* has this force [483]. In what other cases does *qui* govern the subj. (484, 485) !
- § 62. When does *quum* take the *indic.*? What mood does *quum* generally govern, when the verb of the sentence is in the *imperf.* or *pluperf.*? [The *subj.*†] How is the subject of congratulation expressed (492) ! Mention some conjunctions that always govern the subjunctive (494). When are the *pres.* and *perf. subj.* used with *utinam?* when the *imperf.* and *pluperf.*? How is *not* generally expressed after *utinam, dummodo*, &c. !
- § 63. When the principal verb is in the present tense, in what mood is the verb after *antequam* or *priusquam* expressed ! When the principal verb is in the *fut.*, in what mood or moods may the dependent verb be ! When the principal verb is in a *past* tense, in what mood or moods may the dependent verb be ! When should the subj. always be used after *antequam, priusquam?*
- § 64. When do *dum, donec, quoad* (= *until*) take the *indicative?* when the *subjunctive?* What mood do they and *quamdiu* always take, in the sense of *as long as?* With the adverbs meaning *as soon as*, how should the English *pluperf.* generally be translated (514) !
- § 65. When is 'that' expressed by *quod?* What class of verbs are followed by *quod?* What mood does *quod* take ! with what exception !
- § 66. What was the *first* of the month called by the Romans ! on what day did the *Nones* fall ! on what day the *Ides?* In what months were the *Nones*

---

† See Pt. ii. 848, &c.

on the *seventh*? How were the days between the *Kalends* and *Nones* reckoned? days between the *Nones* and the *Ides*? days after the *Ides*? Give the rules for each case.

- § 67. What may be used instead of a *conjunction* and *personal* or *demonstrative* pronoun? Mention some circumlocutions for the *imperative*.
- § 68. Was a *sestertium* a coin? How many *sesterces* made a *sestertium*? What is the meaning of *sestertium* with *numeral adverbs*? Is *sestertium* *declinable* in this construction? How may the value of *sestertium decies, centies, &c.* be got approximately (647, note\*)?
- § 69. Give the division of the *As.* Explain *asses usuræ*. By what other name was this rate of interest expressed?

## APPENDIX.

(I.)

ON THE RELATIVE PRONOUN AND RELATIVE ADVERBS (UBI, UNDE, QUO, &c.) WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE. (From Krüger.)

1. The verb of the relative clause is in the *indicative*, when what is asserted in it is stated as a *simple fact*.

Fugienda est assentatio, *quæ* amico indigna est. Germani Rhenum transierunt non longe a mari, *quo* Rhonus *influxit*.—  
Inveni hostem, *ubi* *quærebam*.

2. The verb of the relative clause is in the *subjunctive*, not only in *oblique narration* (in the quotation or narration of *another man's* thoughts), but also in the following cases:

3. A) When the notion of a *purpose* is involved in the relative clause, its verb stands in the *subjunctive*.

Here the relative clause is virtually equivalent to a sentence with *ut* (or *nē*) introducing a *purpose*. Ex his delecti Delphos deliberatum missi sunt, *qui* (= *ut ii*) *consulerent* Apollinem (*Nep.*). Sordidi putandi sunt, qui mercantur a venditoribus, *quod* statim *vendant* (*C.*). Pisonis domum, *ubi* *habitaret*, legerat (*C.*). [Here the rel. clause is mostly translated into English by the *infn.*]

4. B) When the notion of a *consequence* is involved in the relative clause, its verb stands in the *subjunctive*.

Here the *relative* is virtually equivalent to a *talis* or *ejusmodi ut*: the *ut* introducing a *consequence*. This *qui* is often really preceded by *is* (ea, id; *that = such*), *talis*, *ejusmodi*, *tam*, *tantus*, &c.; or by *dignus*, *indignus*, *aptus*, &c., which involve the notion of *such* with that of *merit*, *suitableness*, &c.; or by a *comparative* with *quam*.

5. *Alone.*] Paci, *quæ* nihil habitura *sit* insidiarum, semper est consulendum (*C.*). Secutæ sunt complures dies tempestates, *quæ* et nostros in castris *continerent*, et hostem a pugnâ *prohiberent* (*Cæs.*). Heraclius magistratum Syracusis habebat, homo nobilis, *qui* sacerdos Jovis *fuisset* (*C.*). Genus dicendi est eligendum, *quod* maxime *teneat* eos, qui audiant (*C.*). Duo tum excellabant oratores, *qui* me imitandi cupiditate *incitarent* (*C.*).


6. ~~65~~ A sentence of this kind may also be arranged *co-ordinately* by a *copulative* or *adversative* conjunction (*et, sed*).  
 L. Sextius, strenuus adolescens, *et* *cujus* spei nihil præter genus patricium *deesset* (L. = *and* one, to whose *hopes* &c.). Intercessit res parva dictu, *sed* *quæ* studiis in magnum certamen *excesserit* (= *but* one which *through party-feeling, &c.* L.).
7. With *talis, ejusmodi, &c.*] Innocentia est affectio animi *talis, quæ* noceat nemini (C.). Nulla acies ingenii humani *tanta* est, *quæ* penetrare in cœlum . . . possit (C.). Videndum est, ut *ed* liberalitate utamur, *quæ* *prosit* amicis, *noceat* nemini (C.). Nemo omnium *tam* immanis est, *cujus* mentem non *imbuerit* deorum opinio (C.). Nomen legati *ejusmodi* esse debet, *quod* non modo inter sociorum jura, sed etiam inter hostium tela incolume *versetur* (C.).
8. With *dignus, indignus, idoneus, aptus, &c.*] Liviænæ fabulæ non satis *dignæ* sunt, *quæ* iterum *legantur* (C.). Forsitan non *indigni* sumus, *qui* nobismet ipsi multam [= *multam*] *irrogemus* (Liv.). Academici et Peripatetici mentem . . . solam censebant *idoneam, cui* *crederetur* (C.). Nulla videbatur *aptior* persona, *quæ* de illâ ætate *loqueretur* (C.).
9. With *comparative* and *quam*.] Campani *majora* deliquerant, *quam* *quibus* ignosci posset (sc. *majora, quam ea, quibus*): had been guilty of greater offences than *such* offences as could be pardoned, = offences *too great to be pardoned*\*.
10. To this head belongs also the mood after, *is sum qui* (= 'I am one who,' or 'I am the man to'); *sunt, qui; reperiuntur, qui* &c. Thus: *sunt, reperiuntur, qui putent, &c.* = there are (found) persons, who are *such* (of *such* a character, &c.), that they do so and so. See on these phrases, 20—25.
11. c) When the notion of a *cause* or *reason* (stating the *ground* of the assertion contained in the principal clause) is involved in the relative clause, its verb stands in the *subjunctive*.
12. The notion here is really the same as that in 4, B), of which it might be considered a *subdivision*. It is implied that the *antecedent* is of *such a kind*, that the *consequence* stated in the relative clause holds good, this *consequence* being also a *ground* for what is stated of the antecedent in the principal clause. Thus: Tarquinio quid impudentius, *qui* bellum *gereret* cum iis, qui non tulerant ejus superbiam? *Who was ever more insolent than Tarquin—a man who* [i. e. one of *such* a character, that he] *actually waged war, &c.*; but in another way of viewing it, his waging war with those who could not endure his pride, is the *ground* upon which Cicero builds the truth of his assertion, that no man ever exceeded the insolence of this sovereign; so that *qui*

---

\* In this construction the rel. is *sometimes* omitted: Postea quidquid erat oneris . . . . Segestanis præter ceteros imponebat, aliquanto amplius *quam ferre possent*, i. e. *quam quod ferre possent*. (C.)



*gereret* = *quum* *gereret*. So: *Stulti sumus, qui* Drusum —cum P. Clodio conferre *audeamus* (C.), *We are fools for presuming, &c.*; i. e. *we*, being *such* persons *as* to venture to do this, are *thereby* proved fools. O fortunate adolescens, *qui* tuæ virtutis Homerum præconem *inveneris!* (C.) Veteres philosophi ad incunabula accedunt, *qui* in pueritiâ facillime se *arbitrentur* naturæ voluntatem posse cognoscere (C.).

13.  A *causal* relation may exist between a *relative* clause introduced by *qui* with the *indicative* and its principal clause; but this connexion is then left to be gathered from the *nature* of the clause, *without being indicated* by its *structure*. Thus: *Omnia sunt meâ culpâ commissa, qui* (= *nam* or *quia* ego) ab iis me amari *putabam*, *qui* invidabant (C. *Flam.* 141). See 17.

From this *causal* relation we arrive naturally at the *concessive* or *adversative* relation:

14. D) When the *relative* clause stands in a *concessive* or *adversative* relation to the principal clause, its verb stands in the *subjunctive*.

15. A *concessive* or *adversative* relation is that which we express by 'though' (although)—often with 'yet' following. Something is then *granted* or assumed as *possible*, by which, however, we maintain that the *truth* of the assertion made in the principal sentence is not destroyed.

Egomet, *qui* sero Græcas literas *attigissem*, tamen, quum Athenas venissem, complures ibi dies sum commoratus (C.); the *adversative* relation is here indicated by the *tamen*).

Sæpe videmus fractos pudore, *qui* ratione nullâ *vince- rentur*, *We often see men who are overpowered by shame*, though *they are convinced by no reasoning*: i. e. who are yet *such* persons, *that* they are unconvinced by any reasoning. Sapiens posteritatem, *cujus* sensum habiturus non *sit*, ad se putet pertinere (C.). Absolvite eum, *qui* se *fateatur* maximas pecunias cum summâ sociorum injuriâ cepisse (C.).

16. Sometimes the relative is found with a subjunctive mood, which does not depend (as in the examples hitherto given) upon the *kind of relation* between the *relative* and *principal* clauses, but is simply *potential*, exactly as in a principal sentence (i. e. = *may, might, &c.* with the verb). Thus in a *principal* sentence: *Perfectum officium rectum, ut opinor, vocemus* (= we may call). So in a *relative* sentence: *Perfectum officium, quod rectum vocemus* (= which we may call), &c. Aut totum est negandum, *quod* in argumentatione adversarius *sunserit* (= may [possibly] have assumed) . . . . aut redarguenda ea, *quæ* pro verisimilibus *sumta sunt* (here the *indicative* is used, to denote what has *actually* been assumed).—This kind of subjunctive is very common in the *restrictive* forms *quod sciam* (= quantum sciam \*), 'as far as I know,' and similar forms with which *quidem* (= at least) is often used: antiquissimi fere

\* Though in *quantum possum, quantum ego perspicio, &c.* the *indicative* is used.

sunt quorum quidem scripta constant, &c. ; omnium oratorum, quos equidem cognoverim, &c. When the connexion requires it, the verb will be in the *imperfect subj.* Neque quidquam est de hac parte post Panætium \*explicatum, quod, quidem mihi probaretur, de (= ex) iis quæ in manus meas venerint (C.).

17. It has been before remarked (13) that the *causal* relation does not always require the verb to be in the *subjunctive*. The *indicative* gives more weight to the cause as a *fact of actual occurrence*, than the *subjunctive* does. Habeo senectuti magnam gratiam quæ mihi sermonis aviditatem auxit, &c. the subj. quæ auxerit would = I thank her for having increased, &c. ; the indic. quæ auxit, = I thank her, for she has increased, &c.
18. In like manner the *adversative* or *concessive* relation may also have its verb in the *indicative*, when the *fact* is to be thus definitely stated: ego, qui me ostreis et murænis facile abstinebam, a betâ et a malvâ deceptus sum (I, though I abstained without difficulty from . . . , yet &c. C.).
19. To the *causal* qui is often prefixed *ut* \*, *utpote*, or *quippe*. The regular mood with these particles is the *subjunctive*: with *quippe* qui Cicero always uses the *subjunctive*; Sallust always, and Livy, now and then, the *indicative*. So the *indicative* is sometimes found with *utpote* qui.
- Magna pars Fidenatium, ut qui coloni additi Romanis essent, Latine sciebant (L.). Antonius non procul aberat utpote qui magno exercitu locis æquioribus expeditus in fugâ sequeretur (Sall.). Solis candor illustris est, quam ullius ignis, quippe qui in immenso mundo tam longe lateque colluceat (C.).—[Utpote with indic.] Ea nos, utpote qui nihil contemnere solemus, non pertimescebamus (C. Att. 2. 24, 4).
20. The *subjunctive* (to be explained by 4, B) is very common after *sunt*, *qui*; *reperiuntur*, *qui*, &c.: but here different constructions must be distinguished:
21. a) The relative sentence is simply a *description of the subject*: the *predicate* stating that there exist, are found, &c. such persons or things as the relative clause describes. Thus in *sunt, qui censeant*, 'there are some persons who think,' the statement is, that, if we enquire whether there exist any persons whose characters, mode of thinking, &c. are such, that they hold the opinion in question, we shall find that some such persons do exist. Thus the relative sentence relates to the *character*, the *quality* of the *subject* (the thing, person, &c. of which any thing is *predicated* in the relative clause). So that this form belongs to the class of *consecutive*

---

\* Caius et Titus diligunt se, ut germani fratres, is ambiguous: = love as brothers, or (as) being own brothers love each other.

sentences (4) : *sunt, qui censeant*, 'there are some *such* persons, &c. *that* they think \*,' &c. The mood is here the *subjunctive*.

*Qui se ultro morti offerant, facilius reperiuntur, quam qui dolorem patienter ferant* (Cæs.). *Est, quod differat* in hominum ratione habendâ inter justitiam et verecundiam (C.).

22. b) The relative sentence is also simply a *description of the subject*, when the principal clause asserts that there are *many, several, few, some, some certain number or none* of the subjects described in the relative clause: so that the subject has with it, as an *attributive*, some *definite or indefinite numeral or pronoun*, sometimes with *virî, homines, &c.* The *subjunctive* is here used, and may be explained by the same considerations that we have just used in a). To this head belong the forms *nemo est, nihil est, quotusquisque est, &c.*

*Tria sunt, quæ sint efficienda dicendo* (C.). *Nonnulli sunt qui ea, quæ immineant, non videant* (C.). In omnibus seculis *pauciores viri* reperti sunt, *qui suas cupiditates, quam qui hostiam copias vincerent* (C.). *Quotusquisque est, qui somniis pareat?* (C.). *Nemo est orator, qui se Demosthenis similem esse nolit* (C.). *Sit aliquis, qui nihil mali habeat* (C.). *Sunt quidam e nostris, qui hæc subtilius velint tradere* (C.).

23. c) But the case is different, when the *subject* is a *definite individual or certain definite individuals*. Here the relative clause will have its verb in the *indicative, except* when it can be reduced under one of the preceding heads. When it stands in the *indicative*, it is not itself the *subject*, but only an *attribute* of the subject. Fuit Arganthonius quidam Gadibus, *qui octoginta regnavit annos, centum et viginti vixit* (C.). Fuit haud ignobilis Argis, | *Qui se credebat miros audire tragædos* | In vacuo lætus sessor plausorque teatro; | *Cetera qui vitæ servaret munia recte, &c.* (Hor.) Here both the rel. clauses state a fact with ref. to the *subject*, the (*homo*) *haud ignobilis*: the *qui credebat* states it *historically* as a simple fact, without *referring* it as a *peculiarity* to the character of the individual: the *qui servaret*, on the contrary, *does* refer it to the *peculiarity* of the individual's character: *there was a man* who used to imagine, &c. (*historical*),—[yet] *one who* performed all the other actions of our daily life correctly, &c.: he was *such* a person, *that* he,

---

\* In English, we usually construe *sunt, qui censeant* by 'some persons think.' Here we assume the existence of such persons, and assert the fact that they hold the opinion. We may however expand this into two propositions (as in Latin), and assert the fact that persons holding such opinions do really exist. 'There are some who think: 'there are found persons who maintain,' &c.


&c. : the clause *qui servaret* places him in a *certain class* of men, that of those who perform the common duties of life respectably and correctly.—*Sunt nonnullæ disciplinæ, quæ . . . officium omne pervertunt*, i. e. *some particular schools which do this—exist* ; *sunt nonnullæ disciplinæ, quæ officium omne pervertant* would state the same fact *indefinitely* : the *indic.* implies that the speaker knows them *definitely*, and could name them. *Sunt bestiæ quædam, in quibus inest aliquid simile virtutis (C.)*. *Sunt quidam, qui molestas amicitias faciunt (C.)*.—The case may be explained in the same way, where no *definite individual* or *individuals* are named in the principal clause, but are *obviously implied* : *ex quibus (nationibus) sunt qui piscibus atque ovis avium vivere existimantur (Cæs. : amongst these tribes are some [certain, definite persons] who are believed, &c.)* *Fuere extra conjunctionem complures, qui ad Catilinam profecti sunt (Sall.)*. *Tum primum reperta sunt (sc. ea) quæ per tot annos rempublicam excedere (Tac., the narticular evils, which actually had been preying upon the state for many years)*.—It will obviously often be *indifferent*, which mode of describing the fact the narrator chooses : i. e. whether he will make the descriptive assertion in the *form of a fact (indicative)* or refer it to the *peculiar character, constitution, &c. of the subject (subjunctive)*. The prevailing usage is for the latter method. With *Horace* the indicative is the favorite mood.

From all these must be distinguished the following cases :—

24. (1) The case when *est, sunt, &c.* do not form the *predicate*, but are simply the *copula*. The relative clause here forms, as in *a, b*, a *description of the subject*, whether it is already expressed in the principal clause or not. But the difference is, that *more than mere existence* is predicated of this subject in the principal clause : e. g. *Sunt his alii multum dispares, simplices et aperti, qui nihil ex occulto agendum putant (C.)*. Here the *subject alii* (further expanded and defined by *qui . . . putant, &c.*) has for its predicate *sunt his dispares* ; the simple *sunt* not being the *predicate*, but only the *copula* (or connecting link) between the *subject (alii)* and the *predicate (his dispares)*. *Optimates sunt principes publici consilii, sunt, qui eorum sectam sequuntur (= ii, qui . . . sequuntur, sunt, sc. optimates : are also 'optimates')*.
25. (2) The case where the relative clause itself with *est, sunt, &c.* forms a *description of the predicate*. *Temperantia est, quæ in rebus aut expetendis aut fugiendis rationem ut sequamur monet = temperantia monet*, but with emphasis added to both subject and predicate by the separation into two sentences. Here *we* use the indefinite 'it' as subject : 'It is

*temperance, that warns us,' &c.\** In this case the *subjunctive* is not used, unless what is predicated of the subject is to be represented as proceeding from its *peculiar* character or constitution †. This is often the case with 'is' preceding in the principal clause: i. e. where 'I think,' for instance, is expanded into 'I am one who think,' &c. to give emphasis to the subject and predicate: *is sum qui putem, &c.* Num tu *is es, qui* in disputando non tuum iudicium sequare? C. (See 8.) Sapiencia est una, *quæ* mæstitiam pellat ex animis, &c.—Also without a preceding *demonstrative*: oculi *sunt*, quorum tum intentione, tum conjectu, tum hilaritate motus animorum *significemus* (C.).

26. In the same way the subjunctive stands after *est* (*non est, nihil est*) . . . *quod ubi, unde, quo, &c.* Here, what is asserted in the subordinate clause being represented as something that proceeds from the *peculiar nature* of the thing in question, the *subjunctive* expresses the notion of *necessity* or *possibility*, which does not belong to the *indicative*. Thus *quid est, quod lætus es?* (Ter. Eun. 3, 5, 11.) is quite different from *est, quod gaudeas* (Plaut. Trin. 2, 2, 54). The latter = *there is something of such a kind, that you must or may rejoice*: the former represents the *lætum esse* as a *fact*, ('you are happy,') and asks *why*. Hence *est, quod gaudeas* = 'you have reason to rejoice': *quid est, quod lætus es?* = 'why is it, that you are so happy?' Compare: *Quid est, quod* tu cum fortunâ queri possis? (C.) *Nihil est, quod* quisquam magnitudinem artium pertimescat (C.). *But*: volo audire, *quid sit propter quod* matronæ *procurrerunt* in publicum (L. 34, 3). So: *Nihil* (or *non*) habeo, *quod* incusem senectutem (C.); but habeo (*sc. id*) *quod* volo (C.).

27.  It is worth mentioning, that when *non habeo* = *nescio* (i. e. *non cognitum habeo*), it takes not *quod*, but *quid* (i. e. is followed by a dependent interrogative clause). *Non habeo, quid* scribam (i. e. *I have it not, what I should write* =), *I don't know what to write* (C. Att. 15, 5); but *nihil habeo, quod* scribam (Att. 17, 19), = *I have nothing to write* (See Heusinger, *ad Off.* 2, 2, 11).

28. Finally, those relative clauses which are *incorporated* in a sentence whose verb is in the subjunctive, or in a clause con-

\* So: Charilaus *fuit, qui* ad Publium Philonem *venit* (= *it was* Charilaus, *who* &c. L. 8, 25). *Hic erat, qui* apud Granicum *annem* nudo capite regem *dimicantem* clipeo suo *tegit* (Curt. 8, 1, 20).

† When this is not or is not to be represented as the case, the *indicative* is found after *is, qui*: *ista* quidem *sententia* *ea* est, *quæ* neque *amicos* *parat*, neque *inimicos* *tollit* (L. 9, 3). *Tu is es, qui* me *sepe* *ornasti* (C. Fam. 15, 4, 11. Compare the instances in the preceding note). *Si* nos *ii* *sumus, cui* esse *debemus* . . . . *dubitare* non *possumus* (C.).

sisting of the *accus.* with *infin.* (which, as forming the *object* of some *intellectual activity*, denotes something *thought* or *conceived*), usually have their verb in the *subjunctive*, even when they express what might be conceived as independent of any body's thought. By the *subjunctive* the relative clause is more *thoroughly incorporated* with the other sentence as a *part* of the *whole thought*. Erat Hortensio memoria tanta, *ut, quæ* secum commentatus *esset*, ea sine scripto verbis eisdem redderet, *quibus cogitavisset* (*C. Brut.* 88). Quid me reducem esse voluistis? An, ut inspectante me expellerentur ii, *per quos essem restitutus* (*C. Mil.* 37). In rebus antiquis, si *quæ* veri similia *sint*, pro veris *habeantur*, satis habeam (*Liv.* 5, 21). Earum rerum, quibus *abundaremus*, exportatio, et earum *quibus egeremus*, *invectio* certe nulla *esset*, nisi &c. (*C. Off.* 2, 3, 13.) So with relative *conjunctions*: Quum eo Catulus et Lucullus nosque ipsi postridie venissemus, *quam* apud Catulum *fuissemus* (*C. Acad.* 2, 3). The *indicative* is, however, found: Placet Stoicis, eos anhelitus terræ, *qui* frigidi *sunt*, quum fluere cæperint, ventos esse (*C. Div.* 2, 19). Facilis est conjectura, ea maxima esse expetenda ex nostris, *quæ* plurimum *habent* dignitatis\* (*C. Fin.* 5, 13, 38).

## (II.)

## GENERAL REMARKS ON QUIS, ALIQUIS, QUISPIAM, QUISQUAM.

- (1) *Si quis, si aliquis* or *quispiam*, and *si quisquam* or *ullus*, are all *correct*: *si quis* when the *any* is unemphatic, *si aliquis* when the *any* is emphatic; when, for instance, *any thing* is opposed to *every thing, much, the rest, &c.* (*omnia, multum, cetera*): *si quisquam* is less definite than *si aliquis* and *rare*. *Si quisquam* or *ullus* implies either a *doubt* as to the *existence* of

---

\* Zumpt (whom I followed in 485) adds the case of *actions occurring repeatedly*, which, if stated in a relative sentence as occurring at a past time, are often expressed by a verb in the *imperfect* or *pluperfect* subjunctive. Here too the *relative pronoun* or *adverb* may be considered as referring to cases of *such a kind*, that the assertion could be predicated of them with truth: e. g. *consilium et modum adhibendo, ubi res posceret, priores erant* (*L. i. e.* in all cases which were *such, that* they required these qualities). *Semper habitus sunt fortissimi, qui summam imperii potirentur*, i. e. *such* nations as were in any age the ruling power. He proposes to call this 'the *subjunctive of generality*,' but adds (§ 569, Engl. Ed.) that "the *indicative* is likewise used in these cases, and *even more frequently* than the *subjunctive*."

*any*, or states that a certain statement is true, if there be *but any* of the thing in question, whereas there *is much* of it, or are *many* such things in existence (391, w).

- (2) On *negative* sentences.] *Quisquam* and *ullus* are here the *regular* words: but (a) *aliquis* and *quispiam* are also used, when the meaning is '*any, of whatever kind,*' '*any, be it who or what it may;*' or when they may be translated by '*some,*' '*some or other.*' Thus: *video igitur Heium neque voluntate, neque difficultate aliquo temporis . . . adductum esse, ut hæc signa venderet (C. Verr. 4, 6, 15). Nego esse quidquam a testibus dictum, quod aut vestrum cuiquam (any of you, be he who he may) esset obscurum, aut cujusquam oratoris eloquentiam quæreret (C. Verr. 1, 10, 29). Matthis's rule is, 'Aliquis etiam in negantibus ponitur, quando de re sermo est, quæ re vera est, vel cogitari saltem possit' (ad C. Cat. 1. 6, 15).*
- (b) *Quis* is used after the dependent *negative* particles *nē*, *neve*, and the *interrogative num*, which expects a *negative* answer: but *aliquis quispiam* may also follow these particles: and then either *aliquis* expresses *emphasis* [*timebat Pompeius omnia ne aliquid vos timeretis*]; or *aliquis* or *quispiam* = '*any, be it who or what it may,*' '*some or other*' [*num sermonem vestrum aliquem diremit noster interventus? (C. Rep. 1, 11): vereor ne hæc forte cuiquam nimis antiqua et jam obsoleta videantur (C. Verr. 1, 21, 56)*]. *Evon quisquam* is *now and then* found after *nē*: as *Sall. Jug. 45, ne quisquam . . . venderet*: and *Cæs. B. G. 7, 40, interdiciteque omnibus, ne quemquam interficiant* (where the Ox. MS. reads *ne quis quem*, without reason).

# INDEX I.

## ENGLISH.

Q. stands for Questions.]

- A, sometimes translated by aliquis, quispiam, or quidam, 393.**  
**Abandoned, perditus.**  
**Abdera (of), Abderites, G. æ.**  
**Abilities, ingenium, sing.**  
**Able (to be), posse, quire (queo), 125, e.**  
**Abound, abundare, abl.**  
**About (= concerning), de, abl.**  
**About (= nearly), fere, adv.; circiter, prep.**  
**Above (such an age), 306, and Q.**  
**Absence: in his —, absens.**  
**Absent: to be —, abesse, 227.**  
**Abstain from, temperare ab, 220.**  
**Abundance of, abunde, adv. (gen.)**  
**Acceptable, gratus, 212.**  
**Accident: by —, casu.**  
**Accompany, comitari.**  
**Accomplish, conficere, fec-, fect-.**  
**Account: on—of, ergo, gen., 207.**  
**Account, ratio. To render an a., rationem reddere.**  
**Accuse, accusare; (if not in a court of justice) incusare, gen. of charge.**  
**Accused-person, reus.**  
**Accustomed: to be —, solère, solitus.**  
**Acquainted, to become, noscere, 385.**  
**Acquit, absolvere, solv-, solut-; gen. of charge.**  
**Acquit of a capital charge, capitis absolvere.**  
**Actions, facta, orum.**  
**Adapted, accommodatus, 212.**  
**Addition: in — to this, huc accedit, accedebat, &c., 513.**  
**Additional. See 'to learn.'**  
**Adherents: his own —, sui.**  
**Adjure, obtestari, acc.**  
**Admire, admirari.**  
**Admonish, admōnēre (mōnu, mōnīt), acc. pers.**  
**Adopt, a resolution, consilium inire or capere.**  
**Advantage, emolumentum.**  
**Advantageous: to be —, prodesse, dat.**  
**Advantageous: to be very —, magnæ utilitati esse, 242 (3).**  
**Adverse, adversus.**  
**Adversity, res adversæ.**  
**Advice, consilium.**  
**Advise, suadēre, dat. (S. 222); monēre (with acc. of person): both with ut, ne, by 75.**  
**Affair, res.**  
**Afraid: to be —, timēre, vereri, S. 99, e.**  
**After (before a sentence), postquam. See 514.**  
**After, prep. post, with acc.**
- After the battle, (confestim) a proelio.**  
**Afterwards, postea: with nouns of time; post, used adverbially.**  
**Again and again, etiam atque etiam.**  
**Again from the beginning, ab integro.**  
**Against, adversus, acc.: in, with acc. (of feelings, actions, &c., against a person).**  
**Against his will, invitus, adj.**  
**Against the will of Caius, Cæio invito, 364.**  
**Age (= time of life), ætas, atis.**  
**Age (of that or such) id ætatis } 160, β.**  
**Age (of what ?) quid ætatis ? }**  
**Agitate, perturbare.**  
**Agitated (having his mind), incensus animum, 298.**  
**Ago, abhinc (to precede the subst. or numeral), 305.**  
**Agreeable, gratus, 212.**  
**Agreed: it is—, constat, acc. with infn.**  
**Agricultural operations, res rusticæ.**  
**All, omnis, cunctus (= whole), universus, totus.**  
**All together, cuncti, universi, 443.**  
**All over again, ab integro.**  
**All taken one by one, singuli.**  
**Allow it to happen, committere ut.**  
**Allowed: it is—, constat, acc. with infn.**  
**Allowed, I am —, licet mihi.**  
**Almost, prope, pæne.**  
**Almost: I — think, haud scio an, 161. See note on Diff. 25.**  
**Alone, solus: or (if one person) unus.**  
**Alps, Alpes, G. ium.**  
**Already, jam.**  
**Also, sometimes translated by the pron. idem, 387.**  
**Altar, ara.**  
**Although, 461, and Q. on § 56.**  
**Although indeed, quamquam, indic.**  
**Always, after superlat. by quisque. See 399.**  
**A man (= any: indef.), quis.**  
**Amanuensis, a manu servus.**  
**Among, inter.**  
**Amongst (a people), apud, with acc.**  
**Amuse, delectare.**  
**And, p. 10, d; 'to me and you,' in Lat. 'to me with you,' p. 60.**  
**And that too, not —, nec is, 385.**  
**Anger, ira.**  
**Angry: to be —, irasci, dat.: succensere, dat. 222.**  
**Animal, animal, alis.**  
**Another, alter, era, &c. G. alterius: answering to, 'it is one thing,' aliud, 38.**  
**Another man's, alienus.**



Answer, respondēre, *dat.*

Antiquity, antiquitas.

Any\* (after *expers*), omnis.

Any, after 'I don't know that' = *I am inclined to think that no*, &c. is to be *nullus* or (*before scriptor*, &c.) *nemo*, 116. 'Anybody' will be *nemo*.

Any. See 389.

On translating 'any' by the forms = 'no' after 'I don't know that—', cf. 116, and look at 'no' in this *Index*.

Any body. See 'any.'

Any man may, *cujusvis est*. See 389—92.

Any where (= any whither), *usquam*, 402.

Appeal to, *appellare, acc.*

Appear (= seem), *videri (vis)*.

Appear (show myself), *apparere*.

Apply vigorously to, *incumbere in* (with *acc.*); *cubu-*, *cubit-*.

Approved (of valour, &c.), *spectatus*.

Arms: to take —, *arma capere*.

Army, *exercitus, ūs*.

Arrived at: men have —, *ventum est*, 296.

Arrow, *sagitta*.

As, after *tam, talis, tantus, tot*, is *quam*, *qualis*, *quantus*, *quot*, respectively.

As, after *idem*, qui 43 (or *ac, atque*).

As far as I know, *quod sciam*, 56.

As far as I can, *quoad ejus facere possum*, 512.

As far as possible, } *quoad ejus fieri*

As far as can be done, } *potest*, 512.

As it were, *quasi*.

As soon as, *simul ac; ut primum; quum primum; ubi; ut*, 512; 514.

As, *sometimes* = 'a thing (or circumstance) which,' *id quod*, 36, Obs. 2.

As many as two hundred, *ad ducentos*.

As not to, after 'such' or 'so' in a negative sentence, *quin (85)*; if 'such' or 'so' were in a positive sentence, *ut* would be used by 66.

Ashamed: *am —, of, pudet*, 207.

Ask, *rogare (acc.)*, *querere (quesivi, quesit) ex aliquo*, 115.

Ask pardon for a fault, *delicti veniam petere*.

Assault (a town), *oppugnare*.

Assault: to accuse of an —, *reum facere de vi*.

Assist, *auxiliari, jūvare, adjūvare, opitulari; sublevare, succurrere, subvénire*, S. p. 62, k.

At any body's feet. See 76, l.

At once — and, *idem — idem*, 396.

At, of place *near* which a battle is fought, &c., *apud (or ad)*, 457.

At two miles' distance, *a millibus passuum duobus*, 348.

At two miles off, *a millibus passuum duobus*.

Athenian, *Atheniensis*.

Athens, *Athena*.

Attached to, *amans; diligens*, with *gen.* 183.

Attack, *adgredi, gress-*; *adoriri, ort-* (*acc.*)

Attend to, *attendere*, 229.

\* The pronouns and adverbs for 'any' may be thus exhibited.—(Compare however Appendix II. p. 189.)

	Exclusion of all †.	Inclusion of all alike; of any indifferently.	Inclusion of some.		
				Less emphatical after <i>si, ne, num, &amp;c.</i>	
PRONOUNS.	<i>quisquam ullus</i>	<i>quivis quilibet</i>	<i>aliquis quispiam</i>	<i>quis</i>	<i>any (body).</i>
ADVERBS a) Place.	<i>usquam</i> { (to) (at)	<i>quovis (to)</i> <i>ubivis ubilibet (at)</i>	<i>aliquo (to)</i>	<i>quo (to)</i>	<i>any place or any where.</i>
			<i>alicubi uspiam (at)</i>	—	
b) Time.	<i>unquam</i>	—	<i>aliquando</i>	<i>quando</i>	<i>any time or ever.</i>

† ~~66~~ All are generally excluded when 'any' follows negatives; or 'scarcely,' 'than:' and in questions that expect the answer 'no,' ('nobody,' 'nothing,') &c. *Sine ullâ dubitatione*, 'without any hesitation:' *non sine aliquâ dubitatione*, 'not without some hesitation.'

Authority, auctoritas.  
Averse to, alienus, 212.  
Avoid, vitare.  
Aware, to be, intelligere.

B.

Baggage, impedimenta, pl. (properly *hindrances*).  
Banish, pellere or expellere ex civitate (pepul-, puls-).  
Banished from, extorris, abl. 276.  
Banquet, convivium.  
Barbarian, barbarus.  
Base, turpis.  
Battle, p. 99, t.  
Battle of Cannæ, pugna Cannensis.  
Be it far from us. See note †, p. 28.  
Bear, ferre (tul-, lat-, 33).  
Beasts, feræ.  
Beaten (to be), vapulare (ab).  
Become, fieri, factus sum.  
Become acquainted with, noscere, 385.  
Becoming (to be), decere, acc.  
Befall, accidere, dat.  
Before, adv. antea.  
Before, prep. ante, acc.  
Before (standing before a sentence), antequam, 498, &c.  
Before one's eyes, ob oculos.  
Beg, petere (petiv-, petit-, ab).  
Beg and pray, rogare et orare (aliquem).  
Begin, coepisse (*began*, before pass. inf. *coepit est*).  
Beginning, initium.  
Behold, adspicere, io (spex-, spect-).  
Believe, credere, dat. (credid-, credit-).  
Believe, I can scarcely—, vix crediderim, 428, and *note*.  
Believed, I am, mihi creditur, 285.  
Belongs. See 191.  
Beloved, to be, diligere.  
Benefit, beneficium.  
Benefit, v. benefacere, dat.  
Bereave, orbare, abl.  
Beseech, obsecrare.  
Bespatter, { adspicere (aliquid aliqui, or aliquem aliquâ  
Besprinkle, { re : spers-), 233.  
Best, optimus.  
Best to be done, } optimum factu (*sup.*).  
Best to do, }  
Betray, proditor.  
Better, melior.  
Better: it is — (= *more satisfactory, preferable*), satius est, 116. Ex. 34, p. 64.  
Better: it would have been—, satius or utilius fuit, 426 (5).  
Between, inter.  
Beware of, cavere (cav-, caut-), 233.

PART I.

Bird, avis: (great bird) ales volucris = any winged creature.  
Black, niger.  
Blame, culpæ.  
Bleed afresh (of a wound), recrudescere, (crudu-).  
Blessing: a—on your valour! macte virtute esto! 280, a.  
Blind, cæcus.  
Blood, sanguis, inis, m. (when *shed*, cruor).  
Blot out, delere (delev-, delet-).  
Boast, gloriari, abl. (also *de*, in), 273.  
Boast, to make the same, idem gloriari.  
Body, corp-us, oris.  
Border on, adiacere, 229.  
Born, natus: born *to*, natus *ad*.  
Born, to be, nasci (nat-).  
Both — and, et — et.  
Bounds. See *Exceed*.  
Boy, puer, G. pueri.  
Branch-of-learning, doctrina.  
Bravely, fortiter; acriter (*of troops*).  
Breach of duty: it is a—, contra officium est.  
Breadth, a finger's. See *Depart*.  
Break one's word, } fidem fallere  
Break a promise, } (fessell-).  
Bribery, ambitus, ūs.  
Bridge, pons, ntis, m.  
Bring an action or charge against, reum facere (fec-, fact-); with gen. or *de*, 187.  
Burden, onus, oneris.  
Burnt: to be —, deflagrare.  
Burst out afresh, recrudescere (crudu-).  
Business, negotium.  
But if, sin; sin autem, 451.  
But if not, sin minus, 451.  
But a little more, and he would have perished, minimum abfuit (*impers.*) quin periret, 91.  
But, after universal negatives (= who —not), quin [or, qui—non], 44.  
But, after universal negatives (= except), nisi, or *prep.* præter.  
But, after *cannot*. See *Cannot*.  
Butcher, trucidare.  
Buy, emere (em-, empt-).  
By = near, prope.  
By letter, per literas.

C.

Cæsar, Cæsar, aris.  
Call, vocare, appellare, nominare, dicere, 51. (S.)  
Call = summon, vocare.  
Call to mind, reminisci.  
Call upon, convenire (ven-, vent-), acc.  
Camp, castra, pl.  
Campaign, *end* of, 308.  
Can, posse, quire (queo), 125, e.

**Cannæ, of, Cannensis, adj.**  
**Cannot:** I cannot but —, *facere non possum quin &c.*—I cannot, non *queo* (*not nequeo in this pers. in Cic.*).  
**Cannot:** it cannot be but that, *fieri non potest quin*.  
**Capable of containing, capax, gen.**  
**Capital, cap-ut, itia.**  
**Care a straw for, flocci facere.**  
**Care that for, hujus facere.**  
**Care, cura.**  
**Care:** for any thing I care, 470.  
**Careless of, negligens, gen.**  
**Carry, portare.**  
**Carthage, Carthag-o, inis.**  
**Cast forth, projicere (jec-, ject-).**  
**Cause to be done, faciendum curare, 351, 356.**  
**Cease, desinere (desi-, desit-): ceased, before inf. pass. desitus est.**  
**Cease speaking, tacere, 299.**  
**Censure, reprehensio, onis.**  
**Chameleon, chamæleon.**  
**Chance, casus, ūs.**  
**Change (trans.), mutare.**  
**Change (intrans.), mutari.**  
**Character, mores, pl. G. um.**  
**Charge (falsely), insimulare, or (better) falso insimulare, gen. of charge (201).**  
**Charge: bring, or prefer a—, = to make him an accused person, reum facere de —, 187.**  
**Charge (= enjoin), mandare, dat.**  
**Chargeable (with a fault), affinis, 212.**  
**Chaste, castus.**  
**Cheese, caseus.**  
**Children, liberi, pl.**  
**Choose (= elect), eligere (lēg-, lect-).**  
**Christian, christianus.**  
**Circumstance. A circumstance which (referring to a preceding sentence), quæ res, 36, 37 (b).**  
**Citizen, civis.**  
**City, urbs, urbis.**  
**Civil-gown, toga.**  
**Claim, postulare.**  
**Class, gēnus, ōris, n.**  
**Clear (= excuse), purgare.**  
**Clothe oneself, induere, 283.**  
**Coast, ora, 40.**  
**Cold, frig-us, ōris.**  
**Come, venire (vén-, vent-).**  
**Come to the assistance of, alicui auxilio venire, 242.**  
**Come to a determination, consilium inire.**  
**Command, imperare, dat.**  
**Command an army, præesse, dat.**  
**Commission, mandare, dat.**  
**Commit many sins, multa peccare.**

**Common, communis.**  
**Common: of a — kind, vulgaris.**  
**Compassion, misericordia.**  
**Compel, cogere (cōg-, coact-).**  
**Completed: I have — the work, opus absolutum habeo, 364.**  
**Concerns (it), interest, 207.**  
**Condemn, damnare, condemnare: to death, capitis.**  
**Condemn a man to pay his vow, voti damnare.**  
**Conduct: honorable—, honestas.**  
**Confer (benefits) on, conferre (beneficia) in; acc. (tul-, lat-).**  
**Confer an obligation on, gratiam inire ab aliquo (Cic.); apud aliquem (Liv.), 339.**  
**Congratulate, congratulari, 492.**  
**Connexion with, conjunctio. See 157.**  
**Conquer, vincere (vic-, vict-).**  
**Consequence: it is of —, interest.**  
**Consequence: it is of no —, nihil inter-est, or refert, 207.**  
**Consider = think, existimare, arbitrari.**  
**Consider = attend to, attendere, 229.**  
**Considerable quantity, aliquantum.**  
**Considerably, aliquanto, 406.**  
**Constancy, constantia.**  
**Constantly, perpetuo.**  
**Constellation, astrum; sid-us, eris.**  
**Consul, consul, ulis.**  
**Consult, consulere (sulu-, sult-), acc.**  
**Consult for, } consulere**  
**Consult a man's interests, } alicui, 233.**  
**Contemporary, æqualis.**  
**Contended, contentus, abl.**  
**Contention, contentio.**  
**Continue, pergere (perrex-).**  
**Contract to build, conducere faciendum (dux-, duct-).**  
**Contrary to each other, inter se contrarii, æ, a.**  
**Convenient, commodus.**  
**Conversant, to be, callère, acc.**  
**Converse, loqui (locut-).**  
**Corrupt, corrumpere (rup-, rupt-).**  
**Cost, stare, constare, 266, abl.; dat. of pers.**  
**Count, numerare.**  
**Country (of one's birth, &c.) patria; as opposed to town, rus, ruris.**  
**Country, in the, ruri.**  
**Country, into the, rus (acc.).**  
**Country, from the, rure.**  
**Courage, virtūs, ūtis, f.**  
**Courageously, fortiter.**  
**Courtesy, humanitas, atis, f.**  
**Cross over, transjicere or trajicere (jec-, ject-), acc.**  
**Cross (absol. = go over), transire, transeo.**  
**Crown, corona.**

- Cruelly, crudeliter.  
 Cruelty, crudelitas.  
 Cry out, clamare.  
 Cultivate, colere (colu-, cult-): if it be a *study*, e.g. eloquence—studēre, dat.  
 Cure, mederi, dat.  
 Custom, consuetud-o, inis.  
 Cut off, intercludere (clus-), 233.  
 D.  
 Daily, quotidie, in dies singulos (S. 69, t).  
 Danger, periculum.  
 Dare, audēre, ausus sum.  
 Day, by, interdiu, 311: on the day after he had, &c., 310, b.  
 Deaf, surdus.  
 Dearer, pluris, G. 266.  
 Death, mors.  
 Death, to (after condemn), capitis.  
 Debt, æs alienum, 273.  
 Debt, heavy, magnum æs alienum.  
 Deceive, decipere, io (cep-, cept-),  
 Decree, decernere (crev-, cret-).  
 Deem, putare.  
 Defend what is *actually* attacked, defendere (fend-, fens-): — what *may* be attacked, tueri.  
 Degree: to what a — ! quo, with gen., 512.  
 Delay, morari.  
 Deliberation (*after opus est*), consulto, 271.  
 Delight, delectare (acc.).  
 Delightful, jucundus.  
 Delightful to the sense of sight, amœnus.  
 Demand, postulare; poscere (poposc-): to demand *importunately*, efflagitare (S. 257).  
 Deny, negare.  
 Depart a finger's breadth, transversum digitum discēdere (cess-, cess-).  
 Depend on, niti (nis- or nix-); *in* with abl.  
 Deprive of, spoliare, orbare; abl.  
 Desert, deserere (seru-, sert-).  
 Deserve, mereri (merit); well of, bene *de*.  
 Deserving of, dignus, abl.  
 Deserving to be, &c. dignus esse qui, with subj.  
 Design, consilium.  
 Desire, velle; cupere (cupiv-, cupit-): = *express* a wish, optare (S. 420, x).  
 Desirous, cupidus, gen.  
 Despair of, desperare.  
 Destroy utterly, delēre (delev-, delet-).  
 Destroy (= *burn*), concērmare, 141, c.  
 Destroy: go about to destroy, perditum ire, 362\*, a.  
 Deter, deterre. [See *From*.]  
 Determine, constituere.  
 Detrimental, to be, detrimento esse, 242.  
 Devote oneself to, incumbere in, with acc. (cubu-, cubit-).  
 Devote oneself to, studēre, dat.  
 Die, mori, ior (mortu-); mortem or supremum diem obire, 249.  
 Difference, distantia.  
 Difference: it makes a very great —, permultum interest, 122.  
 Difference, what is there? quid interest? Difference, there is no, } nihil interest,  
 Difference, it makes no, } or refert, 207.  
 Difficult, difficilis.  
 Difficulty: there is—in doing, &c.=it is *done* difficile—with difficulty, *scarcely*, *vix* (scarcely).  
 Difficulty: he has—in doing, &c.=he *does it* difficile.  
 Diligence, diligentia.  
 Dinner, cœna.  
 Direct = instruct, præcipere (cep-, cept-).  
 Discharge, fungi (funct-), abl.; perfungi.  
 Discipline, disciplina.  
 Discontented: am — with, pœnitet me, 207.  
 Discourse, sermo, onis.  
 Discover, invenire, reperire. S. 177, o.  
 Disease, morbus.  
 Disgraceful, turpis.  
 Disgusted: am — at, tædet (perf. pertæsum est) me, 207.  
 Dishonorably, turpiter.  
 Displease, displicēre, dat.  
 Dissatisfied: am — with, pœnitet me, 207.  
 Distance: to be at a distance of, &c. abesse, distare, 319.  
 Distance: at two miles' distance, 348.  
 Distant: to be — from, abesse; distare (a), 319.  
 Ditch, fossa.  
 Divest, exuere (exu-, exut-), 233.  
 Do, *f*acere (fēc-, fact-, *with fieri for its pass.*), agere (eg-, act-).  
 Do nothing but —, nihil aliud quam (faciunt omitted), 420.  
 Do well, præclare facere.  
 Dog, canis.  
 Dolabella, Dolabella, æ, m.  
 Doubt, dubitare.  
 Doubt: I don't at all —, non (not nullus dubito quin). See note, 492.  
 Doubt: there is no —, non est dubium (quin), 89.  
 Draw (= call) away, avocare.  
 Draw up an army, aciem instruere (strux-, struct-).  
 Draw up an army in three lines, triplicem aciem instruere.  
 Dream, somniare.

**Dream**, *s. somnium*.  
**Dress**, *vestitus, ūa*.  
**Drink**, *bibere (bib-, bibit-)*.  
**Drink**, *s. potus, ūa*, } 177.  
**Drinking**, *potio*, }  
**Drive**, *pellere (pepul-, pula-)*:—drive  
 away, *abigere (eg-, act-)*.  
**Dutiful affection**, *pietas*.  
**Duty**, *officium*.  
**E**.  
**Each** (of two), *uterque, utraque, utrum-*  
*que, G. utriusque*.  
**Each one**, *unusquisque*.  
**Each other** (after 'to love,' &c.), *inter*  
*se*, 470.  
**Each of them**, *singly, singuli, pl.*  
**Eagerly desirous**, *studiosus, gen.;*  
*avidus, gen.*  
**Easy**, *facilis*. **Easily**, *facile*.  
**Eat**, *edere (ēd-, ēs-)*; *vesci (S. 273)*.  
**Eclipse**, *defectio*.  
**Eclipsed**, to be, *deficere (fec-, fec-)*.  
**Efface**, *delēre (delev-, delet-)*.  
**Either — or**; *aut — aut*; *vel — vel*;  
*sive — sive*, 456.  
**Elect**, *eligere (leg-, lect-)*.  
**Election**, *comitia, n. pl.*  
**Eloquence**, *eloquentia, facundia (na-*  
*tural eloquence)*.  
**Emulate**, *æmulari, 229*.  
**Encamp**, *considēre (sed-, sess-)*.  
**Encounter death**, *mortem oppetere*.  
**Encounter a danger**, *periculum obire*.  
**End of, extremus**, *agreeing with its*  
*subst.*, 179.  
**Endued with**, *præditus, abl.*  
**Endure**, *sustinēre (tinu-, tent-)*.  
**Enemy** (private), *inimicus*.  
**Enemy** (public), *hostis*.  
**Engage** = *fight with, configere (flix-,*  
*flict-)*.  
**Engage** = *undertake, recipere (cep-,*  
*cept-)*: with *dat. of person (tibi, &c.)*  
*to whom one pledges one's word*.  
**Engaged in**: to be —, *operam dare,*  
 337: (in a *battle, affair, &c.*) *inter-*  
*tesse*, 224.  
**Enjoy**, *frui, abl.*  
**Enough**, *satis, affâtim (S. 512)*.  
**Enquire of**, *querere ex (quesiv-,*  
*quesit-)*.  
**Enter into partnership**, *coire societatem*.  
**Entrust**, *credere (credid-, credit-), dat.*  
*of person*.  
**Envy**, *invidēre (vid-, vis-), dat.*  
**Ephesian**, *Ephesus*.  
**Equal**, *par, dat.* **Equal to** (in *magnitude,*  
*real or figurative*), *instar, gen., 207*.  
**Error**, *error*.  
**Escape**: it escapes me, *me fugit, fallit,*  
*præterit*, 259.

**Escape from**, *s. fuga, 157*.  
**Eternal, æternus** (= *everlasting*); *sem-*  
*piternus, 123, c.*  
**Even**, *etiam*.  
**Even—not, ne — quidem**.  
**Even mind**, *æquus animus*.  
**Evening**, in the, *vesperi*.  
**Ever, unquam, aliquando, quando, ec-  
*quando*. See 402, and note k.  
**Every, omnis**.  
**Every body, quisque, 396**.  
**Every body who or that, quisquis, qui-  
*cunque, 396*.  
**Every tenth man**, *decimus quisque*.  
**Every thing**, *omnia, pl.*  
**Evil, malum, neut. adj.**  
**Exactly, with a numeral**; *ipse, in agree-*  
*ment, 308*.  
**Exceed the bounds of moderation, mo-  
*dum excedere (cess-)*.  
**Exceedingly, vehementer**.  
**Excel, antecellere, præstare, 229**.  
**Exhort, hortari, adhortari—cohortari**  
*(especially soldiers)*.  
**Expediency, utilitas**.  
**Expedient, utilis, dat.**  
**Expedient: it is —, expedit**.  
**Experience (familiarity with a thing),**  
*usus, ūa, m.*  
**Exposed to, obnoxius, 212**.  
**Extortion, pecunie repetundæ; or**  
*only repetundæ*.  
**Extremely flourishing, longe opulen-**  
*tissimus*.  
**Eye, oculus**.******

## F.

**Face, to know a man by, de facie nosse**.  
**Fail** (a friend), *desse, dat.: fail (one),*  
*deficere, 229*.  
**Faith, fides, 5**.  
**Faithful, fidelis**.  
**Fall on** (= *seize on*), *incessere, 229*.  
**False, falsus**.  
**Falsehoods, utter many, multa mentiri,**  
 38.  
**Family, familia**.  
**Far from (thinking) this, tantum abest**  
*ut — (ut)*.  
**Far: not to be — from, haud multum**  
*or procul abesse (quin), 91*.  
**Far be it from me not, 83**. See note †,  
 p. 28.  
**Far, multo with comp. and superl., 410**.  
**Farewell, ave, salve, vale, 281**.  
**Fate, fatum**.  
**Fault, culpa**.  
**Favour, a, beneficium**.  
**Favour, favēre, dat. (fav-, faut-)**.  
**Fawn upon, adulari, dat. or acc.**  
**Fear, of body, timor; of mind, metus, ūa**.

Fear, timēre, metuere, vereri. S. 90.  
 Feeble, imbecillus.  
 Feed on, vesci, 273. S.  
 Feel thankful, gratiam habēre.  
 Fever, febris, abl. i.  
 Few, pauci, æ, a.  
 Few: a few days ago, paucis his diebus.  
 Few: a few days before, paucis illis diebus.  
 Fidelity, fides.  
 Field, in the, militiæ.  
 Fight, pugnare: fight on horseback, ex equo.  
 Find, invenire, reperire, 177.  
 Find: hard to find, difficilis inventu, 364.  
 Finger's breadth. *See* Depart.  
 Finish, conficere (fec-, fect-).  
 Fire, ignis; (= conflagration) incendium.  
 First, primum: at first, primo. S. 83.  
 Fit, aptus, 212.  
 Fitted, accommodatus, 219.  
 Fix by edict, edicere (ut).  
 Flank, on the, a latere.  
 Flatter, adulari (*dat.* or *acc.*).  
 Flaw, vitium.  
 Flight, fuga.  
 Flogged, to be, virgis cædi (cess-).  
 Folly, stultitia.  
 Fond, cupidus, *gen.*  
 Food, cibus, i.  
 Foot, pes, pedis.  
 For: when untranslated, 255.  
 For (= *in behalf of*), pro.  
 For (= *owing to, of obstacles*), præ, *abl.*  
 For (after *fear*), sign of *dat.*  
 For how much? quanti?  
 For as much—as, tanti—quanti, 266.  
 For less, minoris, 266.  
 For just as much—as, } tantidem—  
 For no more than, } quanti, 226.  
 For instance, verbi causâ.  
 For sometime, dudum, jamdudum, 420.  
 For any thing I care, per me licet.  
 For us (after *make*), a nobis.  
 Foreign to, alienus, 212.  
 Foretell, prædicere (dix-, dict-).  
 Forget, oblivisci (oblitus), 199.  
 Former, the, ille, 378.  
 Forsooth: as if —, quasi vero, 494.  
 Fortune. *See* Good.  
 Fortune: let — see to it, id Fortuna vidērit.  
 Found, condere (condid-, condit-).  
 Founder (of a family), princeps familiæ.  
 Free from, liberare (*abl.*).  
 Freedman, libertinus (but with reference to his *master*, libertus).  
 Friendly, amicus.  
 Friends, his own, sui.

From, after *conceal*, omitted, 251.  
 From, after *presents, deters*, &c. quominus, 94.  
 From, after *recover*, ex.  
 From a boy, a puero.  
 From the heart, ex animo.  
 From a wall, ex muro.  
 From your neighbourhood, istinc.  
 From a different direction, aliunde.  
 Front, in, a fronte.  
 Frugality, frugalitas.  
 Fruit, fruits (of the earth), fruges, um,  
*f.:* (of a tree), fructus, ūs, m.—  
 bacca (*berry*, and any round fruit).  
 Full, plenus, 182.  
 Funeral pile, rōgus, i, m.  
 Fury, furor.

## G.

Gain an advantage, emolumentum capere (cep-, capt-), — *ex*.  
 Gain possession of, potiri (*abl.*, 271).  
 Gaul, Gallus.  
 Get possession of, potiri (potit), 271.  
 Gift, donum; munus, eris (S. 242).  
 Give information, docere, 253: give much information, multa docere (de), 252.  
 Give battle to, prœlium committere (cum: — mis-, miss-).  
 Given over, desperatus.  
 Given, it is, datur.  
 Glad, to be, lætari, 521.  
 Glorious, gloriosus.  
 Glory, gloria.  
 Goaway, abire, discedere (cess-). S. 308.  
 Go about to destroy, perditum ire, 362\*, a.  
 Go on, pergere (perrex-).  
 Go on in your valour! maeste virtute esto! 280.  
 Go wrong, errare.  
 God, Deus, 56.  
 Gold, aurum.  
 Golden, aureus.  
 Good, bonus; (= beneficial, expedient) utilis.  
 Good: to do —, prodesse, dat.  
 Good fortune: it was my —, contigit mihi, — ut, 374.  
 Good time: in —, } in tempore.  
 } tempore.  
 Govern, imperare, dat.; (= regulate, direct) moderari, acc. or dat. *See* 220; administrare, of governing (i. e. regulating the affairs of) the world.  
 Grateful, gratus.  
 Gratitude, gratia.  
 Greatest (when *degrees* is meant rather than size), summus.  
 Greece, Græcia.

Greedy, avidus, gen.  
Greek, Græcus.  
Grief, dolor.  
Grieve, dolere, morere. S. 521.  
Ground, humus; on the ground, humi.  
Grudge, invidere, dat. (vid-, vis-).  
Guard against, } cavere, acc. 233  
Guard, be on my, } (cav-, caut-).  
Guidance, under your, te duce; under  
the guidance of Herdonius, Her-  
donii ductu.

## H.

Habit of silence, taciturnitas.  
Had rather, malle, 150 (conjug. 142, 1).  
Hail, ave, salve, 281.  
Hand, manus, ds, 4, f.  
Hanging, suspensium.  
Happen (of evils), accidere (also gene-  
rally of good or evil): of fortunate  
events, contingere (tig-): = turn  
out, evenire (S. 374).  
Happen: how does it happen that . . . ?  
qui fit ut . . . ?  
Happy, beatus, felix (S. 443).  
Hard:—are hard to avoid, difficile vi-  
tantur.  
Hard to find, difficilis inventu (sup.).  
Hardly (= scarcely), vix.  
Hardly any body, nemo fere.  
Harvest, messis, f.  
Hate, odise (with tenses derived from  
perf.).  
Hateful, to be, odio esse, 242.  
Have, habere.  
Have: in such sentences as, 'with whom  
we have to do.' See 336.  
Have a thing done, faciendum curare,  
356.  
Have an interview with, convenire, acc.  
Head, caput, capitis, n.  
Heal, mederi, dat.  
Healed, to be (of a wound), consanes-  
cere.  
Health, to be in good, valere.  
Hear, audire.  
Hearing: without hearing him (= him  
unheard), inauditum, acc. masc.  
Heart (as the seat of the affections),  
animus, 92.  
Heart, cor, cordis, n.  
Heavy, gravis.  
Height: to such a —, eo, adv. gen.  
Help (a person in perplexity), subve-  
nire, dat.; juvare, acc. auxiliari,  
dat. succurrere, dat. (S. 222, k).  
Hence it happens, ita fit, ut.  
Her, acc. sing. se, if relating to nom.  
of sentence; if not, eam.  
Her, adj. suus, a, um, if relating to  
nom. of sentence; if not, ejus.  
Hesitate, dubitare.

Hidden, occultus.  
Him, se, if relating to nom. of sen-  
tence; if not, eum.  
Himself, 369; 373, c. (Q. on § 48.)  
Hinder, impedire. See Q. on § 15.  
Hindrance, impedimentum.  
His own friends, adherents, &c. sui.  
Hit (= strike), ferire, icere, caedere  
(cecid-, cæs-). S. 299, i.  
Hold, tenere.  
Hold a levy of troops, delectum habere.  
Hold one's tongue, silere, tacere. S.  
299, g.  
Hold cheap, parvi pendere, 266.  
Home, to, domum: at, domi: from, domo.  
Honey, mel, mellis.  
Honorable conduct, honestas. Honor-  
able, honestus. Honorably, honeste.  
Honour (= the honourable), honestas;  
(= probity) fides, ei.  
Honour, to be an, } honori esse, 242.  
Honorable, to be, }  
Hope, sperare: see 15.  
Horseback, on, ex equo: (of more than  
one person) ex equis.  
House, at my, domi meæ.  
How (with adj.), quam, 105.  
How disgraceful (how odious, &c.), it  
is, quanto opprobrio (quanto odio)  
est.  
How many, quot.  
How much (as subst.), quantum, 162.  
How does it happen? qui fit ut . . . ?  
How few there are, who —? quotus-  
quisque est, qui . . . ? (with subj.)  
477.  
Human-feeling, } humanitas.  
Humanity, }  
Hunger, fames, is.  
Hurry, to be in a, festinare.  
Hurt, nocere, dat.; lædere, acc. (læs).  
Hurtful, to be, nocere.  
Husband, vir, 291.

## I.

I for my part, equidem.  
If — not, nisi, 451.  
If however, sin autem, 451.  
Ignorant, to be, ignorare, acc.  
Ignorant: not to be ignorant that &c.,  
non ignorare, with acc. and infin.  
Ignorant: who is ignorant that . . . ?  
quis ignorat, quin . . . ? or more  
commonly with acc. and infin.  
See 89.  
Ignorant of, rudis, gen.  
Imagine, putare (to think).  
Immediately after the battle, confestim  
a proelio, 348.  
Immense, ingens.  
Immortal, immortalis.  
Impiety, impietas.

**Impiety**: if it may be said without —, *si fas est dictu*, 364.  
**Impiety**: it cannot be said without —, *nefas est dictu*, 364.  
**Importance**, it is of, *interest*, gen., 203.  
**Importance**, it is of great, *magni (or multum) interest*, 206, a.  
**Important**, *gravior*.  
**Importune**, *flagitare*.  
**Impose on**, *imponere (posu-, posit-)*, 233.  
**Impute as a fault**, *vitiu or culpæ dare or vertere*, 242.  
**In the presence of the people**, *apud populum*.  
**In (an author)**, *apud (Xenophontem, &c.)*.  
**In front**, *a fronte*.  
**In flank**, *a latere*.  
**In the rear**, *a tergo*.  
**In triumph (to lead)**, *per triumphum*.  
**Inattentive to**, *negligens*, gen., 183.  
**Inconsistent with**, *alienus*, 212.  
**Inconvenient**, *incommodus*.  
**Increase**, *augēre (aux-, auct-)*, trans.; *creocere (crev-)*, neut.  
**Incredible**, *incredibilis*.  
**Induce**, *adducere*, ut &c.  
**Indulge**, *indulgēre (duls-, dult-)*, dat.  
**Industry**, *diligentia*.  
**Inflict punishment on**, *aliquem poenā afficere*, 276.  
**Influence**: to have great — with, *multum valēre apud aliquem*.  
**Inform**, *certiorem facere*, 187.  
**Information**. See *Græc.*  
**Inhabit**, *incolere (colu-, cult-)*.  
**Injure**, *violare (= do harm to)*, *lædere*, acc.  
**Injurious**, it is, *nocet*, dat.  
**Injury**, *injuria*.  
**Innocent**, *innocens*.  
**Insignificant**: how —! *quam nullus!*  
**Insolence**, to such a height of, *eo (adv.) insolentiæ*, 512.  
**Instance**, for, *verbi causâ*.  
**Interest (= true interest)**, *utilitas*.  
**Interest**: it is the — of, *interest*, gen., 203.  
**Interests (to consult the)**. See 233.  
**Interests (to provide for)**. See 233.  
**Interview**. See *Ilavæ*.  
**Intimate**: to be — with, *familiariter uti*, abl.  
**Invent**, *invenire (177. o)*.  
**Inventor**, *inventor*; fem. *inventrix*.  
**Invest (= blockade)**, *obsidēre (sed-sess-)*.  
**Invoke**, *appellare*.  
**Iron-hearted**, *ferreus*.  
**Is (= is distant)**, *distat*.

**Island**, *insula*.  
**It cannot be but that**, *fieri non potest quin*.  
**It is not every man who can &c.**, *non cujusvis est &c.*, 190.  
**Italy**, *Italia*.

## J.

**Javelin**, *jaculum*.  
**Jest**, *jocus*.  
**Jewel**, *gemma*.  
**Join battle with**, *committere prælium (cum)*.  
**Journey**, on the, *inter viam*.  
**Joyful**, *lætus*.  
**Just (equitable)**, *æquus*.  
**Justice**, *justitia*.

## K.

**Keep**, *servare*.  
**Keep one's word**, *fidem præstare*.  
**Keep up a certain state**, *splendide se gerere*.  
**Kill**, *interficere, occidere, necare*, 308.  
**King**, *rex, régis*.  
**Know**, *scire, novisse, callēre*, 385.

## L.

**Labour**, *lābor, oris, m*.  
**Lame of one leg**, *claudus altero pede*.  
**Lamp**, *lucerna*.  
**Large**, *magnus*.  
**Lasting**, *sempiternus*.  
**Later**, the, *hic*.  
**Laugh**, *ridēre (ris-, ris-)*.  
**Law**, *lex, legis*.  
**Lay on**, *imponere*.  
**Lay down**, } *ponere (posu-, posit-)*.  
**Lay aside**, }  
**Lay a person under an obligation**, *gratiam ab aliquo inire*.  
**Lay down a magistracy**, *magistratum abdicare*; or *se* with abl., 308.  
**Lead a life**, *agere vitam (eg-, act-)*.  
**League**, *foedus, eris*.  
**Lean on**, *niti (nisus, nixus)*, abl., 273.  
**Learn**, *discere (didic-)*.  
**Learn by heart**, *ediscere*.  
**Learn something additional**, *aliquid addiscere (didic-, no sup.)*.  
**Learning**, branch of, *doctrina*.  
**Leave**, *relinquere (liq-, lic-)*: (by will), *relinquere*.  
**Leave (= go out of)**, *excedere* *with* abl. (*cess-*), 83.  
**Leave nothing undone**, *nihil prætermittere quin*.  
**Leave off**, *desinere (desi-, desit-)*.  
**Leg**. See *Lamæ*.  
**Leisure**: I have —, *vacat mihi*, 154.  
**Lemnos**, *Lemnos, G. I*.



- Let me know, *fac sciam* (*with ut omitted*).
- Let out to be built by contract, *locare faciendum*.
- Letter, *literæ*, pl.; *epistola*.
- Levy troops, *delectum habère*.
- Liable to, *obnoxius*, 212.
- Liar, *mendax* (adj.).
- Lie, *mentiri*.
- Lie near, *adjacere*, 229.
- Life, *vita*; (= life-time) *ætas*. In the life-time of Augustus, *Augusto vivo*, 364.
- Lift up, *tollere* (*sustul-*, *sublat-*).
- Light, *levis*.
- Light (= kindle), *accendere*: *succendere rogum*, &c. S. 299, h.
- Lightning, *fulmen*, *inis*.
- Like, *similis*, *dat.*: (= equal to in size) *instar*, *gen*.
- Like (*verb*). See 491, d.
- Lines: to draw up an army in three —, *triplicem aciem instruere*.
- Literature, *literæ*.
- Little, or a little (= few things), *pauca*, 23.
- Little: but or too —, *parum*.
- Little, a (= some, but not much), *paululum*; *paululum*, 402.
- Long, *diu*; *pridem*, *jamdiu*, *jampridem*. S. 420.
- Long for, *avere*, of an *impatient*, *gestire*, of a *joyous* longing.
- Look to that yourself, *id ipse vidëris*.
- Loquacious, *loquax*.
- Lose, *perdere* (*perdid-*, *perdit-*): *lose* (*passively*), *amittere*. S. 56.
- Lose an opportunity, *occasionem amittere*.
- Lose flesh, *corpus amittere*.
- Love, *amare*, *diligere*. S. 185, a.
- Lover of, *amans*, *diligens*, *gen.*, 183.
- Lover: such a lover of, *adeo amans* or *diligens*, *gen.*, 183.
- Lowest, *infimus*, *imus*.
- Lust, *libido*, *inis*.
- Luxurious, *luxuriosus*.
- Lyre, to play on the. See *Teach*.
- M.
- Mad, *demens*, *-ntis*.
- Mad, to be, *furere*.
- Madness, *amentia*, 512.
- Magistracy, to hold, *magistratum gerere*.
- Make, *facere* (*fec*, *fect*); *efficio*: *am made*, *fi*. *Obs.* 'makes all things (*acc.*) flourish;' in Lat. 'makes that (*ut*) all things (*nom.*) should flourish,' 254.
- Make* (= appoint to an office), *creare*.
- Make the same promise, *idem polliceri* (*licit-*).
- Make treaty, &c. *foedus icere*, 299.
- Make this request of you, *illud te rogo* (*ut, ne*).
- Make mention of, *meminisse*, *recordari*, 201.
- Mark sport of, } *illudere* (*lus-*), *dat*.
- Make merry with, }
- Make the same boast, *idem gloriari*.
- Make it my first object, *id agere* (*ut*).
- Make for us, a *nobis facere*.
- Make a decree in a man's favour, *secundum aliquem decernere* (*decrev-*, *decret-*).
- Maker, effector: *fem. effectrix*.
- Making haste (after *opus est*), *prope-rato*, *abl. part.* 171.
- Man, *homo*, *vir* (S. 38, y).
- Man: I am not the — to, *non is sum*, *qui* (*subj.*).
- Manners (= morals, character), *mores*, *um*, *pl*.
- Many, *multi*.
- March against the enemy, *obviam ire hostibus*.
- Marry (of a female), *nubere*, *dat.*, 222.
- Marseilles, *Massilia*.
- Master, *magister*, *dominus*, *herus* (S. 180).
- Matter, *res*.
- Mean, *sibi velle*.
- Mean time: in the —, *interim*, *interca* (S. 402).
- Means, by no, *minime*.
- Meat, *cibus*.
- Medicine, *medicina*.
- Meditate, *meditari*, *acc*.
- Meet, to go to, *obviam ire* (*dat.*).
- Melt, *liquescere* (*licu-*).
- Merchant, *mercator*.
- Middle of, *medius* (in agreement with its subst. 179).
- Mile (= 1000 paces), *mille passus*: *pl. millia passuum*.
- Miletus, of, *Milesius*.
- Milk, *lac*, *lactis*.
- Mind, *mens*, *mentis*; *animus*, 92.
- Mindful, *memor*, *gen*.
- Miserable, *miser*, *era*, &c.
- Mistaken, to be, *falli*.
- Mistaken, I am, *me fallit*.
- Mock, *illudere*, *dat.*, 229.
- Moderate, *moderari*, *acc. or dat.*, 220.
- Money, *pecunia*.
- Month, *mensis*, *m*.
- Moon, *luna*.
- Moral, *sanctus*.
- Morals, *mores*, *um*.
- More, plus, with *gen*. For more, *pluria*.
- Mortal, *mortalis*.

Most men, plerique.  
 Motion, motus, ūs.  
 Mound, agger.  
 Move, movēre (mov-, mot-). Move, *neut.* moveri.  
 Much, multa, n. pl. (but if *opposed to many things*, or followed by *gen.*, *multum*).  
 Much less, nedum, 443.  
 Multitude, multitudo, inis.

N.

Naked, nudus.  
 Name, nominare (also = to appoint).  
 Nature, natura; rerum natura.  
 Near, prope, acc.  
 Near, to be very, minimum abesse (*impers.*) quin, 92.  
 Nearer, propior; adv. propius, 211.  
 Nearer, *am.*, propius absum (quam), 319.  
 Nearest, proximus.  
 Nearly, prope, pæne.  
 Need, egēre, indigēre, abl. or gen.  
 Need: have — of, opus est, 176, e.  
 Need: You have no need; there is no need; nihil opus est.  
 Negligent, negligens, gen. 183.  
 Neighbourhood, in your, istic, }  
 Neighbourhood, from your, istinc, } 387.  
 Neighbourhood, to your, istuc, }  
 Neither — nor, { neque — neque.  
 Neutral, medius.  
 Never, nunquam.  
 Nevertheless, tamen.  
 News of the town, res urbanae.  
 Next: the next thing is, sequitur ut, 85.  
 Night, by, noctu or nocte.  
 No, nullus; after *ne*, quis.  
 No one, nemo.  
 No painter, nemo pictor. (*So* nemo philosophus, &c.)  
 No where, } nusquam.  
 No whither, }  
 No time, nihil temporis.  
 Nobody, nemo, nullius\*, nemini, neminem, nullo. See Caution 36.  
 None of you, nemo vestrum.  
 None of those things, nihil eorum.  
 Nor, neque, nec: but after *ut* or *ne* it is *neve* or *neu*.  
 Not, non. On not, *c. imperat.* cf. 65.  
 After *rel.*, see p. 174, d.  
 Not yet, nondum.  
 Not one's own, alienus.  
 Not even, ne—quidem.

Not only—but also, non solum—sed, or verum, etiam.  
 Not so far off, to be, propius abesse.  
 Not to say, ne dicam.  
 Not that—but, non quod—sed; non quo—sed; non eo or ideo quod—sed, 492.  
 Not at all, nihil.  
 Not as if not, non quin, with subj.  
 Not to be far from, haud multum (or, haud procul) abesse (quin).  
 Nothing, nihil.  
 Nothing but, nihil aliud nisi, 185.  
 Nourish, alere (alu-, alit- or alt-).  
 Now (= already), jam.  
 Number, numerare.

O.


Obey, parēre, obedire, dat. (S. 222.)  
 Object, not to, non recusare quin, 92.  
 Obligation, lay a man under a great, confer an — on, magnam ab aliquo (*Cic.*), apud aliquem (*Liv.*), gratiam inire, 339. \.  
 Obliging, commodus.  
 Obstruct, intercludere (elus-).  
 Obtain, potiri, abl. or gen.  
 Occasion: you have no — to hurry, nihil est quod festines, 477.  
 Occasion: have — for, opus est, 170.  
 Occupy myself in, operam dare, 337.  
 Ocean, oceanus.  
 Odious, to be, odio esse, 243.  
 Of, after 'strip,' &c. abl.  
 Of, after 'become,' 'deserve well,' &c. 'am persuaded,' and when of = concerning, de.  
 Of, after 'enquire,' ex.  
 Of others, alienus, a, um.  
 Of such a kind, ejusmodi.  
 Offend, offendere (fend-, fens-), acc.  
 Offend against, violare (e.g. a law, 11).  
 Offence: if I may say so without —, pace tuâ dixerim.  
 Old, vetus, veteris, n. pl. vetera.  
 Old man, senex, G. senis, G. pl. um.  
 Old age, senectus, ūtis.  
 One (of two), alter, G. ius.  
 One thing—another, aliud—aliud, 38.  
 One (= a certain), quidam.  
 One (= some one, no matter who), aliquis.  
 One's, suus.  
 Only, adj. solus, G. ius.  
 Only: the—one who, unus qui, with subj.  
 Only son, unicus filius.  
 Opinion, to be of, censēre.

\* *Neminis* and *nemine* are not found, but *nullius*, *nullo*:—except now and then *nemine* with pass. participle, in Suet., Tacitus, &c. *Nullo* with pass. partecp. is rare. See 363, note †.—*NEMO ablativum* nec habet, nec habet *genitivum*.

Opportunity, occasio.  
 Oppose, repugnare, dat. ; obstare, dat.  
 Or, aut, vel, ve, 456 (in questions *an*).  
 Or not, neque. See 122.  
 Orator, orator.  
 Order, jubere (juss-), acc. with inf.  
 Other people's, alienus (adj.).  
 Ought, oportet. See 126.  
 Out of, e, ex.  
 Out of doors, foras.  
 Out: to dine out, cœnare foris, 339.  
 Over: it is all over with, actum est de.  
 Over against, adversus.  
 Overpower (with emotion), frangere (freg-, fract-).  
 Overthrow, evertere (vert-, vers-). For 'to tend to the overthrow of any thing;' see 335, the last example of which is to be imitated.  
 Owe, debere.  
 Owing: it is owing to, per aliquem stat, quominus, &c. 99.  
 Own (*emphatic*), ipsius or ipsorum, after meus, tuus, &c.

## P.

Pace, passus, ūs.  
 Pained, to be, dolere, acc. or abl. with *de*.  
 Pardon, venia.  
 Pardon, ignoscere (nov-), dat. ; (of a superior) veniam dare.  
 Parent, parens ; genitor, fem. genitrix.  
 Part, pars, partis.  
 Partner, consors, 185.  
 Party, to be of our, a nobis sentire.  
 Past, the, præterita.  
 Peck, modius.  
 Peculiar, proprius, 212.  
 Perceive, sentire. To perceive by the senses, sentire.  
 Perchance (in questions), quid in ecquid, numquid, 400.  
 Perform, fungi, perfungi (funct-), *abl*.  
 Perform what one has promised, id quod promisi or pollicitus sum servare, observare, or efficere (-io).  
 Perhaps, fortasse.  
 Permitted, it is, licet.  
 Permitted, I am, licet mihi.  
 Perpetual, sempiternus.  
 Perseverance, perseverantia.  
 Persist, perseverare.  
 Persuade (=advise), suadere, dat ; (=advise effectually), persuadere, dat. (suas-).  
 Persuaded, I am, persuasum est mihi de &c., or persuasum habeo, 291.  
 Perverse, perversus.  
 Perversely, perversè.  
 Philosopher, philosophus.

Philosophy, philosophia.  
 Piety, pietas.  
 Pity (I), miseret me, or misereor, gen. S. 201, r.  
 Pity, misericordia.  
 Place, locus, i. m. pl. loca, in the sense of connected places, 'parts:' otherwise, loci.  
 Plain, manifestus.  
 Plainly: see — through, perspectum habeo, 364.  
 Planet, planeta or -es.  
 Plan, consilium.  
 Plant, serere (sev-, sat-).  
 Play, ludere (lus-).  
 Play on the lyre. See *Teach*.  
 Plead a cause, dicere causam.  'Agere causam' implies the whole management of it.  
 Pleasant, jucundus.  
 Please, placere, dat.  
 Pleasure, voluptas.  
 Poet, poeta.  
 Point: to be on the—of, in eo esse ut, 479.  
 Poison, venenum.  
 Pompey, Pompejus.  
 Poor, pauper.  
 Possession, to be in, tenere.  
 Possession, to gain, potior, abl. or gen.  
 Possible as (after superl. quam), vel, 410.  
 Possibly. As great as can possibly be, quantus maximus potest esse, 412.  
 Post himself, considerare (séd-, sess-).  
 Power, potentia of actual, potestas of legal, conceded, &c. power.  
 Power: to put himself in their —, potestatem sui facere.  
 Power: to be in our —, in nostrâ potestate esse.  
 Powerful, potens.  
 Practise (justice, &c.), colere (colu-, cult-).  
 Praise, laus, laudis.  
 Praise, v. laudare.  
 Pray (= beg earnestly), orare.  
 Predict, prædicere (dix-, dict-).  
 Prefer, antepone (posu-, posit-).  
 Prefer a charge, reum facere *de*, 187.  
 Prefer a capital charge against, rei capitalis reum facere, 187.  
 Prefer a charge of immorality against, de moribus reum facere, 187.  
 Prejudicial, to be, obesse, dat.  
 Prepare, parare.  
 Present with, donare, 207.  
 Present, give as a, dono or muneri dare, 242 (3).  
 Present, to be, adesse, dat.  
 Preservation. Tend to the —, 335, c.  
 Pretend, simulare.

Pretty often, *nonnunquam*.  
 Prevent, *obstare*, dat. (*obstit-*).  
 Priest, } *sacerdos*, *otis*.  
 Priestess, }  
 Proceed against a person, *consulere* in  
*aliquem*.  
 Produce (= fruits), *fruges*, pl.  
 Productive of, *efficiens*, gen., 183.  
 Profitable, to be, *prodesse*, dat.  
 Promise, *polliceri* (*licit-*); *promittere*,  
 S. 17, l. See 15.  
 Prompt execution (after *opus est*),  
*mature factio*, 177.  
 Prone, *proclivis* (ad).  
 Property, all my, *omnia mea*.  
 Property, all their, *omnia sua*.  
 Prosecute, *postulare*, 201.  
 Protection, take under one's, *tueri*, 374.  
 Proud, *superbus*.  
 Prove an honour, *honoris esse*; *prove*  
 done by sum with the dat., 242.  
 Prove myself mindful, *præstare me*  
*memorem*.  
 Prove my gratitude, } *gratiam re-*  
 Prove myself grateful, } *ferre*.  
 Provide for the interests of, *providere*  
 (*vid-*, *vis-*); *prospicere* (*spex-*,  
*spect-*), both with dat.  
 Provided that, *dum, modo, or dum-*  
*môdo* (after which 'not' is ne),  
 494.  
 Providence, *providentia*.  
 Pull down, *diruere* (*ru-*, *rut-*).  
 Punishment, *pœna*.  
 Purpose, for the, *causâ*.  
 Purpose, to no, *nequicquam, frustra*.  
 Put down, *ponere* (*posu-*, *posit-*).  
 Put off, *exuere* (*exu-*, *exut-*).  
 Put in mind of, *admonere*, 194.  
 Pyre, *rogus*.

## Q.

Quite (to be without), *plane* (*carere*).  
 Question. It is a question, *dubium or*  
*incertum est*; *quaeritur* (121, d).

## R.

Rather, I had, *mâlo*.  
 Ratify a treaty, *icere foedus*.  
 Rational faculty, *mens*.  
 Rear, in the, a *tergo*.  
 Reason: you, &c. have no —, *nihil est*  
*quod (subj.)*.  
 Receive, *ac-*, *ex-*, *re-*, *cipere* (*cep-*,  
*cept-*). S. 308.  
 Receive favorably, *boni consulere* (in  
*Quintill.*, *Seneca*, &c.); in *bonam*  
*partem accipere*, 185.  
 Reckon, *numerare*.  
 Reckon one thing after another, *post-*  
*habere*.

Reckon as a fault, *vito vertere*, 242.  
 Recollect, *reminisci*.  
 Reconciled, to be, in *gratiam redire*  
 (*cum*).  
 Recover, *convalescere* (*valu-*).  
 Recruit myself, *me reficere* (*fec-*, *fect-*).  
 Refrain: I cannot — from, *temperare*  
*mihi non possum, quin &c.*  
 Regard the interests of, *prospicere*,  
 dat. (*spex-*, *spect-*).  
 Reign, *regnare*.  
 Reign: in your —, *te rege*; *te reg-*  
*nante or imperante*, 364.  
 Reject, *repudiare*.  
 Rejoice, *gaudere* (*gavisus sum*).  
 Relate, *narrare*.  
 Relieve from, *liberare*, abl.: (of a *par-*  
*tial* relief) *levare*, abl.  
 Religion, *religio*.  
 Relying on, *fretus*, abl.  
 Remainder = rest of, 179.  
 Remains, it, *reliquum est, restat* (ut).  
 Remedy, *remedium*.  
 Remember, *meminisse* (*Imperat. me-*  
*mento*); *recordari, reminisci*. S.  
 201, q.  
 Remind, *admonere*, gen.  
 Render, *reddere* (*did-*, *dit-*): render  
 an account, *rationem reddere*.  
 Renew, *renovare*.  
 Repair, *reficere* (*fec-*, *fect-*).  
 Repay a kindness, *gratiam referre*.  
 Repent: I — me, *me pœnitet*, gen.  
 Report, *fama*.  
 Require, *egere, indigere*, gen. or abl.  
 Required, are, *opus sunt*, 172.  
 Resignation, *æquus animus*. More *r.*,  
*æquior animus*. The most or  
 greatest *r.*, *æquissimus animus*.  
 Resist, *resistere* (*restit-*), *repugnare*,  
 dat.  
 Resolve, *constituere* (*stitu-*, *stitut-*).  
 Rest, *requies*.  
 Rest on, *nitî*, 273.  
 Rest of, adj. *reliquus*. See 179.  
 Rest, all the, *cetera omnia*.  
 Restore liberty to his country, *patriam*  
*in libertatem vindicare*.  
 Restrain, *temperare*, dat., *moderari*  
 (*dat.*), 220.  
 Restrained, to be, *retineri* (*retentus*),  
*inhiberi*, 89.  
 Retain a grateful sense, *gratiam habere*.  
 Return, *redire, reverti, revenire*, S.  
 339, p.  
 Return thanks, *gratias agere* (*eg-*, *act-*).  
 Revile, *maledicere*, dat.  
 Reviler, *vituperator*.  
 Revolt from, *deficere ab* (*fec-*, *fect-*).  
 Rich, *dives*.  
 Riches, *divitiæ*.

Right, *rectus*: (of situation) *dexter*.  
 Rise, *oriri*, *ior* (*ort-*). See 443.  
 Rival, *semulari*, *dat.* or *acc.*  
 River, *flumen*, *amnis*, *fluvius*, 472, o.  
 Rob, *spoliare*, *abl.*  
 Rod, *virgæ*, *pl.*  
 Rope (= hanging), *suspensium*.  
 Roman, *Romanus*.  
 Rome, *Roma*.  
 Rule, *regula*.  
 Ruling power, to be, *rerum potiri*.  
 Run to any body's assistance, *accurre*, 450, c.

## S.

Safety, *salus*, *ûtis*, *f.*  
 Sail past, }  
 Sail along, } *prætervêhi* (*vect-*), *acc.*  
 Sake: for the — of, *causâ*.  
 Sake, for its own, *propter sese*.  
 Salute, *salûtare*.  
 Same, *idem*.  
 Satisfaction, to your, &c., *ex* (*tuâ*)  
*sententiâ*.  
 Satisfactorily, *ex sententiâ*.  
 Satisfy, *satisfacere* (*fec-*, *fact-*), *dat.*  
 Savour (of), *reddôlere*, 249.  
 Say, *dicere*: (= *asserere*), *ait*.  
 Say that — not, *negare*.  
 Say: not to say, *ne dicam*.  
 Say: they (= people) say, *ferunt*.  
 Say: as they say, }  
 Saying: as the — is, } *ut aiunt*.  
 Says he, *inquit*.  
 Sauce, *condimentum*.  
 Scarcely, *vix*.  
 Sea, *mare*. By sea and land, *terrâ*  
*marique*.  
 Season, *tempestatas*.  
 Seasoning, *condimentum*.  
 Second, *alter*.  
 Second, *sêcundus*.  
 Sedition, *seditio*.  
 See, *vidêre*; (= distinguish; have the  
*sense* of sight) *cernere*.  
 See that you don't, *vide ne*.  
 See (plainly) through (any thing), *ali-*  
*quid perspectum habêre*, 364.  
 See: do you see to that, *id tu vidêris*.  
 Seek-for, *querere* (*quæsiv-*, *quæsît-*).  
 Seem, *videri* (*vis*).  
 Seize on, *incessere* (of *fear*, &c.), 229.  
 Self, *selves*. See 368. I myself, *ipse*, 33.  
 Sell, *vendere* (*vendid-*, *vendit-*).  
 Sell, *neut.* *vênire* (*veneo*), 267.  
 Senate, *Senatus*, *ûs*, *m.*  
 Send, *mittere* (*mis-*, *miss-*).  
 Send forward, *prætermittere*.  
 Send (news by letter), *perscribere*.  
 Send to the assistance of, *auxilio mit-*  
*tere* (two *datt.*).

Sentence, *sententia*.  
 Serpent, *serpens*.  
 Serve a campaign, *stipendium merêre*,  
 or *mereri*, 308.  
 Serves, *est* with *dat.*, 237.  
 Service, to be of, *prodesse* (*dat.*).  
 Serviceable, *idoneus*.  
 Sesterce, *sestertius*.  
 Set on fire, *incendere*, *succendere*,  
 S. 299.  
 Set out, *proficisci* (*fect-*).  
 Set out to the assistance of, *auxili-*  
*proficisci* (two *datt.*).  
 Set at liberty, }  
 Set free from, } *liberare*, *abl.*  
 Several, *plures*.  
 Several times, 420.  
 Severe, *gravis*; *gravior*, 409, g.  
 Severity, *gravitas*.  
 Shadow, *umbra*.  
 Shed, *profundere* (*fud-*, *fus-*).  
 Should, = *ought*, *debêre*, *oportet*, 126:  
 or (after *Exerc.* 49) *part. in dus*,  
 326, 327.  
 Show (myself brave), *præbêre*.  
 Stoily, *Sicilia*.  
 Sick, *æger*, *gra*, *grum* (of *body* or *mind*):  
*ægotus*.  
 Side, to be on our, a *nobis stare*.  
 Siege, *obsidio*.  
 Silence, *silentium*: (*habit* of) *taciturni-*  
*tas*.  
 Silent, *tacitus*: (*habitually*) *taciturnus*.  
 Silent, to be, *silêre*, *tacêre*, S. 299.  
 Silver, *argentum*.  
 Sin, *peccare*.  
 Since, *quum*, *quoniam*, 492.  
 Sister, *soror*.  
 Size, *magnitudo*.  
 Skilled in, *peritus*, *gen.*  
 Slaughter, *trucidare*.  
 Slave, *servus*.  
 Slave, to be the, *servire*, *dat.*  
 Slay, *occidere* (*cîd-*, *cîs-*).  
 Sleep, *somnus*.  
 Smack of, *redolêre* (*acc.*), } 245.  
 Smell of, *olêre*, }  
 Snatch away, *eripere* (*ripu-*, *rept-*), *dat.*  
 of *pers.*  
 Snares, *insidiæ*.  
 Snow, *nix*, *nivis*, *f.*  
 So near home, *tam prope a domo*.  
 So. The thing is so, *res ita se habet*.  
 Socrates, *Socrates*, *Gen.* *is*.  
 Sold, to be, *venire* (*veneo*), 267.  
 Some, *aliquis*, *quispiam*, 392. See  
 note x, and 390, v.  
 Some one or other, *nescio quis*, 394.  
 Some body of consequence, *aliquis*, 396.  
 Some other place, to, *alio*.  
 Some other place, from, *aliunde*.

Some other direction, in, alio.  
 Some other direction, from, aliunde.  
 Some considerable, aliquantum.  
 Some — others, alii — alii.  
 Sometimes, nonnunquam, aliquando.  
   interdum. S. 402.\*  
 Somewhat. Omit, and put adj. in  
*compar.* 408: or translate by *paulo*  
 with *compar.*  
 Song, cantus, ūs.  
 Sorry: I am — for, piget me, gen.  
 Soul, animus.  
 Sow, serere (sēv-, sāt-).  
 Spain, Hispania.  
 Spare, parcere (peperc-), dat.  
 Speak, loqui (locut-).  
 Speak the truth, verum dicere.  
 Spear, hasta.  
 Speech, oratio, 249.  
 Spend his life, vitam agere.  
 Spend his time (in), tempus impen-  
 dēre, 337.  
 Spoken ill of, to be, male audire.  
 Sport: to make — of, illudere (lus-),  
 dat.  
 Stand in need of, egēre, gen. or abl.  
 Stand by, adesse, dat.  
 Star, stella, S. 51.  
 Starvation, fames.  
 State, respublica.  
 Stay (in a place), commorari.  
 Stick, bacillum.  
 Stir out of the city, urbe excedere, 249.  
 Stone, lapis: *adj.* lapideus.  
 Storm, oppugnare, acc.  
 Storm. To take by —, per vim ex-  
 pugnare.  
 Strange, mirus.  
 Strength, vires, ium.  
 Strip off, exuere.  
 Strive, niti, eniti (nisus, nixus), ut.  
 Struck (by stones, lightning, &c.), ictus.  
 Study, studēre, dat.  
 Subject to, obnoxius, dat.  
 Succeed (= follow), excipere, acc.  
 Successfully, ex sententiā.  
 Succour, succurrere, dat.  
 Such, talia.  
 Such is your temperance, quæ tua est  
 temperantia, 56.  
 Such a manner, in, ita (ut).  
 Suffer, sinere (siv-); pati (passus).  
 S. 532.  
 Suggestion, at your, te auctore.  
 Suitable, idoneus, 212.  
 Sun, sol.  
 Superior, to be, } antecellere, præstare,  
 Surpass, } 229.

Surpass, superare.  
 Superstition, superstitio.  
 Supper, cœna.  
 Support (= nourish), alere (alu-, alit-  
 or alt-).  
 Surround, circumdāre (urbem muro,  
 or murum urbi).  
 Survive, superesse (— fui).  
 Survivor, superstes, itis.  
 Suspense, to be in anxious, pendāre  
 animi, animo (or, if necessary,  
 animis).  
 Suspicion, suspicio, onis, f.  
 Swallow, hirundo, dinis, f.  
 Swear, jūrare.  
 Sweet, dulcis.  
 Syracuse, Syracūsæ.

## T.

Take †, capere (cep-, capt-); sumere  
 (sums-, sumpt-). S. 492.  
 Take by storm, expugnare.  
 Take in good part, boni consulere, 185.  
 Take away, adimere, eximere, S. 385, o  
 (em, empt); eripere, dat. of pers.  
 Take measures against, consulere in  
 (acc.).  
 Take cruel measures against, crudeli-  
 ter in (aliquem) consulere.  
 Take a camp, exuere hostes castris, 233.  
 Take care, cavēre (cav-, caut-).  
 Take care that, vide (ne).  
 Take under one's protection, tueri, 374.  
 Take hold of, prehendere (hend-, hens-).  
 Teach, docēre, two acc., 257.  
 Teach to play on the lyre, fidibus do-  
 cēre (i. e. *teach with or on the*  
*strings*).  
 Teacher, magister; fem. magistra.  
 Temper, animus, m.  
 Temple, templum.  
 Tenacious, tenax, ācis, gen.  
 Tend to, 335, o.  
 Terrify, terrēre.  
 Territory, ager, -gri, m.  
 Thank, gratias agere.  
 That (after *doubt, deny, &c.* with neg.),  
 quin (o. subj.).  
 That (after *fear*), ne; *that—not*, ut (or  
 ne non).  
 That, as nom. to 'is,' &c. agrees with  
 nom. after it, 386, m.  
 That famous, ille, 381.  
 That (after 'it remains,' 'it follows'), ut.  
 That too, et is; idemque, } 385.  
 That too not, nec is, }  
 That only, is demum, 385.  
 Thebes, Thebæ, arum.

\* Rarius interdum quam nonnunquam esse memento.

† Take arms, arma capere or sumere. (*Clæra*.)

Then (= at that time), *tum*.  
 Then (= after), *deinde*, *inde*.  
 Then (= therefore), *igitur*, *itaque*.  
 There, *ibi*.  
 There is no doubt, *non est dubium quin*.  
 There are some who (think), *sunt qui* (putent).  
 There are not wanting, *non desunt qui* (subj.).  
 There are found some who, *reperiuntur qui* (subj.).  
 Thigh, *femur*, *oris*, *n*.  
 Thing. A thing which (referring to a preceding sentence), *id quod*: *sometimes*, *quæ res*, 36.  
 Think, *considere*, *putare*, *existimari*, *arbitrari*. S. 257.  
 Think nothing of, *nihili facere*, 266.  
 Thirst for, *sitire*, *acc.*, 240.  
 This being the case, *quæ quum ita sint*.  
 Thousand, *mille*, *adj.*; *pl. millia*, *subst.*  
 Threaten, *minari*. See end of 222.  
 Three hundred, *trecenti*.  
 Three days, space of, *triduum*.  
 Three years, space of, *triennium*.  
 Through, expressing the *cause*, sign of *abl.*  
 Throw before, *projicere* (*ject-*, *ject-*): see 75, l.  
 Throw off, *exuere*.  
 Till, *colere* (*colu-*, *cult-*).  
 Till, *donec*, *dum*, *quoad*, 507, &c.  
 Time, at that, *id temporis*.  
 Time: at the time of the Latin Games, *Ludis Latinis*.  
 Time, for a long, *dudum*, *diu*, *jamdudum*, &c. S. 420.  
 Times, two or three (= several times)\*, *bis terque*.  
 Times, two or three (= not more than)\*, *bis terve*.  
 Times: many times as great, *multis partibus major*.  
 Timid, *timidus*.  
 Tired: am — of, *tædet me*, *gen.*  
 To death (after *condemn*), *capitis*.  
 To no purpose, *nequicquam*, *frustra*. S. 33.  
 To each other (after *contrary*, *compare*), *inter se*.  
 Toga, *toga*.  
 Together (after *compare*), *inter se*.  
 To-morrow, *cras*.  
 Tongues: to hold their —, 299.  
 Too much, *nimius* (*nimius somnus* or *nimum somni*).  
 Too dear, *nimio*.  
 Top of, *summus*, *adj.* See 179.

Torch, *tæda*.  
 Tortured: to be — in mind, *discruciarī animi*.  
 Towards, *adversus*, *erga*, 470: *in*, 281.  
 Treachery, *proditio*.  
 Treason, *proditio*.  
 Treaty, *foedus*, *eris*.  
 Tribune, *tribunus*.  
 Triumph, *triumphus*.  
 Triumph, *in*, *per triumphum* (*ducere*).  
 Triumph: gain a — for a victory over the Gauls, *de Gallis triumphare*.  
 Troublesome, *molestus*.  
 Troy, *Troja*.  
 True: it is—but, *ille quidem*—*sed*, 383.  
 Truly, *vere*.  
 Trustworthy, *fidelis*.  
 Truth, *veritas*.  
 Turn back, *revertere*, *reverti*, 339.  
 Turn out, *evadere* (*vas-*).  
 Turn it into a fault, *vicio vertere*, 242 (2).  
 Tuscan, *Tuscius*.  
 Two days, space of, *biduum*.

## U.

Unacquainted with, *rudis*, *gen.*  
 Unbecoming, it is, *deditet*, *acc.*  
 Unburied, *inhumatus*.  
 Under favour, *bonâ tuâ veniâ*.  
 Under such an age, 306.  
 Understand, *intelligere* (*lex-*, *lect-*).  
 Undertake, *suscipere*: (= engage to do) *recipere*. (Both *cēp-*, *cept-*.)  
 Undertake to corrupt, *corrumpendum suscipere*.  
 Unexpected, *insperatus*.  
 Unexpectedly, *de improviso*.  
 Unfriendly, *inimicus*.  
 Unless, *nisi*, 451.  
 Unless indeed, *nisi vero*, or *forte*.  
 Unless I am mistaken, *nisi me fallit*.  
 Unlike, *dissimilis*, *dat.*  
 Unmindful, *immemor*, *gen.*  
 Unskilled in, *imperitus*, *gen.*  
 Unteach, *dedocere*, *to acc.*  
 Unwilling to be, *nolle*.  
 Unwilling, } *invitus*.  
 Unwillingly, }  
 Unworthy, *indignus*, *abl.*  
 Use, *uti* (*usus*), *abl.*  
 Use, make a bad — of, *male uti*, *abl.*  
 Use, make a perverse — of, *perverse uti*, *abl.*  
 Useful, *utilis*, 212.  
 Useless, *inutilis*, 212.  
 Utter many falsehoods, *multa mentiri* (*de*), 38.

\* BIS TERQUE augebit, minuet BIS TERVE notatum.

## V.

Vain, in, nequicquam; frustra (S. 33).  
 Value, aestimare, 264.  
 Valuable, pretiosus.  
 Very (with *superl.*), vel, 410.  
 Very many, permulti.  
 Very much, permulta.  
 Very little, perpauca.  
 Very, to be translated by *magnus*, or *summus*, when the adj. after '*very*' is translated by a subst. 'Is *very* honorable,' *magno* honori est, 242.  
 Vice, vitium.  
 Violence, vis.  
 Virtue, virtus, virtutis.  
 Virtuous, honestus.  
 Virtuously, honeste.  
 Visit (on *business*), adire; (as a *friend*) visere; (on *business* or *not*) convenire. S. 249.  
 Voyage, to have a prosperous, ex sententiâ navigare.

W.

Wage, gerere (gees-, gest-).  
 Wait, manere.  
 Wait for, expectare, opperiri, præstolari. S. 229.  
 Wait upon, convenire, acc.  
 Walk, ambulare.  
 Wall, murus; (of a walled city) mœnia, pl.; (of a house) paries, etis; (of a garden, &c.) maceria.  
 Wanting, to be, deesse, dat.  
 War, bellum.  
 War, in, bello.  
 Warn, monere (ut, ne). See p. 211, note.  
 Washed, to be (of an *island*), circumfundi (fusus).  
 Watch over, cavere (cav-, caut-), dat.  
 Water, aqua.  
 Wave, fluctus, ūs.  
 Way, in such a, ita (ut).  
 Weary, am, tædet me, gen.  
 Weight, onus, eris, n.  
 Well, bene: (= rightly) recte.  
 Whatever, quicquid, neut. as *subst.*; quicumque, adj.  
 Wheat, triticum.  
 When, quum, quando, 105: (= as soon as) ubi, ut, 512.  
 Whence, unde.  
 Where, ubi.  
 Where you are, istic; *from* where you are, istinc; to where, &c. istuc.  
 Where in the world, ubi or ubinam gentium.  
 Whether—or (of two statements left doubtful), sive—sive; seu—seu.  
 Whether (in *double* dependent ques-

tions), see 118, 119; num (in *single* dependent questions).  
 Which (of two), uter.  
 Whip with rods, virgia cædere (occid-, cæs-).  
 White, albus.  
 Whither, quo.  
 Why, cur, quare, 105.  
 Whole, totus, universus. See 179.  
 Will, against my, invitus. Against the will of Caius, invito Caio.  
 Willing, to be, velle.  
 Wind, ventus.  
 Wine, vinum.  
 Winter (as adj.), hibernus.  
 Wisdom, sapientia.  
 Wise, sapiens.  
 Wish, velle, 142.  
 Wish well to, cupere alicui.  
 With, cum.  
 With, after '*to do*,' de.  
 With, after '*to make a beginning*,' a, ab.  
 With = 

{	in the house of	}	apud, acc.
	in the mind of		(and after
	in the estimation of		<i>multum</i>

 in the presence of *valere.*)  
 Without, sine; or adj. expers, gen.  
 Without, to be, carere, abl.  
 Without being heard, inauditus, a, um.  
 Without: before *partic. subst.*, non, or some other negative, with participle, 363, c; neque, ut non, quin, 520.  
 Without, after nunquam, and before *particip. subst.* quin with *subj.* 88, c.  
 Wolf, lupus.  
 Wonder at, admirari.  
 Wonderful, mirus.  
 Wont, to be, solere (solitus sum).  
 Wool, lana.  
 Word, verbum.  
 Word for word, ad verbum.  
 Worse, pejor: for the worse, in pejus.  
 Worship, to, colere, colu-, cult-.  
 World, mundus; orbis terræ or terrarum.  
 World, in the (after *superl.*), vel, 410.  
 Worthy, dignus, abl.  
 Would have been (better), } fuit, *not*  
 Would be (tedious, &c.), } fuisset.  
 Wound, vulnus, eris, n.  
 Wound, ferire, icere, 299.  
 Wretched, miser, a, um.  
 Write (news), perscribere (scrips-, script-).  

Y.

 Yesterday, heri.  
 Young, juvenis.  
 Youth (= time of), juvenūs, ūtis; juvena.  
 Youth (= body of), juvenūs. S. 339.



## INDEX II.

### LATIN, AND CRITICAL REMARKS.

Words followed by (s) are distinguished from their synonymes.

- A, ab, abs, 348.  
 ab hinc : *not with ordinals. Place of*  
 abhinc, 305.  
 a nobis stare; facere; sentire, 348.  
 a manu servus, 348.  
 abdicare magistratum, *or* se magistratu,  
 308.  
 abesse (s), 227, r. (propius).  
 abhinc, 305.  
 'ABOVE so many years old,' 306.  
 ac; *before what letters it can stand,*  
 4, d.  
 ac, atque (s), 4, d.  
 accedit (huc — quod or ut), 513.  
 accendere (s), 299, h.  
 accidere (s), 374, d.  
 accipere (s), 299, h.  
 ACCUSATIVE of *personal pronoun* to be  
 inserted before the infin. After  
*hope, promise, undertake, pretend,*  
 15; sometimes inserted after verbs  
 of *wishing*, 145; seldom omitted  
 after verbs of *declaring*, except  
 after *fateri, dicere, opinari, &c.*  
 p. 42, s.  
 ACCUSATIVE with INFIN.: after what  
 verbs this construction is used, 9.  
 ACCUSATIVE of the *part affected*, 294.  
 acies (s), 348, t.  
 actum est de, 59.  
 adesse (s), 227, q.  
 adimere (s), 385.  
 adire (s), 249, k.  
 adjuvare (s), 222, k.  
 admonere (in Sall.) takes *rei, de re, or*  
*rem*, 199.  
 adspargere aliquid alicui, *or* aliquem  
 aliqua re, 233.  
 sedes (s), 356, y.  
 sequalis, 212, x.  
 sequi boni facere, 185\*.  
 seternus (s), p. 37, c.  
 'AFTER he had returned,' &c., 310.  
 ait esse paratus, 149, c.  
 ales (s), 480, u.  
 aliquando (s), } 402.  
 aliquantum (s), }  
 aliquis: *may sometimes stand in a nega-*  
*tive clause. See Appendix II. (2)*  
 p. 190.  
 aliquis, quispiam, 392, and note x.  
 After si, 402, note h.  
 aliud — aliud, 38.  
 aliud alio (fertur), 400, d.  
 amare (s), p. 52, a.  
 ambulatum est, 296.  
 amittere (s), 56, n.  
 amnis (s), 472, o.  
 amœnus (s), 212, v.  
 an, in single questions, 120, f.  
 an non (s), 122, b.  
 an quisquam † p. 111, c.  
 anima, -us (s), 92, c.  
 antequam, 498—502: *with pres. indic.*  
*where we might have expected*  
*the subjunctive*, 501, t.  
 apparere (s), 150, w.  
 appellare (s), 51, i.  
 aptus (s), 212.  
 AS, often, in effect, a *relative pronoun*,  
 43. Often = a *circumstance* or  
*fact which*, 36, Obs. 2. Often ac-  
 companies a substantive, which  
 the Romans would place in *appo-*  
*sition*, 139.  
 astrum (s), 51.  
 ATTRACTION of the VOCATIVE, 39.  
 audis seu *Jane*, 272, p.  
 aut (s), 456.  
 auxiliari (s), 222, k.  
 ave (s), 281, s.  
 avere (s), 420.  
 avis (s), 480, u.  
 B.  
 beatus (s), 443.  
 bibere (s), 257, k.

bis terque, } 420 †.  
 bis terve, }  
 bonā tuā veniā, 428.  
 boni consulere, 185.  
 BUT, often in effect, = *rel. pron.*; after  
 nemo, nullus, &c. 44.

## C.

cadere (s), 299, i.  
*Cæsar's* practice with respect to the  
 PRESENT OR PERF. SUBJUNCTIVE  
 (in *oblique narration*) after a *past*  
 tense, compared with *Cicero's* and  
*Livy's*; p. 131, note z.  
 callère (s), 385.  
 capere (s), 492.  
 caput feritur alicui, 294 (b).  
 carère (s), 273, h.  
 caritas (s), 281, r.  
 cave putes, 539.  
 cavère alicui; aliquem; sibi; ab ali-  
 quo, 233.  
 censère (s), 257, x.  
 certiores facere, 187.  
 CHARGE in the *acc.* if expressed by a  
 neut. pron. 194.  
 circumdäre urbem muro, } 232.  
 circumdäre murum urbi, }  
 CIVITAS in appos. to the plural name  
 of a people: *Carmonenses, quæ*  
*est civitas*, 138, k.  
 claudus altero pede, 276.  
 cœpi (s), 150, x.  
 cœptus est, 150, x.  
 comes (s), 185, z.  
 commissatio (s), 428, b.  
 committere ut, 479.  
 COMPARATIVE of an ADVERB, p. 25, v.  
 compilare, 257, g.  
 componere (s), 222, r.  
 concessum est (s), 124, d.  
 CONDITIONAL forms of the *infin.*, p.  
 129, x.  
 conferre (s), 222, r.  
 CONSEQUENCE in perf. subj. for imperf.  
 418 ‡.  
 consors (s), 185, z.  
 consulere alicui; in aliquem, 233.  
 contendere (s), 222, r.  
 contingere (s), 374, d.  
 convenire (s), 249, f.  
 convivium (s), 428, b.  
 creber (s), 410, n.  
 crederes (= *you would have believed*),  
 426.

credor (*when right*), 474, r.  
 cruor, 229, f.  
 cuius es temperantia, 56.  
 culpa (s), 242, g.  
 cum appended to me, te, &c., 24.  
 cuncti (s), 443.  
 cupere (s), 420.  
 cur (s), 105, f.  
 cura (ut), 539.  
 curare aliquid faciendum, 351.

## D.

damnare voti, votis, 201, s.  
 damnare capitis, 201.  
 damnor a *volente* esse bono, not Latin,  
 152, y.  
 dapes (s), 428, b.  
 de facie nosse, }  
 de improviso, } 521.  
 de industriâ, }  
 debère (s), 126, f.  
 deesse (s), 227, r.  
 defendere, 374.  
 delictum (s), 428, c.  
 DEMONSTRATIVE PRON. sometimes ex-  
 pressed after QUIN, p. 19, note a.  
 See 88, (a).  
 DEPENDENT INFIN. takes in English a  
*past form* when dependent on a  
 past tense, 13.  
 desitus est, 150, y.  
 desperatus, 229.  
 deterior (s), 410.  
 dicere (s), 177, q.  
 diligere (s), p. 52, a.  
 diu (s), 420.  
 dolère (s), 521, a.  
 dominus (s), 180.  
 domus: declension, 339, m.  
 dono dare, 242 (3).  
 donum (s), 242, h.  
 DOUBLE QUESTIONS: forms of, 121.  
 dubito. See Questions, § 14.  
 dudum (s), 420.  
 dulcis, 211, v.  
 dum, 494.  
 dummodo (ne), 494.

## E.

e re meâ est, 542.  
 ec, }  
 ecquis, } 400, e.  
 edere (s), 257.  
 egère (s), 273, h.

† BIS TERQUE *augebit, minuet* BIS TERVE *notatum*.  
 ‡ Potius dixerim, ubi de re præteritâ agatur, perfectum subjunctivi magis  
*sententiam facti spectare; imperfectum mentem et consilium agentis.*—Günther.

ego credor, *when correct*, 474, r.  
 eo insolentiae, 512.  
 epulae (s), 428, b.  
 ergo, with *gen*, 207.  
 esse honori alicui, 242.  
 ESSE often omitted in *future infin.*, 16, k.  
 est infinitum, 426.  
 ea. atque, que (s), 4, d.  
 et is (idem, &c.), 385.  
 evenire, 374, d.  
 EVER: how translated, p. 113, k.  
 EX: phrases with, 542.  
 ex pedibus laborare, 542.  
 excedere urbe, urbem, 244, q.  
 excipere (s), 299, a.  
 eximere (s), 385.  
 expilare (s), 257, g.  
 exspectare (s), 227, z.  
 exsul } (s), 276, u.  
 extorris }

F.

fac ut, 539.  
 facere de, 291; facere non possum  
 quin, 89.  
 facturos pollicentur, 149, c.  
 fallere (s), 38, z.  
 fallit me, 209.  
 familiariter uti, 456.  
 fanum (s), 356, y.  
 fari (s), 177, q.  
 fas est, 124, d.  
 faustus (s), 443.  
 felix (s), 443.  
 festinare (s), 177, m.  
 fieri potest ut, 129.  
 flagitare (s), 257.  
 fluvius (s), 472, v.  
 FOR to be *untranslated*, when it precedes  
 the *subject* of an *infin. mood*, 38.  
 — Sometimes *untranslated*, the  
 subst. being placed in *apposition*,  
 139.  
 forsitan, 494.  
 fortior quam prudentior, 452, w.  
 frequens (s), 410, n.  
 fructus } (s), 33, u.  
 fruges }  
 frustra (s), 33, v.  
 fugit me, 209.  
 fuit utilius, &c. 426.  
 FUIT OR ERAT (*scripturus, scribendum*,  
 &c.) more common than FUISSET,  
 ESSET, 416.  
 FUNDAMENTAL rule for the sequence of  
 tenses, 40.  
 FUTURE SUBJUNCT. 41.  
 FUTURE INFIN. (Lat.) for *present infin.*  
 (Eng.) 15. *Future INFIN. PAS-*  
*SIVE*, 288. *Future infin. active*,

sometimes by a periphrasis with  
*fore ut*, 289.

## G.

gaudere (s), 521, a.  
 gesticare (s), 420.  
 gratus (s), 212, v.

## H.

hæres ex dodrante, &c. 556.  
 haud (s), p. 53, h.  
 haud scio an, 116.  
 haud scio an, *nemo, nullus, nihil, &c.*,  
 116. See also Note on Diff. of  
 Idiom, 25.  
 have. 'With whom I have to do,' &c.  
 336.  
 herus (s), 180.  
 hic, 377, &c. relating to the more remote  
 word, 378, h: to *id de quo potissi-*  
*imum agimus*, 378, h (3).  
 homo (s), 33, y.  
 hostis (s), 212, z.

## I.

icere (s), 299, i.  
 id, *not to be used as nom. to 'to be'*  
*when a subst. follows, but to agree*  
*with that subst.*, p. 107, m.  
 id ætatis, 163, ß.  
 id quod, for *quod* only, adds *emphais*,  
 p. 17, note\*.  
 idem (= *alen*), 387.  
 idem est qui (or ac, atque), 45, b.  
 idoneus (s), 212\*; qui, 486.  
 ignoscere (s), 428, c.  
 ille, 49, 377, &c.: with *quidem* in *par-*  
*tial concessions*, followed by a  
 'but,' 383.  
 imperare (s), 71, v.  
 IMPERATIVE = *conditional clause*, 450,  
 note\*.  
 impertire aliquid alicui; or aliquem  
 aliquã re, p. 66, c.  
 in ante diem, 530.  
 in dies, 69, t.  
 incendere (s), 299, h.  
 incipere (s), 150, x.  
 incolumis (s), 542.  
 incumbere rei or in rem, 233.  
 incusare (s), p. 55, m.  
 indigere (s), 257.  
 induere, 233.  
 INFINITIVE, with participle or subst. in  
 the *nom.* by attraction, p. 42, u.  
 INFIN. OF PERFECT, when to be trans-  
 lated by the *infin. present*, 13.  
 —INFIN. OF PRESENT to be trans-

lated by infin. of FUT. after *hope, promise, undertake*, 15. ENGLISH INFINITIVE when translated by *ut* and subj. 75.

inimicus (s), 212, z.

inquit, 177, q.

inspergere aliquid alicui or aliquem aliquâ re, p. 66, d.

instar: when to be used, 207.

INSTEAD OF (with partic. subst.), 533.

inter se contraria, 25.

interdum (s), 402.

interea (s), 402; in *neg.* sentences, see note g.

interesse (s), 227, q.

interest *Ciceronis esse eloquentis*, wrong, 152, z.

interficere (s), 308.

interim (s), 402.

invenire (s), 177, o.

ipse (= *exactly*), 308.

IPSE, with pers. pron., when in the nom., when in oblique case, 368.

IPSE, hardly ever in the nom. (in Cic.) after appended *met*, p. 104, c.

irasci (s), 222.

is sum qui, 483.

Is (ea, id), the usual pron. for the third person where there is no emphasis, no distinction to be marked, p. 25, u.

iste, that of yours, 377 (c).

iste, in LETTERS, refers to the place where one's correspondent resides, 382.

istinc, 387.

ita justum, si est, &c., 451.\*

J.

jampridem cupio, 413.

JUBERE (*acc.* with *inf.*; *ut* when used absolutely), p. 61, h.

jucunde vivi non potest, 504.

jucundus (s), 211, v.

juvare (s), 222, k.

L.

lætari, 521.

lætet me or mihi (bad), 259, a.

libenter (= *like to*), 492.

libertinus } (s), 561.

libertus } (s), 561.

licet (s), 124, d.

licet esse beatum or beato, 153, b. c.

licet (*although*), 451.

locare aliquid faciendum.

locare (s), 480, v.

loqui (s), 177, q.

ludis Latinis, 311.

lugère (s), 521, a.

M.

maceria (s), 233.

macte esto, &c., 280, q.

major annis viginti, &c., p. 178, note\*.

male audire, 492.

mandare (s), 78, w.

MAY, MIGHT, of events, the possibility of which is granted by the speaker, 129.—MAY, MIGHT, = CAN, could, 131: but not in *negative* sentences, C. 17.

me (miserum) qui, 486, i.

Mea, tua, &c., after interest, refert. Are they acc. or abl.? Professor Key's opinion, 203, u.

mederi (s), 222, l.

medicina } (s), 257, l.

medicamentum }

memini (s), 62, q. 61, l.

memini legere, 426.

mens (s), 92, c.

metuere (*ne, ut*), 95; (s) 99, e.

minari mortem alicui, 222.

miserari } (s), 201, r.

misereri }

miseret me }

modo, 494.

mœnia (s), 233.

mœrère (s), 521, a.

monère †, *ut; ne; acc.* with *inf.* 189, k.

monère (s), 222, i.

munus (s), 242, h.

murus (s), 233.

N.

nam appended to interrogatives, p. 112, 398.

ne non after verbs of fearing, 95, a.

ne quis (*not, ut* nemo), } when a purpose is expressed without emphasis on the negative, 80.

ne quid (*not, ut* nihil), }

ne unquam (*not, ut numquam*), }

ně sometimes = nonne? 101, note\*.

† *Monco*, = to warn a person to do something, sometimes takes infin. instead of *ut* with subj.—Cic. hardly ever uses the infin. if any particular subject is named:—*ratio ipsa MONET, amicitias COMPARARE.*

ne = 'that' after verbs of fear, 95.  
 ne — quidem, 185.  
 ne dicam, 443.  
 NEC may precede a vowel, 180, u.  
 necare (s), 308.  
 necesse est, 504.  
 neene (s), 122, b.  
 nedum (ut), 145.  
 nemo pictor, 443: *the forms neminis, nemine not used by the best writers; see note p. 201, and p. 102†.*  
 neque, with verb = without, 520.  
 nequicquam (s), 33, v.  
 nescio quis, 394.  
 nescio an, 116.  
 NEUTER indefinite ADJECTIVES and adjectives of quantity followed by the genitive, 161.  
 nihil me terret, 443.  
 nihil habeo quod, 477.  
 nihil aliud nisi, 185.  
 nihil aliud quam rident, 450.  
 nisi, 451.  
 nisi forte, or vero, 451.  
 noli putare, 530.  
 nolle = would not, 541.  
 nomen est mihi *Caius*, 239.  
 non (s), p. 53, h.  
 non possum quin (*for facere non possum quin; or, non possum non with infin.*) should not be imitated. [*Cicero quotes non possum quin exclamem, from Plautus.*]  
 non quod, or quo—sed, 492.  
 non desunt qui putent, 477.  
 non solum—verum (or sed) etiam, 257.  
 non est quod, 477.  
 nonne, 102.  
 nonnunquam (s), 402.  
 noscere (s), 385.  
 NOSTRUM, VESTRUM, after partitives, and with *omnium*, 372.  
 nullus dubito, 492.  
 num, 102.  
 nuptam esse, 222, m.

## O.

OB, in *oberro*, &c. = *amb, ἀμφί*, 248, r.  
 obedire (s), 222.  
 obire mortem, &c. (s), 249, u.  
 OBJECTIVE GENITIVE, 156, 161, c.  
 OBLIQUE NARRATION, 459. MOODS used in it, 460.  
 obtingere } (s), 374, d.  
 obvenire }  
 obviam ire, 512.  
 occidere (s), 308.  
 operæ pretium est, 532.  
 opitulari (s), 222, k.  
 oportet (s), 126, f.

oportet me facere, } 126.  
 oportet (ego) faciam, }  
 opperiri (s), 229, z.  
 oppetere mortem (s), 249, u.  
 oppidum (s), 63, z.  
 opprobrium (s), 242, i.  
 optare (s), 420. *opto ut*, p. 173.  
 opus est (s), 126, f. 170, i.  
 opus est properato, 177.  
 opus absolutum habeo, 364.  
 orare (s), 257\*.

ORIGIN OF THE PERFECT WITH 'HAVE' IN MODERN LANGUAGES, p. 103, a.  
 oriundus } (s), 551.  
 ortus }

## P.

pace tuâ dixerim, 428.  
 par (s), 212, x.  
 parère (s), 222.  
 paries (s), 233.  
 PARTICIPIAL SUBSTANTIVE, Caution 26. See also p 92, note\*; and p. 122, e.  
 PARTICIPLE OF FUT. ACT. (in *rus*) sometimes attracted in poetry, 149, u.  
 PARTICIPLES IN *RUS* AND *DUS*, § 46, p. 100.  
 PARTICIPLES of deponent verbs, 365.  
 parum (s), 402.  
 pasci (s), 257, k.  
 PASSIVE VERBS: when the *nom.* before the Engl. verb must be translated by the *dative* in Latin, 285.  
 pati (s), 532.  
 paululum } (s), 420.  
 paulum }  
 pejor (s), 410.  
 per aliquem stat, quominus, 99.  
 PERF. SUBJ. (for imperf.) in a consequence with *ut*, 418: in obl. narr. p. 131, z.  
 PERFECT DEFINITE (= perf. with *have*) is a PRESENT PERFECT; and, as such, followed by *present* and *perfect* of *subjunctive*, 40: often however by *imperfect subj.*, 'if the action can be conceived as *gradually advancing to its completion*', 412.—PERFECT INFIN. (English) to be translated by *pres. infin.* after *ought, could, should, &c. (debebat, debuit; oportebat, oportuit; poterat, potuit, &c.)*, 131.  
 PERSONAL PRON. EXPRESSED, when there is a distinction between *two* actions of the *same* person, p. 9, note.  
 persuadere (s), 222, i.

persuasum est mihi, 291.  
 persuasissimum habeo (*bad*), 291, z.  
 petere (s), 257 \*.  
 pietas (s), 281, r.  
 plerique: *plerumque, plerarumque*, not found, 291.  
 polliceri (s), 17, l.  
 polliceri with infin. fut. 15, a.  
 ponere (s), 480, v.  
 poscere (s), 257 \*.  
 possum (s), 125, e.  
 post—annos quam excesserat, or excessit, 310, s. 514.  
 posthabere aliquid alicui, 227.  
 postquam, 512.  
 postulare (s), 257 \*.  
 potare, 257, k.  
 potentia } (s), 451.  
 potestas }  
 potestatem sui facere, 451.  
 præbere } se fortem, 229.  
 præstare }  
 præmium (s), 242.  
 præsens } 227, q.  
 præsentem esse }  
 præstolari (s), 227, z.  
 præterit (non me), 259.  
 prehendere (s), 492.  
 PRESENT after *si* in connexion with fut., p. 117, t.  
 PRESENT PARTICIPLE (Eng.), when translated by *perf. participle* (Lat.), 365.  
 PRESENT and IMPERF. PASSIVE of English verb, p. 122, e.  
 PRESENT OR PERF. SUBJ. in connexion with infin. where the general rule would require imperf. or pluperf., 469.  
 pridem (s), 420.  
 primum, -o (s), 83, a.  
 { pro re natâ } 542.  
 { pro virili }  
 { pro eo ac mereor }  
 pro tuâ temperantiâ, 56.  
 probrum (s), 242, i.  
 prælium (s), 348, t.  
 profugus (s), 276, n.  
 prohibere. Diff. between *non prohibui* *quin* and *non prohibui ne* or *quominus*, p. 175, note k.  
 propicere se alicui ad pedes; or ad alicujus pedes, p. 69, note l.  
 promitto (s), 17, l.  
 properare (s), 177, m.  
 propior, 211.  
 propius (dat. or acc.), 512.  
 propius abesse, 319.  
 prosper (s), 443.  
 prospicere } 233.  
 providere }

proximo, 512.  
 proximus, 211.  
 pugna (s), 348, t.  
 purgandi *sui* causâ, 334.  
 putares (you would have thought), 426.

## Q.

quæ res, 36.  
 quæ quum ita sint, 492:  
 quæ tua est temperantia, 56.  
 quam pro (after compar.), 409, f.  
 quam nullus, 492.  
 quam ut sit, &c. (after compar.), 486.  
 quam brevissime, &c. 410.  
 quam omitted after *amplius*, &c., 552, k.  
 quamquam } 451. See note u.  
 quamvis }  
 quanta maxima potest esse, &c. 410.  
 quare, 105, f.  
 quasi, 494.  
 queo (s), 125, e.  
 QUI with subj. Appendix, p. 182.  
 QUI NON: when to be preferred to *quin*, 45, e. p. 174, d.  
 quid ætatis, 164, ß.  
 quid facerem? 427, c.  
 quilibet (s), 390, u.  
 quin, 44, 3. See note e, p. 19, and note d, p. 174.  
 quin after verbs of *doubting*, &c. in negative sentences, 85, 86.  
 quippe (qui), 482, a.  
 quis est qui? 477.  
 quis ignorat? mostly followed by infin.; though sometimes by *quin*, 89.  
 quis: when the forms *qui*, *quod* are used, 105. 391, w.  
 quis sum, qui? 483.  
 quispiam, aliquis (s), 392, note x.  
 quisquam, 389, 390 (γ).  
 si quisquam, 391, w.  
 quisquam: an est—qui? 477.  
 quisque: doctissimus *quisque*, 399.  
 quivis (s), 390, u.  
 quo, 63; without compar. p. 174, e.  
 quo amentis, 512.  
 quoad, 507, &c.  
 quoad ejus, &c., 512.  
 quod, 516, &c.  
 quod sciam, 56.  
 quominus, 94.  
 quoniam, 492.  
 quot estis, &c., 174.  
 quotidie, 69, t.  
 quotusquisque est, qui? (subj.) 477.  
 quum interrogaretur, not interrogatus esset, 415, s.  
 quum with indic., 488. May have any tense of the indicative, 490, obs.

## R.

re = *forth*, 249, v. (= *ip̄t* †)  
 recipere (s), 308, a.  
 recordari, p. 54 : (s), 201, q.  
 non recusare *may be followed by* quin,  
 quominus, or ne, 92, b.  
 redire (s), 339, p.  
 RELATIVE PRONOUN, when it does not  
 agree with its proper antecedent,  
 48. What is the usual practice  
 in this case if the second substan-  
 tive is a *Greek* word, 49.  
 remedium (s), 257, l.  
 reminisci (s), 201, q.  
 reperire (s), 177, o.  
 reperiuntur, &c. qui, 477. App. 20—  
 25.  
 res ita se habet, 451.  
 reum facere, 187.  
 reus, its *meaning*, 188, f.  
 revenire } (s), 339, p.  
 reverti }  
 RHETORICAL QUESTIONS in oblique nar-  
 ration, 460, (c) 2. See notes \*  
 and c.  
 rivus (s), 472, v.  
 rogare (s), 257 \*.

## S

salutare (s), 249, f.  
 salve (s), 281, s.  
 salvus (s), 542.  
 sanare (s), 222, l.  
 sanguis (s), 299, f.  
 sapientior Caio,  
 sapientior quam Caius, } 405, m.  
 satis, 512.  
 satius, Ex. 34.  
 SAY—NOT, often translated by *negare*,  
 (to deny). Diff. 2.  
 scelus (s), 243, g.  
 scire (s), 385.  
 se often inserted by *Cic.* after *velle*,  
 p. 42, r.  
 secundum aliquem decernere, 504.  
 securus (s), 542.  
 sempiternus (s), 123, c.  
 sensit delapsus, 149, u.  
 sententiâ (ex), 17.  
 si = *whether*, p. 127, t.  
 si hoc dicas, p. 123, h.  
 si (mood), 451, t.  
 si aliquis } (s), 391, w : 402, h.  
 si quisquam }  
 si quis } 391, w.  
 si quisquam }  
 sidus (s), 51.  
 silere (s), 299, g.

similis tui, tibi, 212, w. (s, 212, x.)  
 simul ac, &c., 512.  
 simulare, 15 (a) ; (s), 17, m.  
 sin = si nê, 451, r.  
 sin minus, }  
 sin autem, } 451.  
 sin secus, }  
 sin aliter, }  
 sine aliquo or *aliquid*, when right, 390, v.  
 sine omni curâ, *wrong*, 391, w.  
 sinere (s), 532 \*.  
 sive, seu, 456, a.  
 socius } (s), 185, z.  
 sodalis }  
 spoliare (s), 273.  
 stella (s), 57.  
 stipendium mereri, 308.  
 suadere (s), 222, i.  
 suavis (s), 212, v.  
 sublevare } (s), 222, k.  
 subvenire }  
 succendere (s), 299, h.  
 succensere (s), 222.  
 succurrere, (s), 222, k.  
 sumere (s), 492.

SUCH often relates to *size* rather than  
*quality*, and therefore to be trans-  
 lated by *tantus*, not *talis*, 46, C. x.  
 "You, such is your temperance,"  
 how translated? 56.

summus mons, 179.

SUNT QUI putent, 45, 477 : and Ap-  
 pend. 20—25.

SUPERLATIVE and other adjj. placed in  
 the relat., instead of in the prin-  
 cipal clause, 53.

## T.

tacere (s), 299, g.  
 tanquam, 494.  
 tantum abest, ut—ut, 534.  
 templum (s), 356, y.  
 THAT NOBODY, NO, NOTHING, never to  
 be *ne quis, ullus, quid, unquam*,  
 when *that* introduces a *purpose* ;  
 but *ut nemo, nullus, nihil, nun-*  
*quam*, when '*that*' introduces a  
*consequence* (80, 81).  
 timere (s), 99, e.  
 To (Eng.) omitted after some verbs,  
 which thus seem to govern *two*  
*accusatives*, 60, C. XIII.  
 -to, -tote (imperative forms in), 480, x.  
 TRANSITIVE COMPOUNDS of *intransitive*  
 verbs, 249.  
 triplicem aciem instruere, 456.  
 trucidare (s), 308.  
 tueri, 374.  
 tutus (s), 542.

## U.

ubi terrarum, } 512.  
 ubinam gentium, }  
 'UNDER so many years old,' 306.  
 universi (s), 443.  
 unquam, 402.  
 ut = *as soon as*; *when*, 412.  
 ut = *that not*, 95; = *though*, 492, o.  
 ut omitted, 417, b.  
 UT NE, when used for ne, 77, note.  
 ut quisque—ita, 407.  
 ut ajunt, 319.  
 uterlibet (s), 390, u.  
 utervis (s), 390, u.  
 Uti (= ut), 58.  
 utinam, 494.  
 utpote qui, 482.

## V.

vacat mihi, 154; 337.  
 valère apud aliquem, 463.  
 vapulare ab, 291.  
 ve, } 456.  
 vel, }  
 velim (ut) iudices, 417, b.  
 velle = *would*, 541.  
 velle sibi, 242.

veniam dare, 428, e.

verbi causâ, 443.

VERBS (ENGLISH) often become *transitive* by the addition of a *preposition*, 32 (C. VII.). VERBS of REMINDING with acc. of neut. pron. 199.

vereri (s), 99, e.

Vescendus, gloriandus, &c. 333, e.

videri, 150, w.

vir (s), 38, y.

vis, *decl.* p. 53, note g.

visere (s), 249, s.

vitium (s), 242, g.

vitio vertere, &c., 242.

vix crediderim, 428\*.

vocare (s), 51, i.

volucres (s), 480, u.

vult { *se esse principem*, } 149.  
 { *esse princeps*, }

## W.

WHAT (as *rel.*) = '*that (thing) which*,'  
 or '*those (things) which*.'

WITHOUT, before the participial substantive: how translated! 87, c. 363, o. 520.

THE END.



# CLASSICAL WORKS BY THE REV. T. K. ARNOLD, M.A.

Arranged under Numbers for Progressive Tuition.

Keys (supplied to Tutors only) are published to those works to which † is prefixed.

1. † HENRY'S FIRST LATIN BOOK. *Fourteenth Edition.* 3s. The object of this work (which is founded on the principles of imitation and frequent repetition) is to enable the pupil to do exercises from the first day of his beginning his Accidence.
2. † SECOND LATIN BOOK, and PRACTICAL GRAMMAR. *Seventh Edition.* 4s.
3. † FIRST VERSE BOOK. An easy Introduction to the Latin Hexameter and Pentameter. In 12mo. *Sixth Edition.* 2s. Also PART II., containing additional Exercises. 1s.
3. HISTORIÆ ANTIQVÆ EPITOME, from *Cornelius Nepos, Justin, &c.* With English Notes, Rules for Construing, Questions, Geographical Lists, &c. *Sixth Edition.* 4s.
3. ECLOGÆ OVIDIANÆ; with ENGLISH NOTES, &c. PART I. (From the Elegiac Poems.) *Ninth Edition.* 2s. 6d. PART II. (From the Metamorphoses.) 5s.
3. PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION. *Eleventh Edition.* 6s. 6d.
3. A FIRST CLASSICAL ATLAS, containing 15 Maps. 7s. 6d.
3. † CORNELIUS NEPOS, PART I. With Questions and Answers, and an imitative Exercise on each Chapter. *Third Edition.* In 12mo. 4s.
3. The ÆNEID of VIRGIL; with English Notes from DÜNNER. 6s.
3. HORATII OPERA; with English Notes from DÜNNER. 7s.
4. ECLOGÆ HORATIANÆ. Pars I. (Carmina.) *Second Edition.* 5s.
4. † PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO LATIN VERSE COMPOSITION. 8vo. *Third Edit.* 5s. 6d. Contents:—1. "Ideas" for Hexameter and Elegiac Verses. 2. Alcaics. 3. Sapphics. 4. The other Horatian Metres. 5. Appendix of Poetical Phraseology, and Hints on Versification.
4. GRADUS ad PARNASSUM NOVUS ANTICLEPTICUS. 12s.
4. ELLISIAN EXERCISES; adapted to the "Practical Introduction to Latin Prose Composition." 3s. 6d.
4. SELECTIONS from CICERO, with ENGLISH NOTES. Part I. (SELECT ORATIONS.) *Second Edition.* 4s. Part II. (SELECT EPISTLES.) 5s. Part III. (TUSCULAN DISPUTATIONS.) 5s. 6d. Part IV. (DE FINIBUS.) 5s. 6d. Part V. (DE SENECTUTE.) 2s. 6d.
5. † SECOND PART of the PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION, containing the DOCTRINE of the LATIN PARTICLES. With Vocabulary, &c. *Third Edition.* 8s.
5. HANDBOOKS of GRECIAN and ROMAN ANTIQUITIES. Price 3s. 6d. each.
5. TACITUS, with English Notes.—Part I.; ANNALES, Lib. I.—VI. 6s.—Part II.; Lib. XI.—XVI. 5s. SALLUST.—HISTORY of the JUGURTHINE WAR; with English Notes. 3s. 6d.
6. † ECLOGÆ HISTORICÆ; or, Selections from the Roman Historians. In 12mo. 4s.
6. † LONGER LATIN EXERCISES. *Third Edition.* 8vo. 4s. † A SECOND PART. 8vo. 4s.
6. † MATERIALS for TRANSLATING into LATIN. From the German of GROTEFEND, with Notes and Excursions. *Third Edition.* 7s. 6d.
6. LATIN WORD-BUILDING; with Etymological Vocabulary. 4s. 6d.

## ELEMENTARY GREEK GRAMMAR. 5s.

- † FIRST GREEK BOOK; on the Plan of "Henry's First Latin Book." *Fourth Edition.* 5s.
- † The SECOND GREEK BOOK; containing an Elementary Treatise on the Greek Particles. 5s. 6d.
- THIRD GREEK BOOK; or, Selections from Xenophon's *Cyropædia*, with English Notes. 3s. 6d.
- THE FOURTH GREEK BOOK; or, Xenophon's *Anabasis*, Books IV. to VII., with English Notes. 4s.
- An ELEMENTARY GREEK HEADER, from HOMER. 12mo. 3s.
- PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO GREEK ACCIDENCE. With Exercises and Vocabulary. *Sixth Edition.* 5s. 6d.
- † PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION. *Eighth Edition.* 5s. 6d. Part II. (On the Particles.) 6s. 6d.
- PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO GREEK CONSTRUING. 6s. 6d.
- LARGER GREEK GRAMMAR. *Second Edition.* 10s. 6d.
- MADVIG'S SYNTAX of the GREEK LANGUAGE, especially of the Attic Dialect. 8s. 6d.
- HOMERI ILIAS, Lib. I.—III. With English Notes, for Beginners. *Second Edition.* 3s. 6d.
- HOMERI ILIAS, Lib. I.—IV. With Copious Critical Introduction and English Notes. 7s. 6d.
- HOMERI ILIAS COMPLETE, with English Notes and Grammatical References. 12mo. 12s.
- GREEK and ENGLISH LEXICON for HOMER. From the German of CAUSIUS. 9s.
- XENOPHON'S ANABASIS. By HERTLEIN. 6s. 6d.
- OLYNTIAC ORATIONS of DEMOSTHENES. With English Notes. *Second Edition.* 3s.
- ORATION of DEMOSTHENES on the CROWN. With English Notes. 4s. 6d.
- THE PHILIPPIC ORATIONS of DEMOSTHENES. 12mo. 4s.
- SOPHOCLES by SCHWEIDWIN. The AJAX, PHILOCTETES, ŒDIPUS TYRANNUS, ŒDIPUS COLONEUS, and ANTIGONE, with English Notes. (Sold separately.)
- EURIPIDES, with English Notes. The HECUBA.—The BACCHÆ.—The HIPPOLYTUS.—The MEDEA.—The IPHIGENIA IN TAURIS. 3s. each.
- THUCYDIDES, Book THE FIRST; with English Notes, especially from Poppe and Krüger. 5s. 6d. Book THE SECOND. 4s. 6d.
- THE ORATION of ÆSCHINES against CTESIPHON. With English Notes. 4s.
- ECLOGÆ ARISTOPHANICÆ. PART I. From the CLOUDS. PART II. From the BIRDS. With English Notes. By Professor FELTON. 3s. 6d. each.
- The ATHENIAN STAGE; a Handbook for Students. From the German of WIRTSCHEL. 4s.
- HANDBOOK of GREEK SYNONYMES. From the French of PELLON. 6s. 6d.
- HANDBOOKS of 1. ANCIENT, 2. MÆDIÆVAL, and 3. MODERN GEOGRAPHY and HISTORY (from PUTZ). 6s. 6d., 4s. 6d., and 5s. 6d. each.
- DOEDERLEIN'S HANDBOOK of LATIN SYNONYMES. *Second Edition.* 4s.
- CLASSICAL EXAMINATION PAPERS (93) for Schools. 4s., or 6 copies of any paper for 3d.
- ENGLISH GRAMMAR for CLASSICAL SCHOOLS. *Fifth Edition.* 4s. 6d.
- FIRST GERMAN BOOK. *Fourth Edition.* 5s. 6d. KEY, 2s. 6d.
- SECOND GERMAN BOOK; or, Syntax, and Vocabulary, with Reading-Lessons and Exercises. 6s. 6d. KEY, 1s.
- HANDBOOK of GERMAN VOCABULARY. 4s.
- READING COMPANION to the FIRST GERMAN BOOK. *Second Edition.* 4s.
- FIRST FRENCH BOOK. *Fourth Edition.* 5s. 6d. KEY, 2s. 6d.
- HANDBOOK of FRENCH VOCABULARY. 4s. 6d.
- The FIRST HEBREW BOOK. *Second Edition.* In 12mo. 7s. 6d. KEY, 3s. 6d.
- The SECOND HEBREW BOOK, containing the Book of Genesis, with a Hebrew Syntax. 9s.
- HEBREW ANTIQUITIES. By the Rev. H. BROWN, M.A. 4s.
- HENRY'S ENGLISH GRAMMAR; a Manual for Beginners. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

RIVINGTONS, WATERLOO PLACE.



1



